VIA LATINA:

A First Latin Book,

INCLUDING

ACCIDENCE, RULES OF SYNTAX, EXERCISES, Vocabularies,

AND

RULES FOR CONSTRUING.
A LATINA:

A First Latin Book,

INCLUDING

ACCIDENCE, RULES OF SYNTAX, EXERCISES, VOCABULARIES,

AND

RULES FOR CONSTRUING.

BY

EDWIN A. ABBOTT, D.D.,

Head Master of the City of London School.

SEVENTH THOUSAND.

LONDON:
SEELEY, JACKSON, AND HALLIDAY, FLEET STREET.
1882.
LONDON:
R. CLAY, SONS, AND TAYLOR,
BREAD STREET HILL, E.C.
PREFACE.

Although two or three very fair Latin "First Books" are already in existence, yet the present results of Latin teaching are not so satisfactory as to necessitate an apology for a new attempt. For a very long time the Author (in the course of a weekly entrance-examination of a most elementary kind) has been in the habit of asking those boys who profess to have learned Latin—almost all of whom are over thirteen years of age, and have learned Latin two, three, four, or five years—to construe the sentence "Oppida magna boni agricolae habent": and not one in five has been able to construe these few simple words correctly. The Examiner would have been well content with the translation "They have the great towns of the good husbandman": but almost all have succumbed to the temptation of treating "oppida" as Nominative, and have then "plunged" to the rendering "Great towns have good husbandmen"—or something worse.

One reason for these miserable results is probably that, at present (1880), a private school may be "kept" by any
one with or without any degree, or other proof of the possession either of knowledge or of the power to impart knowledge: but it is also possible that many of our elementary Latin books are to some extent responsible for these failures, because they lay scarcely sufficient stress on parsing before construing. The Latin sentences placed before beginners are so easy that the pupil soon finds he can construe without the trouble of parsing; and he thus early contracts the fatal habit of "plunging" at the meaning instead of reasoning it out. To provide against this evil is one of the principal objects of the Via Latina. From the very first page the pupil is taught to parse as well as to construe, and not to construe till he has parsed; and throughout the book, parsing questions are put bearing on the Latin Exercises, and the answers are suggested by paragraph references.

In the preparation of the Exercises the dictum of Lord Bacon has been borne in mind that in all kinds of training we should imitate dancers, who practise at one time in heavy boots, at another in light shoes. A considerable experience of teaching has led the Author to the conclusion that a First Latin Book requires a great diversity of Exercises, some to illustrate special rules, others of a more general nature; some on points of Accidence, the Irregular Nouns and Verbs, and the like, others on difficulties of Syntax; and again, some difficult and accompanied with helps, others easy to be done without help; some to be written with preparation, others to be answered vivâ voce. This want he has
attempted to supply in the present volume, and at the same time to combine the Exercises with an outline of the Accidence, and the principal Rules of Syntax.

As regards the arrangement of the Exercises, some departures from the usual order have been introduced, especially in the earlier introduction of the simpler uses of the Subjunctive Mood. It is not uncommon for boys, after committing the Verbs to memory, to allow the Subjunctive Mood to rust for some weeks or months before they make any use of it, and consequently to find that, when they need to use it, they no longer remember it; the consequence is that, during all this while, they remain under the impression that "amemus" means we may love, and "amaremus" we might love—statements which are very partial, and almost erroneous, expressions of the real truth. It seems better to introduce the Subjunctive earlier in simple and intelligible rules and examples, so as to impress the pupil from the first with the principle of the Sequence of Tenses.

The Author has also aimed at introducing a little more variety into the examples by teaching somewhat more of idiom than is usually taught in First Latin Books; and some hints on the particles have not been thought out of place. In Greek a boy is taught to pay attention to particles almost from the beginning, but in Latin they are too much neglected; and, for want of them, the language too often strikes beginners as uninteresting and lifeless.

Most of the longer sentences in the Latin Exercises have been selected from classical authors, occasionally
modified: and here, as well as in the statement and explanation of several of the Rules, ample acknowledgments are due to the Public School Grammar. Several of them may appear at first sight somewhat difficult for beginners; but it will generally be found that the Vocabularies and the paragraph references supply all the help that is needed for a pupil who will honestly parse before construing. The Author has worked through most of them with a pupil ten years old, whose questions and difficulties have suggested many of the footnotes bearing on the Exercises.

The Irregular Verbs are arranged in two lists; first according to their formation, and then in alphabetical order. This repetition may appear superfluous; but the object of it is to enable the pupil to learn the Verbs according to their logical order in the first list, but afterwards to test his knowledge by repeating them when presented to him miscellaneously in the second list, which also includes a large number of the more important Compound Verbs in which boys frequently go wrong.

The Hints on Construing are intended not only as a preparation for translating a Latin author, but also as a summary of Rules for parsing the sentences in the Latin Exercises, and for translating English into Latin.

It is hoped that the Glossary of Grammatical Terms, while escaping the necessity of breaking the thread of the Accidence and Syntax by interposing continual explanations of terms, will on the other hand avoid the greater
evil of suffering the pupil to use words of the meaning of which he knows nothing.

In the Public Schools and in the better class of Preparatory Schools (to the excellence of which the Author bears willing testimony) such portentous failures as were mentioned in the beginning of this Preface are (no doubt) unknown: but even there it sometimes appears as though it were very difficult to ground boys well in Latin Grammar without an inordinate waste of time, or without dwarfing the pupil's faculties by an excessive prolongation of a mechanical and monotonous word-drill. Good teachers will succeed without any books in avoiding the evil and attaining the good; but even good teachers may occasionally be helped by a book, and to them this book is offered, not as a substitute, but as a help, for good teaching.

I gratefully acknowledge much valuable help for which I am indebted to Mr. J. S. Reid, Fellow and Tutor of Caius College, Cambridge, and one of the Classical Examiners for the University of London.
PREFACE TO THE REVISED EDITION.

This Edition contains many corrections and modifications suggested by the use of the book in teaching. All the Exercises have been worked through with the view of detecting omissions in the Vocabulary, or difficulties that required additional help. The Exercises themselves have received very few alterations, but many references to Rules have been inserted, and the deficiencies in the Vocabularies have been supplied.

My thanks are due to Mr. J. S. Phillpotts, Head Master of Bedford Grammar School, for many useful suggestions incorporated in the present Edition.
**CONTENTS.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pronunciation</td>
<td>xvi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Cases of Nouns</td>
<td>1—4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The First Declension</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Second Declension</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative of Instrument and Agent</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjectives of the First and Second Declension</td>
<td>13—16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Third Declension (Consonant Branch)</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adj. governing Dative; dignus, g. Ablative</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Abl. answering to When? and Within what time?</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Acc. answering to How long? or During what time?</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Multi, many (men); multa, many (things)</strong></td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuter Nouns of the Third Declension (Consonant Branch)</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Declension, continued (the -i Nouns)</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjectives of the Third Declension</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Fourth Declension</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Fifth Declension</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Comparison of Adjectives; quam, or Ablative</td>
<td>34—5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTENTS.</td>
<td>PAGE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular Comparison</td>
<td>37–8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numeral Adjectives</td>
<td>39–42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Dative of Possession with est</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ěnus, ullah, sōlus, ālius, &amp;c.</td>
<td>43–4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Verb agrees with its Nom. Case in Number and Person</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direct Questions</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrative and Emphatic Pronouns</td>
<td>49–50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative and Interrogative Pronouns</td>
<td>51–2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The First Conjugation (Active)</td>
<td>53–5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Second</td>
<td>56–8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Third</td>
<td>58–60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Fourth</td>
<td>60–2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Latin and English Tenses; Apposition</td>
<td>63–4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Verb agrees with the First Person, rather than the Second, and the Second rather than the Third</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Infinitive as a Subject or Object</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Imperative; the use of nē in Prohibition</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Subjunctive expressing Purpose</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Subjunctive expressing a Dependent Question</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Sequence of Tenses</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quidem, vēro, ētiam, vēl</td>
<td>70–2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbs signifying pleasing, obeying, &amp;c., take the Dative</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbs of asking, commanding, advising, and striving are followed by ut, or nē, with the Subjunctive</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbs of preventing are followed by quōminus and the Subjunctive; nōn est dūbium quīn</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cum, with the Subjunctive Mood</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONTENTS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONTENTS</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vĕnio, vinco, vincio, rĕpĕrio</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Verb <em>sum</em></td>
<td>79—81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Active Participle</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Dependent Future Interrogative; <em>quando</em></td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The First Conjugation (Passive)</td>
<td>83—6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Second</td>
<td>86—8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Third</td>
<td>88—91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Fourth</td>
<td>91—3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Passive Participle</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An Adjective agreeing with Nouns of different Genders</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impersonal Use of the Passive</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An Active Verb that governs the Dative retains the Dative in the Passive</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Gerundive Construction with the Dative of the Agent</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Capio</em>, Conjugation of</td>
<td>100—1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Utrum</em>-ān; -nē-ān</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Prepositions</td>
<td>104—9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Ablative of Manner</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ād with the Gerund and the Gerundive</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbs compounded with Prepositions</td>
<td>110—1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Minimum ābest quīn</em>, &amp;c.</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Ablative Absolute</td>
<td>112—4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deponent Verbs</td>
<td>115—7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Obliviscor, mīsēreor</em>, &amp;c.; <em>fungor, fruor, ūtor</em>, &amp;c.</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Accusative and Infinitive; its Tenses</td>
<td>120—2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Fōre ūt; sē, suus</em></td>
<td>122—3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impersonal Verbs</td>
<td>124—5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Possum, vŏlo, nŏlo, mālo, fēro</em></td>
<td>126—22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Indirect Questions after Verbs of <em>knowing, discovering, &amp;c.</em></td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Verb eo</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supines; <em>captum ēri</em></td>
<td>137–8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Gerund and Gerundive</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Verb <em>fio</em>; The Complementary Subject</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cases; The Accusative of Extension</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Locative Case</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Dative of Equivalence or Purpose</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Ablative; of <em>Definite Price</em>; of <em>Quality</em>; <em>Plenty</em> or <em>Want</em></td>
<td>145–6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Genitive of <em>Quality</em>; <em>Value</em>; <em>Indefinite Price</em>; <em>Plenty</em> or <em>Want</em>; to express &quot;it is the mark of&quot;; after Adjectives used as Nouns; after Adjectives of <em>knowledge, desire, &amp;c.</em></td>
<td>147–8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Subjunctive used to express <em>result</em> or <em>consequence</em>; <em>optatively</em>; <em>hortatively</em>; <em>concessively</em>; in Conditional Sentences; after <em>qui</em></td>
<td>149–52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Si quīs</em>; <em>nē quīs</em></td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ūt nōn</em>, when used for <em>nē</em></td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Vēreor ūt</em>; <em>nescio ān</em></td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quo with Comparative; <em>suus, sē, ipsē</em></td>
<td>154–5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quisquam, <em>āliquīs, quīlibet, quīdam</em></td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Irregular Nouns</strong></td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Irregular Verbs and Genders of Nouns</strong></td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Čelo, <em>dōceo</em>; Adverbial <em>ante</em> and <em>post</em></td>
<td>159–60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distrib, Numerals; <em>cum...tum</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Quam qui</em>; Historical Infinitive</td>
<td>161–2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Quamquam</em> and <em>quamvis</em>; <em>jampridem</em></td>
<td>163–4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Quam</em> with <em>Superl.</em>; <em>interēst, rēfert</em></td>
<td>166–7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONTENTS.

Elementary Rules on Oratio Obliqua . . . . 168—71
Easy and Recapitulatory Exercises . . . . . . 172—185

APPENDICES.

I.—Irregular Verbs in Order of Formation . . . . 189
II.—” ” ” Alphabetical Order . . . . . . 200
III.—Hints on Construing . . . . . . . . . . . . 216
IV.—A Parsing Table . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 224
V.—A Table of Genders . . . . . . . . . . . . . 226
VI.—On the Latin Days of the Month . . . . . . 229
VII.—Elementary Rules on Quantity . . . . . . . 230
VIII.—Glossary of Grammatical Terms . . . . . . 232
IX.—Vocabularies for the Earlier Exercises . . . 240
X.—Latin-English Vocabulary . . . . . . . . . . 248
XI.—English-Latin Vocabulary . . . . . . . . . 284
SCHEME OF LATIN PRONUNCIATION.¹

Based on the nearest English Approximations.

VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ã</td>
<td>a in father.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>˚ã</td>
<td>first a in away, or a in villa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>˚e</td>
<td>ai in pain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>˚ae</td>
<td>ai in pain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>˚œ</td>
<td>ai in pain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ō</td>
<td>e in men.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>í</td>
<td>i in machine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ï</td>
<td>i in pity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ò</td>
<td>o in home.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ò</td>
<td>o in top.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ũ</td>
<td>u in rule.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ũ</td>
<td>u in full.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>au</td>
<td>ow in power.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| ui   | ,

1 Latin ë followed quickly by Latin i (differs little from ai in pain).

CONSONANTS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>c, ch</td>
<td>k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>˚g</td>
<td>g in get.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>˚s</td>
<td>s in s.n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>˚t (rātīc)</td>
<td>t in cat, not sh, as in nation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>˚j</td>
<td>y in yard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>˚v</td>
<td>v</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>˚z, ph, th</td>
<td>z, ph, th.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Latin s between two vowels = (sometimes) English s in rose, e.g. "roza."

¹ Taken from the Syllabus of Latin Pronunciation, issued by the Professors of Latin at the Universities of Cambridge and Oxford, at the request of the Head Masters of Schools. Some modifications have been made by the suppression of all Italian standards, and of all the English standards of pronunciation that contain a vowel followed by r. Consequently the Latin o is represented by the English o. The Professors give the option of pronouncing v as v or as w.

² Syllables in Latin are either long or short. A short syllable is denoted by this mark (.), a long one by this (——). A few elementary rules about the quantity, i.e. the length or shortness of syllables, are given in Appendix VII. on Prosody.
VIA LATINA.

THE CASES OF NOUNS.¹

THE FIRST OR -A DECLENSION.

Aquīl-ā, (an) eagle. Fēmīn-ā, (a) woman. Fīlī-ā, (a) daughter.
Aqu-ā, water. Dēstr-ā, (a) right hand. Pēcūnī-ā, money.
Āmā- t, (he) loves. Dā-t, (he) gives. Lāvā- t, (he) washes.
Līberā- t, (he) frees. Monstrā- t, (he) points out.
Sūpērā- t, (he) overcomes. Vōrā- t, (he) devours.²

1 English Nouns have (now) only two Cases, of which the Possessive is indicated by the affix 's: "John's book;" "the sun's light;" "men's clothes."

Latin Nouns have six Cases.

2 1. The Nominative Case.—When a Noun answers the question Who? or What? before a Verb (i.e. when it is the Subject of a Verb), it is put in the Nominative Case, which, in Nouns of the First Declension, is expressed by the termination -a short, -ā:

The woman loves.  Fēmīn-ā āmāt.
The eagle devours.  Āquīl-ā vōrāt.

¹ For an explanation of the terms Case, Noun, &c., see the Glossary of Grammatical Terms, Appendix VIII. p. 232.
² A vowel before t final is always short: the quantity of a-t (‘) will therefore not be marked for the future.
Who loves?—Ans., the woman, fēmin-ā. What devours?—Ans., the eagle, āquīl-ā.

In parsing Latin, the question is generally asked as follows: Why is fēmīnā Nominative?—Ans., because it is the Subject of (or Nominative to) āmāt.

2. The Vocative Case.—When a person or thing is addressed, the Noun expressing the person or thing is put in the Vocative Case, which, in the First Declension, is the same as the Nominative:

O woman, Fēmīn-ā. O eagle, Āquīl-ā.

Why is fēmīnā (or āquīla) Vocative?—Ans., because it is a person (or thing) addressed.

3. The Accusative Case.—When a Noun answers the question Whom? or What? after a Verb (i.e. when it is the Direct Object of a Verb), it is put in the Accusative Case, which is expressed, in the First Declension, by the termination -am:

The daughter loves the woman. Fili-ā fēmīn-am āmā-t.
The woman points out the eagle. Fēmīn-ā āquīl-am monstrā-t.

Loves whom?—Ans., the woman. Points out what?—Ans., the eagle.

Why is fēmīnam the Accusative?—Ans., because it is the Direct Object of (or Accusative governed by) āmāt.

N.B. Note here that the order of the words is not the same in a Latin and in an English sentence.

In English the Object generally follows the Verb, and the Subject generally precedes the Verb, so that the order of the words shows which is Subject and which is Object.

But in Latin the Verb generally comes at the end of the sentence; and the Nominative and Accusative must be discovered, not by the order, but by examining the Case.

Thus, in the last example, -am is the Accusative termination, and -ā is the Nominative termination. Therefore
femin-ā is the Nominative, and the Subject of monstrāt; and āquīl-am is the Accusative, and the Object of monstrāt.

6 4. The Genitive Case.—The Latin Genitive (besides other uses) expresses the English Possessive Case, and, in the First Declension, terminates in -ae:

The woman's daughter. Fēmīn-ae filīā, or (less commonly) filīā fēmīn-ae.

As the Latin Gen. expresses many other relations besides possession, it is usual, in parsing a Gen. Noun qualifying another Noun, to say that the former is governed by the latter.

Why is fēmīnae Genitive?—Ans., Because it is governed by the Noun filīā.

In English the Possessive Case always precedes the Noun which it qualifies.1 In Latin the Genitive generally precedes, but not always.

7 5. The Dative Case.—When a Noun expresses the person (or thing) (1) to whom a thing is given, or (2) for whom a thing is done, the Noun is put in the Dative (i.e. Giving) Case, which, in the First Declension, is expressed by the termination -ae:

(1) The daughter gives an eagle to the woman. Fīlī-ā āquīl-am fēmīn-ae dā-t.
(2) The woman points out the eagle to, or for, (her) daughter. Fēmīn-ā āquīl-am filī-ae monstra-t.

(1) Why is fēmīnae Dative?—Ans., After a verb of Giving, or, Indirect Object of dat.

In answer to the question (2) Why is filīae Dative? it is usual to say Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage.

---

1 Distinguish the English Possessive Case "sun's" from "of the sun," which is not a Case at all, but a Phrase used instead of a Case.
6. The Ablative Case, besides (1) sometimes expressing separation, or motion from, i.e. ablation, also (2) always expresses the instrument with or by which an action is performed. In the FirstDeclension, the Ablative is denoted by -a long, -ā:

(1) The woman frees the daughter from blame.
Fēmīn-ā filī-am culpā libēra-t.

He hastens from Capua.
Prōpērā-t Cāpū-ā.

(2) The woman washes the daughter with water.
The daughter gives money with (her) right hand.
Fēmīn-ā filī-am āquā lāva-t.
Fīlī-ā pēcūnī-am dextrā da-t.

(1) Why is culpā the Ablative?—Ans., Ablative of Separation.¹

(2) Why is āquā the Ablative?—Ans., Ablative of the Means or Instrument.

FIRST DECLENSION, SINGULAR NUMBER.

Nom. Insūl-ā, (an or the) island (Subject).
Voc. Insūl-ā, O island.
Acc. Insūl-am, (an or the) island (Object).
Gen. Insūl-ae, (an or the) island's, or of (an or the) island.
Dat. Insūl-ae, to or for (an or the) island.
Abl. Insūl-ā, from, with, or by (an or the) island.¹

9 The Article.—From the above form it will be seen that what is sometimes called “the Article” in English (i.e. a or the) does not exist in Latin. Insūl-ā must be rendered “an island” or “the island,” according to the sense.

EXERCISE I.

(Learn Vocabulary I.)

1. ²Fili-ae. 2. Aquil-ā. 3. Pecuni-am. 4. ²Femin-ā. 5. Reginam. 6. Aqu-ā. 7. ²Puell-ae. 8. Naut-ā.²

¹ The Ablative is only sometimes used to express separation. Most frequently it cannot be so used without a Preposition. The particular Verbs and Adjectives of Separation, which are followed by an Ablative without a Preposition, will be given later on. But the pupil must remember that insūlā, without an accompanying Preposition, very seldom means from an island.

² These words are capable of more than one translation. Each translation should be written down, both here and for the future.
8. O sailor.

EXERCISE II.

Parse the Nouns in the following Exercise, stating in what Case each is, and why.


[Words in brackets, thus (her), are not to be translated.]

1. The queen gives an island to (her) daughter.²  2. The woman's daughter gives money to the sailor.  3. The sailor washes (his) daughter with (his) right hand (5a).  4. The sailor's violence overcomes the patience of the queen.  5. The woman by (her) patience overcomes the sailor's violence.  6. The daughter gives the queen's money to the sailor.  7. (Thy) daughter's patience, O woman, overcomes the violence of the queen.  8. Experience gives (to) the sailor wisdom.  9. The sailor's prudence delivers the daughter from the storm.

(When this Exercise is turned into Latin, parse the Latin; and do the same with future Exercises.)

THE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

There are six similar cases for the Plural of each Noun, so that the Singular and Plural of insul-ă are thus declined:

¹ The Pupil should parse this Exercise before construing it. He should then commit the Latin to memory so as to be able to repeat the Latin of this Exercise from his own English, or from the English when read aloud to him, before he translates the next Exercise into Latin.
² The Pupil should note the order of the words in the Latin Exercise above, and imitate it by putting the Verb (for the present) at the end.

Words that are bracketed in the English Exercises are not to be translated into Latin, e.g. her in the first sentence of the English Exercise II.
### FIRST DECLENSION.

**Singular.**

| Nom. | Insul-ā, an island. |
| Voc. | Insul-ā, O island. |
| Acc. | Insul-am, an island. |
| Gen. | Insul-ae, of an island. |
| Dat. | Insul-ae, to or for an island. |
| Abl. | Insul-ā, from, with, or by an island. |

**Plural.**

| | Insul-ae, islands. |
| Voc. | Insul-ae, O islands. |
| Acc. | Insul-ās, islands. |
| Gen. | Insul-ārum, of islands. |
| Dat. | Insul-īs, to or for islands. |
| Abl. | Insul-īs, from, with, or by islands. |

### Exercise III.

1. Puell-īs.
2. Femin-ārum.
3. Femin-ā.
4. Naut-ae.
5. Violenti-ā.
6. Aquil-ae.
7. Aquil-īs.
8. Aquil-ās.

1. To women.
2. From blame.
3. Eagles (object).
4. By patience.
5. Of eagles.
6. O women.
7. To eagles.
8. Women (subject).
9. From an eagle.
10. To sailors.

If a Nominative is changed from the Singular to the Plural Number, the Verb changes also:

- The woman loves: Fēmin-ā āmā-t.
- The women love: Fēmin-ae āmā-nt.
- The eagle devours: Āquīl-ā vōrā-t.
- The eagles devour: Āquīl-ae vōrā-nt.

The Plural of all Verbs ending in -ā-t is formed by inserting n between a and t:

\[
\text{Sūpēra-nt, they overcome, monstra-nt, they point out, da-nt, they give.}
\]

### Exercise IV.

**A.**—Change the Singular into the Plural in the Nouns and Verbs of the following:

1. Naut-ā ama-t.
2. Regin-ā monstra-t.
3. Fili-ā lava-t.
4. Femin-ā da-t.
5. Naut-ā supera-t.
6. Puell-ā libera-t.

**B.**—Change the Plural into the Singular in the following:

1. Nautae da-nt.
2. Regin-ae supera-nt.
3. Aquil-ae vora-nt.
4. Fili-ae ama-nt.
5. Dextr-ae libera-nt.
6. Stell-ae monstra-nt.

---

1 The words or sentences thus marked are capable of different renderings; all of which should be given.
**Exercise V.**


1. The sailor overcomes the storm. 2. The sailors overcome the storm. 3. The women love the girl. 4. The woman loves the girl. 5. The queen gives money to the sailors. 6. The eagles devour the sailor. 7. By patience the sailor overcomes the storms. 8. The sailor's daughter points out the eagle. 9. The sailor's daughters point out the eagle to the queen with (their) right hands. 10. The queen's wisdom frees the woman from blame. 11. The daughters of the sailors wash the women with water (5a).

**Exercise VI.**

11 After the verb "give," to is often not used in English, but the Dative must be retained in Latin:

The queen gives the sailors money.

Regīna pēcūniam nautīs dat.

12 Et, (which means both or and,) is sometimes repeated to couple together two Nouns in the same case:

Experience gives both patience and wisdom.

Expērientiā et pātientiām et sāpientiām dat.

Sometimes the former et (both) is omitted:

The stars point out the way for (both) the sailors and the women.

Stellae viam (et) nautīs et feminīs monstrant.

---

1 Sūpērat is Sing. agreeing with its Nom. pātientī-ā, and is not affected by the Plural Number of the Genitive nautārūm. What overcomes?—Ans., patience.

2 This and all the following Latin Exercises should be carefully parsed before being construed, and then learned, so that the pupil can readily repeat them when the English is given. For filiābus, déābus, &c., see Exercise LXXXIV., p. 158, and foll.
1. By experience and (by) patience the sailor overcomes the storm.
2. The queen gives water both to the sailors and to the women.
3. The women give to the sailors water and money.
4. Wisdom, O sailors, gives patience to the queen.
5. The stars point out the way for the daughter of the sailor.
6. The queen’s daughter washes the woman with water.
7. The patience of sailors, O daughter, overcomes the storm.
8. The sailors, by (their) patience, overcome the violence of the storm.
9. The queen’s daughters give the (11) sailor water.
10. By money the woman frees (her) daughter from the violence of the sailors.

THE SECOND OR O-DECLENSION.

This Declension is divided into three groups, in which the Nominative ends in:

(1) -ús
(2) -ś
(3) -um

1. Nouns in -ús.

Singular. Plural.
Nom. Đōmīn-ūs, a lord.1 Đōmīn-ī, lords.
Voc. Đōmīn-ě, O lord. Đōmīn-ī, O lords.
Ae. Đōmīn-um, a lord. Đōmīn-ōs, lords.
Gen. Đōmīn-ī, of a lord.2 Đōmīn-ōrum, of lords.
Dat. Đōmīn-ō, to or for a lord. Đōmīn-īs, to or for lords.
Abl. Đōmīn-ō, by, with, or from a lord.3 Đōmīn-īs, by, with, or from lords.

The Voc. Sing. of filī-ūs, a son, and of proper names in -īūs, contracts -īě into -ī: filī, O son; Mercūrī, O

1 Đōmīnūs means lord in the sense of owner, master.
2 The Gen. Sing. of nouns in -ūs, -ūm, was generally contracted into -ī; but most English books retain -ii.
3 N.B. A noun denoting a living thing is never used with by without the Latin Preposition ā or āb. The pupil should remember that by a spear may be translated hāstā, but by a lord is ā dōmino.
Par. 14—16] SECOND DECLENSION. 9

Mercury. The termination -ie was avoided even in common nouns in -ius, e.g. nunti-us, a messenger. The Vocatives of these words were not used at all. The Voc. of Deus, God, is the same as the Nominative.

2. — a. Nouns in -ēr (gen. -ri).¹

Dat. Māgist-ō, to or for a master.  Māgist-ī, to or for masters.  Māgist-ī, by, with, or from masters.
Abl. Māgist-ō, by (13a), with, or from a master.  Māgist-ī, by, with, or from masters.


Dat. Pūēr-ō, to or for a boy.  Pūēr-ī, to or for boys.  Pūēr-ī, to or for boys.
Abl. Pūēr-ō, by (13a), with, or from a boy.  Pūēr-ī, by, with, or from boys.³

Vīr, a man, is declined like pūēr, except that ī is written for ē: vīr-um, vīr-ī, vīr-ō, and vīr-ī, vīr-ōs, vīr-ōrum, vīr-īs.

Nouns in -ri and -ēri. The best way to remember which Nouns make -ri and which make -ēri, is to remember that

14 1. The only Nouns declined like pūēr are vīr, man; gēnēr, son-in-law; sōcēr, father-in-law; vespēr, evening; Libēr, the god of wine (called by the Greeks Bacchus); also libēr-ī, children (used only in the plural).³

15 ¹ Nouns in -er once ended in -ērus, like nūmēr-ūs, a number. The Voc. pūēr-ē is found in Old Latin.
² Final -i, -o are always long. Also final -is, in the Dat. and Abl. Pl. of the Second Declension, is always long, and final -us in the Nom. Sing. is always short. These syllables will not therefore be always marked long or short for the future.
16 ³ The Adjective adulter (used as a Noun to mean an adulterer) may also be included in this list; and so may Adjectives in -fer and -ger used as Nouns, e.g. signīfer, standard-bearer, armīger, armour-bearer or squire.
2. All other Nouns in ūr are declined like mágister e.g. áger, cáper, &c.

3.—Nouns in -um.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>Regn-um, a kingdom</th>
<th>Regn-ā, kingdoms.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>Regn-um, O kingdom</td>
<td>Regn-ā, O kingdoms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>Regn-um, a kingdom.</td>
<td>Regn-ā, kingdoms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>Regn-ō, to or for a kingdom.</td>
<td>Regn-īs, to or for kingdoms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>Regn-ō, by, with, or from a kingdom.</td>
<td>Regn-īs, by, with, or from kingdoms.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISE VII.

Hābē-t, (he) has.  Hābēnt, (they) have.
Terrē-t, (he) terrifies.  Terrēnt, (they) terrify.
Time-t, (he) fears.  Time-nt, (they) fear.


1. The lord has a garden.  2. The lord's son has gardens.  3. The lord's sons have gardens.  4. The lord gives a garden to (his) son.  5. The master gives the slave a horse.  6. The slave has a sword.  7. The lord's sword terrifies the slave.  8. The slaves fear the master's sword.  9. The master terrifies the men with (his) sword.  10. The slaves overcome the man by patience.  11. Experience, O son, gives men patience.  12. The slave's patience overcomes the master's violence (5a).

EXERCISE VIII.—Nouns like mágister.

An Active Verb in -at, -ant, or -et, -ent, can be made Passive by adding -ur; but the ā or ē of the Verb, which was shortened before t (supērā-t, terrē-t), is long before -ur.

---

1 Where there is no Subject to the Verb expressed, he or they must be supplied. Here hābent must be translated they have.
2 "The slave" here stands for "to the slave," and must be placed in the Dative Case. The pupil must be prepared for this in similar sentences where "to" is omitted after the word "give."
SECOND DECLENSION.

sūpērā-tur, he is (being) overcome; sūpērant-ur, they are (being) overcome.

terrē-tur, he is (being) terrified; terrent-ur, they are (being) terrified.

17 Rule.—(1) The instrument is expressed by the Ablative alone; but (2) the agent (whether a man or other animal) requires, before the Ablative, the Preposition ā (āb, before a vowel or h).

The girl is terrified (1) with (or Puella (1) hastā (2) ā nautā by) a spear (2) by the sailor. terrētur.


Exercise IX.

Caution.—Distinguish between:

Libr-os, books. Libēr-os, children.
Libr-um, a book. Libēr-um, Liber, the god of wine.


B. 1. The master terrifies the servants. 2. The servant fears the master's violence. 3. The crab fears the snakes of the field. 4. The goat fears the servant's knife. 5. The umpire overcomes the lord's violence by (his) patience. 6. The artificer gives the servant a field. 7. The servant gives (his) master a knife. 8. The servants are terrified by the lord's threats. 9. The lord is overcome by the slaves.

Exercise X.—Nouns like pūēr.

1. Hortum puero dant. 2. Vesperum puere timet. 3. Agricolae Liberum amant. 4. Vesper virum terret. 5. Viri socer

1. The boy loves Liber. 2. The woman's son-in-law fears the father-in-law. 3. The women fear the man's son-in-law. 4. The men's father-in-law terrifies the boys. 5. The woman's patience overcomes the violence of the children. 6. Experience gives men wisdom. 7. By patience children overcome the father-in-law's violence. 8. The wild-boars are overcome by the spears of the lords. 9. The queen is delivered (8) from the envy of the servants (5a).

**Exercise XI.—Nouns like māgister and pūer.**

1. Nōn, not.1
2. Nēquē, and not. (Par. 18, 19)
3. Lauda-t, praises.
4. Culpa-t, blames.

1. The lord does not blame the woman.
2. The lord praises the man, and does not blame the woman.


1. The book praises Liber. 2. The servants of Liber do not praise books. 3. The boys terrify the goats and do not fear the snakes. 4. The boy terrifies the goat with a knife. 5. The man praises (his) father-in-law's field. 6. The snakes terrify the artificer's son-in-law. 7. The man fears (his) father-in-law, and does not love (his) son-in-law. 8. The husbandmen give Liber a goat. 9. The queen is not delivered from the storm by the sailors (5a).

---

1 Nōn always means not; but not is not always to be translated nōn. In commands and some other sentences, nē is used, see Exercise XXXVI. But not may always be translated by nōn in statements and direct questions; and these are the only sentences with which the pupil will have to do for the present.
Exercise XII.—Nouns in -um and -ér.

**Rule.**—Two Nominatives coupled by -et take the Verb in the Plural:

*Patience and constancy overcome* Pātientia et constantia violentiām sūpērant.


1. **The master gives the attendants gold.** 2. **The master's gifts are not praised by the boys.** 3. **The boy and the girl love rewards.** 4. **The master gives the boy the reward of diligence.** 5. **The husbandmen are delighted by the walls and temples of the town.** 6. **The temples of the town have silver and gold.** 7. **The husbandman and the sailor give gifts to the temples of the towns.** 8. **The man by (his) gifts overcomes the sailor's constancy.** 9. **The sailors praise the husbandmen's cornfields.** 10. **The lord is terrified by the storm, and does not love water.**

**ADJECTIVES**

**FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.**

**ADJECTIVES IN -ūs, -ā, -um.**

Adjectives in Latin agree in Number and Case with the Nouns which they qualify:

- **Nom. Sing.** Bōnus dōminus. **The good lord.**
- **Gen. Sing.** Bōni dōmīni. **Of the good lord.**
- **Nom. Plur.** Bōni dōmīni. **The good lords.**
- **Gen. Plur.** Bōnorum dōmīnorum. **Of the good lords.**

But besides agreeing in number and case, most Latin Adjectives also have three forms to suit the three kinds of Noun-terminations represented by (1) dōminus, (2) fēmina, (3) regnum.
ADJECTIVES.


These three forms of the Adjective are called its Genders.
(1) The form in -ūs is called the Masculine Gender, (2) the form in -ā the Feminine, (3) the form in -um the Neuter.

21 Rule.—Adjectives agree with their Nouns in Gender, Number, and Case.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular.</th>
<th>1. Plural.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bon-us</td>
<td>Bon-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fem.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bōn-ā</td>
<td>Bōn-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neut.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bōn-um</td>
<td>Bōn-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bōn-ē</td>
<td>Bōn-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bōn-um</td>
<td>Bōn-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bōn-ī</td>
<td>Bōn-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bōn-ō</td>
<td>Bōn-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bōn-ō</td>
<td>Bōn-ī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

22 Gender of the First Declension.—Nouns of the First Declension are Feminine.

Exceptions: nauta, a sailor, auriga, a charioteer, and other words denoting the occupations of men, are Masculine.

23 Gender of the Second Declension.—(1) Nouns in -ūs and -ēr are Masculine, (2) Nouns in -um are Neuter.

Exceptions.—Dōmus, house, and hūmus, ground, are Feminine; pēlagus, the sea, virūs, poison, and vulgus, the common folk, are Neuter.¹

¹ The exceptional Masculine use of vulgus is not to be imitated. For the other exceptions, see the Table of Genders, p. 226. A few Nouns (together with all those which may denote either males or
### Singular Number.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A good woman</td>
<td>A good lord</td>
<td>A good gift</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. Bón-a femin-a</td>
<td>Bón-us dómin-us</td>
<td>Bón-um dónum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. &quot; -a</td>
<td>&quot; -ē</td>
<td>&quot; -ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. &quot; -am</td>
<td>&quot; -um</td>
<td>&quot; -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. &quot; -ae</td>
<td>&quot; -i</td>
<td>&quot; -i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. &quot; -ae</td>
<td>&quot; -o</td>
<td>&quot; -o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. &quot; -ā</td>
<td>&quot; -ā</td>
<td>&quot; -ā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Plural Number.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Good women</th>
<th>Good lords</th>
<th>Good gifts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. Bón-ae femin-ae</td>
<td>Bón-i domin-i</td>
<td>Bón-ae dōn-ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. &quot; -ae</td>
<td>&quot; -i</td>
<td>&quot; -ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. &quot; -ae</td>
<td>&quot; -os</td>
<td>&quot; -ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. &quot; -ārum</td>
<td>&quot; -ārum</td>
<td>&quot; -ārum-ārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. &quot; -is</td>
<td>&quot; -is</td>
<td>&quot; -is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. &quot; -is</td>
<td>&quot; -is</td>
<td>&quot; -is</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hitherto the terminations of the Noun and Adjective have been the same. But this is not always the case, as may be seen from the following instances:

### Singular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A great man</th>
<th>A great charioteer (m)</th>
<th>A great sea (n)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. Magn-us vir</td>
<td>Magn-us aurig-ā</td>
<td>Magn-um pēlāg-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. Magn-ē vir</td>
<td>Magn-ē aurig-a</td>
<td>Magn-um pēlāg-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. &quot; -um vir -um</td>
<td>Magn-um aurig-am</td>
<td>Magn-um pēlāg-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. &quot; -i</td>
<td>&quot; -i</td>
<td>&quot; -i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. &quot; -o</td>
<td>&quot; -o</td>
<td>&quot; -o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. &quot; -o</td>
<td>&quot; -o</td>
<td>&quot; -o</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise XIII.**


*Females, e.g. pōēta, poet, incōla, inhabitant* vary between the Masc. and Fem.; these are said to be of common Gender, and are indicated in the Vocabularies by c. But incōla, pōēta, and the like, are so much more frequently Masc. than Fem., that they are marked m.
ADJECTIVES.  

(The Adjective in Latin generally, but not always, follows its Noun.)

1. The vigorous charioteer is not terrified by dangers. 2. The danger of the way, and the violence of the storm, do not terrify the fearless charioteers. 3. The learned master gives a long letter to the honest scribe. 4. The daughters of the dishonest clerk fear the commands of the good queen. 5. The sailor's daughter, fears the vast sea. 6. The dangers of the long way overcome the constancy of the good charioteer. 7. The queen by splendid gifts overcomes the constancy of the worthy sailors. 8. The unworthy charioteers terrify with threats the sailor's daughter. 9. Storms, O fearful sailor, do not terrify fearless men. 10. The man points out the way with (his) right hand for the honest sailor.

Exercise XIV.

Est, (he, she, it) is.  Sunt, (they) are.

After the Verb est or sunt the question who? or what? is answered by the Nominative.

Britain is an island.

Wars are the causes of evils.

24 Rule.—The Verb to be takes the same Case after it as before it.

Why are insula and causae Nom.?—Ans., Because the Verb est takes the same Case after it as before it.

The horses are great (horses).

The woman is (a) good (woman).

24a From the last examples we see that an Adjective still agrees with its Noun in Number, Gender, and Case, even when separated from the Noun by the Verb to be.


1. The sailor is timid. 2. The walls of the town are high. 3. The field is broad. 4. The towns are not great. 5. The experience
of the boy is small. 6. The wings of the eagle are great. 7. The walls of the temple are white. 8. The master has black horses and white goats. 9. The master’s horses are black. 10. The eagle has white wings. 11. The timid sailor is terrified both by the unjust queen and by the vast sea.

Exercise XV.

Adjectives in -ēr.

Like the Nouns in -er, so also the Adjectives in -er are declined (1) some like puer, (2) others like māgister.

The pupil will find it the best course to commit to memory the former class, as being the fewer.

1. Declined like puer: asper, rough, liber, free (whence liberi, children), miser, wretched, prosper, prosperous, tēner, tender.

2. Declined like māgister; all Adjectives in -er not contained in the above list.


1. The beautiful woman is overcome by the foul disease. 2. The slothful sailors fear the active husbandman. 3. The cunning boys give a lean goat to the miserable sailor. 4. The wretched sons of the sick husbandman fear the foul disease. 5. The foul disease terrifies the wretched sailors. 6. The sick women praise the sacred books with foolish words. 7. The vigorous husbandmen overcome by (their) wisdom the foul diseases (5a). 8. The cunning lord gives lean goats to the sick women.

1 As final -er is always short, it will not be marked short for the future.

2 Besides these, there are (though not contained in the following Exercises), (1) lacer, torn, and (2) Adjectives derived from the Verbs fer-o and ger-o, I bear, viz. frugi-fer, fruit-bearing; corn-iger, horn-bearing.

In the nom. sing. prosperus is more common than prosper.
THE THIRD DECLENSION.

1. THE CONSONANT BRANCH.

In the Third Declension some Nouns have a Stem (see Glossary, Appendix VIII.) ending in a consonant, e.g. c in judic-is, judic-i, of a judge, to a judge, or m in hiem-is, hiem-i, of winter, to winter. This class of Nouns is called the Consonant Branch.

In the Consonant Branch of the Third Declension the Nom. Sing. endings are numerous, but -s (sometimes disguised in the shape of -x, which represents -gs, and -cs) is the most common.

A.—MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. { [-s]</td>
<td>-ès</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. {</td>
<td>-ès</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. -em</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. -is</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. -i</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. -ë, rarely -ë</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I. Nouns in which the Stem ends in a guttural (throat) letter, i.e. -c hard, or -g:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Leader (m.)</th>
<th>Judge (c).</th>
<th>Law (f.)</th>
<th>Citadel (f.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. Dux (Duc-s)</td>
<td>Judex (Judic-s)</td>
<td>Lex (Leg-s)</td>
<td>Arx (Arc-s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. Duc-em</td>
<td>Judic-em</td>
<td>Leg-em</td>
<td>Arc-em</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. Duc-is</td>
<td>Judic-is</td>
<td>Leg-is</td>
<td>Arc-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. Duc-i</td>
<td>Judic-i</td>
<td>Leg-i</td>
<td>Arc-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. Duc-ë</td>
<td>Judic-ë</td>
<td>Leg-ë</td>
<td>Arc-ë</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. Duc-ës</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. Duc-ës</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. Duc-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. Duc-iibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. Duc-iibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 The abbreviation c. means that júdex is of common gender, being mostly masculine, but sometimes feminine.
II. Nouns in which the Stem ends with a dental (tooth) letter, i.e. -t or -d:

**Singular.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Soldier (m).</td>
<td>Milit-em</td>
<td>Milit-is</td>
<td>Milit-i</td>
<td>Milit-ē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Éstās (Éstatis-s)</td>
<td>Éstāt-em</td>
<td>Éstāt-is</td>
<td>Éstāt-i</td>
<td>Éstāt-ē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Milit-ēs</td>
<td>Milit-ēs</td>
<td>Milit-um</td>
<td>Milit-ibus</td>
<td>Milit-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Péd-ēs</td>
<td>Péd-ēs</td>
<td>Péd-um</td>
<td>Péd-ibus</td>
<td>Péd-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Éstāt-ēs</td>
<td>Éstāt-ēs</td>
<td>Éstāt-um</td>
<td>Éstāt-ibus</td>
<td>Éstāt-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Nox, f.** (for noct-s) Gen. noct-is, night, is declined like Éstās; but the Gen. Plur. (see Par. 40) is noct-īum.

27 **Rule.**—The Dative is used after Adjectives signifying pleasing, displeasing, troublesome, easy, difficult, and the like:

*Laws are not troublesome to a**

*Leges jūdīci justo non mōlestae sunt.*

28 **Rule.**—Dignus and indignus (worthy and unworthy) govern the Ablative:

*Impatience is unworthy of a**

*Impatientia dūcē indigna est.*

**Exercise XVI.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Laed-īt, (he) hurts.</th>
<th>Laed-unt, (they) hurt.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Laed-ūr, (he) is (being) hurt.</td>
<td>Laedunt-ūr, (they) are (being) hurt.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Leges justae regibus bonis non sunt molestae. 2. Bella militibus jucunda sunt. 3. Militum ignavia ducibus claris ingrata

---

1 The e of the true Stem (milēt-) is changed into -i in all except the Nom. and Voc. Cases. Similarly, the true Stem of virgo (virgon-) is changed into virgin-. But sometimes, as in jūdēx above, the true Stem (jūdic-) is lost in the Nom. but preserved in the other Cases.
est. 4. Lapides militum miserorum pedes laedunt. 5. Com-
itis validi constantiā fessus eques delectatur. 6. Equites
peditem acutis gladiis terrent. 7. Rege bono leges malae
indignae sunt. 8. Judicum verba injusta dominis justis
molesta sunt. 9. Noctes obscuras pueri parvi timent. 10.
Domini arx ab agricolā laudatur. 11. Aestatis memoria
militibus grata est. 12. Aurigae pes sinister spinā acuta
laeditur. 13. Agricolae equi validi (24a) sunt.

1. The constancy of the strong soldiers is pleasing to the good king.
2. Slothfulness is unworthy of a great leader. 3. The husband-
men point out the citadel of the lord to (their) companions.
4. A dark night terrifies the timid boy. 5. The memory of
the pleasant summer is agreeable to the miserable husband-
men. 6. The anger of the horsemen is displeasing to the
foot-soldiers. 7. The companions of the horse-soldier hurt the
good husbandman with many stones. 8. Good laws are worthy
of a just king. 9. The feet of the weary companions are hurt
by the sharp stones. 10. The queen gives just laws to the
renowned leader and to the good judges.

III. Nouns in which the Stem ends with a labial (lip)
letter, i.e. -m, -p, -b:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chief (m.)</th>
<th>Beam (f.)</th>
<th>Winter (f.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. Princep-s (Princīp-s)</td>
<td>Trāb-em</td>
<td>Hiem-em</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. Princep-em</td>
<td>Trāb-em</td>
<td>Hiem-em</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. Princep-is</td>
<td>Trāb-is</td>
<td>Hiem-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. Princep-i</td>
<td>Trāb-i</td>
<td>Hiem-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. Princep-ē</td>
<td>Trāb-ē</td>
<td>Hiem-ē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

| N.V. Princep-ēs | Trāb-ēs | Hiem-ēs |
| Acc. Princep-ēs | Trāb-ēs | Hiem-ēs |
| Gen. Princep-um | Trāb-um | Hiem-um |
| Dat. Princep-ibus | Trāb-ibus | Hiem-ibus |
| Abl. Princep-ibus | Trāb-ibus | Hiem-ibus |

IV. Nouns in which the stem ends with (1) a nasal
(nose) letter, i.e. -n, or (2) -u:

---

1 P is inserted for euphony, between m and s in the Nominative of
this word, so that the right spelling is hiemps.
### THIRD DECLENSION.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Maiden (f.)</th>
<th>Crane (c.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lion (m.)</td>
<td>Virgo (Virgō-n)</td>
<td>Gru-s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.V. Leo (Leō-n)</td>
<td>Virgin-em</td>
<td>Grū-em</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc Leōn-em</td>
<td>Virgin-is</td>
<td>Grū-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. Leōn-is</td>
<td>Virgin-i</td>
<td>Grū-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. Leōn-i</td>
<td>Virgin-ē</td>
<td>Grū-ē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. Leōn-ē</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. Leōn-ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. Leōn-ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. Leōn-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. Leōn-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. Leōn-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### EXERCISE XVII.

#### 30 Rule.
The question *When?* or *Within what time?* is answered by the Ablative, as **hiēme**, *in winter*, **nocte**, *by night*.

#### 31 Rule.
The question *How long?* or *During what time?* is answered by the Accusative, as **multos annos**, *for, or during, many years*.

**Vivit, (he) lives.**

**Vivunt, (they) live.**


1. The sailor praises land in winter, *(but) blame (it) in summer.*
2. For many hours the lion devours the tender goats. 3. The sailor by night points out a multitude of cranes to the maiden.
4. The daughters of the chiefs fear the savage lion. 5. A

---

1. *Virgo* and *hōmo* originally kept the *o* throughout, and *hōmōnes*, for *hōmines*, is actually preserved, though, of course, not to be used.

2. Repeat *vivunt* after *pāpillōnēs*; *paucas horas (vivunt).*

3. In enumerations, and in other sentences, *ēt*, or some other conjunction, is often omitted where the English must insert *and, but, &c.*
butterfly does not live for many hours. 6. Unjust words are unworthy of a chief. 7. By the companions of the beautiful maidens the lion is frightened with a sword. 8. The winter is troublesome to the maidens and not agreeable to the chief. 9. The queen gives praise to chiefs and gold to poets. 10. In the night the lion devours a multitude of tender goats.

V. Nouns in which the Stem ends with (1) a liquid, i.e. -l, -r, or (2) a sibilant, i.e. -s:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Tree (f.)</th>
<th>Flower (m.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. Consul</td>
<td>Amor (^2)</td>
<td>Flôs (^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. Consûl-em</td>
<td>Amôr-em</td>
<td>Arbor-em</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. Consûl-is</td>
<td>Amôr-is</td>
<td>Arbor-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. Consûl-i</td>
<td>Amôr-i</td>
<td>Arbor-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. Consûl-ê</td>
<td>Amor-ê</td>
<td>Arbor-ê</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. Consûl-ês</td>
<td>Amôr-ês</td>
<td>Flôr-ês</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. Consûl-ês</td>
<td>Amôr-ês</td>
<td>Flôr-ês</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. Consûl-um</td>
<td>Amôr-um</td>
<td>Flôr-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. Consûl-ibus</td>
<td>Amôr-ibus</td>
<td>Flôr-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. Consûl-ibus</td>
<td>Amôr-ibus</td>
<td>Flôr-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cînîs c., makes cînêr-em, cînêr-is, cînêr-i, &c.

33 Note that anser differs from pâter, as püer from mágister; the former retains, the latter rejects, in the other Cases, the -e of the Nom.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Goose (m.)</th>
<th>Father (m.)</th>
<th>Mother (f.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. Anser</td>
<td>Pâter(Pâter-)</td>
<td>Måter(Måter-)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. Ansêr-em</td>
<td>Patr-em</td>
<td>Matr-em</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. Ansêr-is</td>
<td>Patr-is</td>
<td>Matr-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. Ansêr-i</td>
<td>Patr-i</td>
<td>Matr-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. Ansêr-ê</td>
<td>Patr-ê</td>
<td>Matr-ê</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) Many sibilant stems retain -s in the Nom. Sing., but change it to -r in the other cases: flôs, Gen. flôr-is (for flôs-is), rôs, Gen. rôr-is (for rôs-is) of deus. \(^2\) Others have two forms of the Nom.: labôs or labor, Gen. labôr-is, of labour; and so arbôs or arbor, Gen. arbôr-is, of a tree.
Par. 34—36a] THIRD DECLEMENTION.

Plural.

N.V. Anser-ēs Patr-ēs Matr-ēs
Acc. Anser-ēs Patr-ēs Matr-ēs
Gen. Anser-um Patr-um Matr-um
Dat. Anser-ibus Patr-ibus Matr-ibus
Abl. Anser-ibus Patr-ibus Matr-ibus

Exercise XVIII.

34 Rule.—An Adjective is sometimes used (1) in the Masculine to agree with men understood; (2) in the Neuter to agree with thing or things understood.

Many (men) praise the king.
The father gives (his) son many (things).
To err is (a) dangerous (thing).

Sūpērā-re, to overcome.
Culpā-re, to blame.
Laudā-re, to praise.

Errāre est pēricūlōsum. 2

35 N.B.—The Adj. is often separated from its Noun by a Gen. belonging to the Noun, e.g., the consul's clear voice, clāra consulis vox; and sometimes by other words: flōrībus sē pulchris dēlectat, he delights himself with beautiful flowers.


36 The pupil should note that in the Consonant Branch of the Third Declension, he can form the cases of any Noun without committing them to memory, if he remembers the Nom. and Gen. Singular. All the other cases can be formed by striking off the -is from the Gen., e.g. anser-, patr-, and adding -em, -i, -ē, -es, -um, -ibus. See p. 18.

36a Here, part of a Verb is treated as a Noun, and is the Subject of est. See further, Exercise XXXV.

3 Agricōlis may be parsed as the "Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage." See par. 7.
To overcome is pleasant for soldiers. 2. The consul gives many things to the vigorous soldier. 3. Many praise the king, few blame (him). 4. A goose fears many things, (and) terrifies few men. 5. The companions of the soldiers overpower the king's voice by (their) clamour. 6. The colour of the flowers is agreeable to the eyes of the beautiful maidens. 7. The broad sepulchres have the ashes of many soldiers. 8. The flower by (its) colour and pleasant odour delights the maidens. 9. The cold winters were troublesome to the timid sons of the husbandmen. 10. To praise the bad is unpleasing and—not just.

B.—Neuter Nouns of the Consonant Branch.

**Singular.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Head (n.)</th>
<th>Name (n.)</th>
<th>Right or Law (n.)</th>
<th>Work (n.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. Acc. Căpūt</td>
<td>Nōmen</td>
<td>Jūs</td>
<td>Òpus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. Căpīt-is</td>
<td>Nōmīn-is</td>
<td>Jūr-is</td>
<td>Opēr-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. Căpīt-i</td>
<td>Nōmīn-i</td>
<td>Jūr-i</td>
<td>Opēr-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. Căpīt-e</td>
<td>Nōmīn-e</td>
<td>Jūr-e</td>
<td>Opēr-e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Head (n.)</th>
<th>Name (n.)</th>
<th>Right or Law (n.)</th>
<th>Work (n.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. Acc. Căpīt-ă</td>
<td>Nōmīn-ă</td>
<td>Jūr-ă</td>
<td>Opēr-ă</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. Căpīt-um</td>
<td>Nōmīn-um</td>
<td>Jūr-um</td>
<td>Opēr-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. Căpīt-ībus</td>
<td>Nōmīn-ībus</td>
<td>Jūr-ībus</td>
<td>Opēr-ībus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. Căpīt-ībus</td>
<td>Nōmīn-ībus</td>
<td>Jūr-ībus</td>
<td>Opēr-ībus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note also corpus, corpōr-is, corpōr-i, &c., a body.

**Exercise XIX.**

When two Nouns of kindred meaning are connected together in one phrase, instead of et between the two Nouns, -quē is added as an extra syllable to the latter of the two Nouns: flowers and trees, fīōres arbōresquē.


---

1 The words things and men (here and in other passages where they are used with many or few) should not be translated. See the Rule above.

2 Jūre is the Abl. used as an Adverb, by right, i.e. rightly, naturally.

39. THird declension.

2. Nouns whose Stem ends in i.

These Nouns differ from the Consonant Branch in this respect, that they make the Gen. Plur. in -ium; whereas, in the Consonant Branch, the Gen. Plur. mostly ends in -um. But the Stem i (being very variable, often dropped, and often changed into e,) frequently disappears.

---

1. What case is hominibus, and why? See Par. 7.

2. For the Genders of Nouns of the Third Declension see page 226; and for Exercises on the Exceptions see Exercises LXXXIV to XCII.

3. The more advanced pupil will find that several Nouns of the Consonant Branch take -ium in the Gen. Pl. The following rules will be found useful:

1. Nouns whose Gen. Sing. is " as duc-is, take -um (duc-um).
   Examples: pāt-um, sēn-um, pēd-um, grēg-um, āp-um, &c.

2. Nouns whose Gen. Sing. is " as arc-is) take -ium.
   Exceptions are voc-um, lég-um, rēg-um, jūr-um, and a few others.
B.—1. Masculine and Feminine Nouns.

Singular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ship (f.)</th>
<th>Shower (m.)</th>
<th>Cloud (f.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. Nāv-īs</td>
<td>Imber (Imbr-ī-)</td>
<td>Nūb-ēs (Nubi-)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. Nāv-em</td>
<td>Imbr-em</td>
<td>Nūb-em</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. Nāv-īs</td>
<td>Imbr-īs</td>
<td>Nūb-īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. Nāv-i</td>
<td>Imbr-i</td>
<td>Nūb-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. Nāv-i or -ē</td>
<td>Imbr-i (-ē)</td>
<td>Nūb-ē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural.

| N.V. Nāv-ēs | Imbr-ēs | Nūb-ēs |
| Acc. Nāv-ēs | Imbr-ēs | Nūb-ēs |
| Gen. Nāv-ium | Imbr-ium | Nūb-ium |
| Dat. Nāv-ibus | Imbr-ibus | Nūb-ibus |
| Abl. Nāv-ibus | Imbr-ibus | Nūb-ibus |

2.—Neuter Nouns.

Singular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sea (n.)</th>
<th>Animal (n.)</th>
<th>Spur (n.)</th>
<th>Bone (n.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. Acc. Mār-ē</td>
<td>ἄνιμαλ-ια</td>
<td>Calcar</td>
<td>Ōs ²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. Mār-is</td>
<td>ἄνιμαλ-ια</td>
<td>Calcar-is</td>
<td>Oss-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. Mār-i</td>
<td>ἄνιμαλ-ια</td>
<td>Calcar-i</td>
<td>Oss-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. Mār-i</td>
<td>ἄνιμαλ-ια</td>
<td>Calcar-i</td>
<td>Oss-ē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural.

| N.V. Acc. Mariā | ἄνιμαλ-ία | Calcar-ία | Oss-ά |
| Gen. Mari-um | ἄνιμαλ-ία | Calcar-ία | Oss-ίum |
| Dat. Mari-ibus | ἄνιμαλ-ίβος | Calcar-ίβος | Oss-ίbus |
| Abl. Mari-ibus | ἄνιμαλ-ίβος | Calcar-ίβος | Oss-ίbus |

41 Neque or nec, when repeated, means neither . . . nor.

Consum-it, (he) consumes. Consūm-unt, (they) consume.

Exercise XX.

1. Nautae validi neque imbres crebros neque maria saeva timent.
2. Imbri longo et fulmine crebro pastores terrerunt.
3. Hominum sapientia et animalium robur et maris furor superantur.
5. Naves

42 1 A few Nouns in -is take only -im in the Acc., and only -i in the Abl.: sētis, thirst; tussis, cough; vis, violence; and names of towns and rivers, e.g., Tibēris, the Tiber. The following commonly take -im. febris, fever; pelvis, basin; puppis, poop; restis, rope; turris, tower; sēcūris, axe.

43 Ignis makes Abl. in -i, except in poetry: and Abl. -i is always found in those Nouns that always make Acc. -im.

2 Distinguish this word from ōs, ēris, n., mouth, or countenance. Animal, calcar, and almost all other Neuters with Abl. in -i, are derived from Adjectives.

1. Strong horses often fear the spur. 2. The soldiers consume the cities with fire and sword. 3. Repeated lightning and a great storm terrify the merchants. 4. The animals of the sea are many and wonderful. 5. Men by (their) wisdom overcome the threats of seas and the madness of savage animals. 6. Both to leaders and to states strife is often the cause of destruction. 7. Golden spurs give great honour to horse-soldiers. 8. The strength of the ships overcomes both the madness of the sea and the violence of the storms. 9. The bones of small animals are small. 10. The tempest terrifies the citizens with a great cloud. 11. By wisdom and experience men are freed from the violence of savage animals. 12. He lives a few hours.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECISION.

44 These are declined like Nouns of the Third Declension; except that in almost all of them the Abl. Sing. is -i and not -e; and the Gen. Plur. -iwm and not -ium.

A.—Adjectives with Abl. Sing. in -i, and Gen. Plur. in -ium.

1. Adjectives of Three Terminations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th></th>
<th>M. and F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V.</td>
<td>Ācer</td>
<td>ācr-īs</td>
<td>ācr-ē</td>
<td>Ācer-ēs</td>
<td>ācr-īā</td>
<td>Ācr-ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>Ācr-em</td>
<td>ācr-em</td>
<td>ācr-ē</td>
<td>Ācr-ēs</td>
<td>ācr-īā</td>
<td>Ācr-īum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>Ācr-īs</td>
<td>ācr-īs</td>
<td>ācr-ī</td>
<td>Ācr-ībus</td>
<td>ācr-ībus</td>
<td>Ācr-ībus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>Ācr-i</td>
<td>ācr-i</td>
<td>ācr-i</td>
<td>Ācr-i</td>
<td>ācr-i</td>
<td>Ācr-ībus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>Ācr-i</td>
<td>ācr-i</td>
<td>ācr-i</td>
<td>Ācr-ībus</td>
<td>ācr-ībus</td>
<td>Ācr-ībus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Other similar Adjectives are sālūb-er, healthy, ālāc-er, brisk, ēquester, equestrian. In the Nom. Masc. Sing., the forms ācr-is, sālūbr-is, ālācr-is &c. are sometimes used, but more often in poetry than in prose. Cēl-er retains the ē in the Fem. cēlēr-is and in the Neut. cēlēr-e.
2.—Adjectives of Two Terminiations.

**Tristis, sad.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M. and F.</td>
<td>N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. V.</td>
<td>Trist-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>Trist-em</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>Trist-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>Trist-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>Trist-ī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.—Adjectives of One Termination.

**Felix, happy.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M., F., and N.</td>
<td>M. and F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. V.</td>
<td>Félix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>Félic-em</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>Félic-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>Félic-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>Félic-ī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

46 B.—Adjectives with Abl. Sing. in -ē, and Gen. Plur. in -um.

These are mostly Comparatives ending in -ior (m. and f.), -ius (n.): trist-ior, sadder, félic-ior, happier.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M. and F.</td>
<td>N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. V.</td>
<td>Tristior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>Tristior-em</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>Tristior-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>Tristior-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>Tristior-ē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

47 Besides Comparatives, a few other words make the Abl. Sing. in -ē and the Gen. Plur. in -um. Most of them are capable of being used as Nouns: *divēs, (a) rich (man), supplex, a suppliant, vigīl, a watchman, princeps a chief, pauper, a poor man, superstēs, a survivor.*

---

1 A useful Rule is given (Public School Grammar) that:—


1.—Célēr ēquus, *the swift horse.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong> Célēr équ-us</td>
<td>Célēr-ēs équ-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Voc.</strong> Célēr équ-e</td>
<td>Célēr-ēs équ-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong> Célēr-em équ-um</td>
<td>Célēr-ēs équ-ōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong> Célēr-is équ-i</td>
<td>Célēr-īm équ-ōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong> Célēr-ī équ-o</td>
<td>Célēr-ībus équ-īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong> Célēr-ī équ-o</td>
<td>Célēr-ībus équ-īs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.—Mēlius dōnum, *the better gift.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>N.V. Acc.</strong> Mēliās dōn-um</td>
<td>Mēliōr-ā dōn-ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong> Mēliōr-is dōn-ī</td>
<td>Mēliōr-um dōn-ōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong> Mēliōr-ī dōn-ō</td>
<td>Mēliōr-ībus dōn-īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong> Mēliōr-ē dōn-ō</td>
<td>Mēliōr-ībus dōn-īs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.—Fēlix jūdex, *a happy judge.*

Note the two points of difference in the Noun and Adjective (1) Noun -ē, -um; Adj. -ī, -īum:

(1) Fēlic-ī jūdic-ē, *by (13a), with, or from the happy judge.*

(2) Fēlic-īum jūdic-um, *of happy judges.*

**Exercise XXI.**


1. The joyful father gives a better gift to (his) son. 2. The life of a soldier is not agreeable to the son of the rich merchant.

---

1 The Gen. Pl. Célēr-um is only used when the word is used as a Noun, to signify the ancient body-guard in Rome; just as we speak of the "Blues," the "Scots Greys."
3. By (his) sweet poem the good poet delights the great king.
4. A keen contest is pleasant to strong soldiers.
5. The labours of the unhappy judges were displeasing to the just king.
6. The keen anger of the citizens terrifies the companions of the sad leaders.
7. The diligent husbandman is worthy of a fruitful field.
8. The just judges give rewards to the charioteers of the swift horses.
9. The healthy life of the happy sailors was pleasing to the brave boy.
10. The good king is delighted by the songs of the sad poets and (17) by the brave boy.
11. The master frees the boys from blame.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION WITH NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

**Saevus hostis, a cruel enemy.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>Saevus hostis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>Saevē hostis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>Saevum hostem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>Saevi hostis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>Saevō hosti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>Saevō hostē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Almā māter, loving mother.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V.</td>
<td>Alma māter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>Alma matrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>Almae matris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>Almae matrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>Alma matre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Magnum ōpus, a great work.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.V. Acc.</td>
<td>Magnum ōpuś</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>Magnus ōpēris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>Magnō ōpēri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>Magnō ōpērē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise XXII.**

**Quīs?** What (man)? Who (Nom.)? **Quem?** What (man)? Whom (Acc.)? **Quid?** What (thing)? **What (Nom. and Acc.)?**

1. Bonorum operum memoria fortī viro dulcis crat. 2. Virgines pulchrae ducis iracundi minas timent. 3. Milites primae

---

1 Numbers bracketed thus (17) in the Exercises refer to the Paragraphs indicated by the figures in the margin.

1. Brave men fear a dishonourable reputation. 2. A disgraceful death terrifies strong soldiers. 3. Who loves vice? Who is not delighted by (trans. Whom delights not) the memory of virtue? 4. Who (gives) swords to weak old-men? who gives wine to boys? 5. The enemy (use pl.), by (their) savageness and cruel threats, terrify the timid hostages. 6. The tender maidens fear the dark-black clouds and the frequent lightning. 7. The memory of a good work is pleasing to all (men). 8. The citizens flee before the strong cohort (trans. give their backs to the strong cohort). 9. The loving mothers are delighted by the brave deeds of the bold boys. 10. The sad woman is worthy of a better death. 11. (He) is-terrified in the night.

THE FOURTH OR -u DECLENSION.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step (m.)</th>
<th>Hand (f.)</th>
<th>Knee (n.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. V. Grād-ūs</td>
<td>Mān-ūs</td>
<td>Gēn-ū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. Grād-um</td>
<td>Mān-um</td>
<td>Gēn-ū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. Grād-ūs</td>
<td>Mān-ūs</td>
<td>Gēn-ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. Grād-ūi</td>
<td>Mān-ūi</td>
<td>Gēn-ūi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. Grād-āu</td>
<td>Mān-āu</td>
<td>Gēn-āu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. V. Grād-ūs</td>
<td>Mān-ūs</td>
<td>Gēn-ūa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. Grād-ūs</td>
<td>Mān-ūs</td>
<td>Gēn-ūa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. Grād-ūum</td>
<td>Mān-ūum</td>
<td>Gēn-ūum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. Grād-ībus</td>
<td>Mān-ībus</td>
<td>Gēn-ībus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. Grād-ībus</td>
<td>Mān-ībus</td>
<td>Gēn-ībus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The Dat. Sing. in -ūi is sometimes contracted into -ū.

1 "To give backs to an enemy" means "to flee from an enemy."
FOURTH DECLENSION. [Par. 52—55

52 2. Some names of trees, e.g. *pinus*, *pine-tree*, vary between the 2nd and 4th Decl. in Gen. and Abl. Singular, and in Nom. and Acc. Plural.

53 3. The Dat. Plur. is formed in *-ibus* (not *-ibus*) by *arcus*, m., *bow*, *artus*, m., *limb*, and *partus*, m., *birth*, so as not to be confounded with the Dat. Plur. of *arx*, f., *citadel*, *ars*, f., *art*, and *pars*, f., *part*. The Dat. *in-ibus* is also formed by *ācus*, f., *needle*, *portus*, m., *harbour*, and *trib-us*, f., *tribe*. (See also Par. 311.)

54 All nouns of the Fourth Declension that have nōm. *-us*, are masculine, except the names of trees, and five others (see Appendix V. p. 226); those in *-ū* are neuter.

EXERCISE XXIII.

55 Carefully distinguish the different constructions of the Preposition *in*:

*İn* (foll. by Abl.) *in* : *İn* (foll. by Acc.) *into, to, towards*:

(My) father is in the garden. Pater *in horto* est.
The leader leads the soldiers into the city. Dux milites *in urbem* dūcit.


1. The Scythian overcomes (his) enemy with (his) strong bow. 2. The diligent women have sharp needles. 3. Adverse winds drive the ships into safe harbours. 4. The frost of winter is not destructive to pines. 5. The ships of-war are awaiting favourable winds in the safe harbour. 6. Stags by their running, foxes by (their) subtlety, overcome the hunter. 7. The branches of the tall oaks have many acorns. 8. By
hearing and by sight men avoid destructive (things), (and) obtain useful (things). 9. The stag (has) long horns, the bull has short (horns). 10. The bull with his left horn wounds the shepherd. 11. He was sick for-the-whole winter (31).

THE FIFTH OR -E DECLENSION.

Day (m.) Plural.  
Singular.  Plural.  
N.V.  Di-ès  Di-ès  
Acc.  Di-em  Di-ès  
Gen.  Di-èi  Di-èrum  
Dat.  Di-èi  Di-èbus  
Abl.  Di-è  Di-èbus  

In the Gen. and Dat., final -ei is sometimes contracted into -ě; diē, fidē.

All nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine, except dīes, day, and mēridīēs, midday, which are Masculine. 3

EXERCISE XXIV.

Āg-it, (he) drives, or leads. Āg-ītur, (he) is (being) driven.


In summer the hours of the day are many, in winter (the hours) of the night (30). 2. There-were many horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers (use -quē) in the line of the enemy. 3. The light of mid-day is (being) overcome by a dark-black cloud. 4. The

---

1 This Noun is printed thus (as also in the Public School Grammar) to exhibit the Case Terminations more clearly. But the true Stem of rēs is not r- but re-. See p. 239, 'Stem.'

2 The quantity of r-ei varies.

3 Dies should not be used by the beginner in the Feminine, except poetically; to signify, not a literal day, but a season, e.g. The evil day has come. Astra dies vēnit.

Dies and rēs are the only Nouns in the Fifth Declension that are fully declined; and all (but nine) have no Plural.
long line of the enemy (trans. enemies) is being overcome by the fearless soldiers. 5. The memory of prosperity is sometimes unpleasing to the wretched. 6. The heat of the sun was destructive to the thin ice. 7. The memory of joyful days was pleasing to the just judge. 8. Great is the utility of hope. 9. The hostage is being driven into the citadel by the bold leader. 10. The queen shews (her) grief by (her) sad face.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

I.—Regular.

1. The Comparative Degree, if regular, is formed from the Gen. Sing. by taking away -i, (alt-i, alt-) or -is (ferac-is, ferac-), and adding -ior: alt-ior, higher, ferac-ior, more fruitful.

2. The Superlative Degree is formed by taking away -i or -is and adding -issimus: alt-issimus, ferac-issimus.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gen. Sing</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Trist-is</td>
<td>trist-iор, sadder</td>
<td>trist-issimis, sad-dest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recent-is</td>
<td>recent-iор, more re- recent-issimis, most cent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

II.—Irregular Superlatives.

1. -limus.

1. Six Adj. in -lis, form the Compar. regularly, but the Superl. by adding -limus instead of -issimus.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fácil-is, easy</td>
<td>facil-iор</td>
<td>facil-limus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diffícil-is, difficult</td>
<td>difficil-iор</td>
<td>difficil-limus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simil-is, like</td>
<td>simil-iор</td>
<td>simil-limus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dissimil-is, unlike</td>
<td>dissimil-iор</td>
<td>dissimil-limus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grácil-is, thin</td>
<td>grácil-iор</td>
<td>grácil-limus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Húmil-is, low</td>
<td>húmil-iор</td>
<td>húmil-limus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The rest, fertil-is, útil-is &c., have either no Superlative or -issimus; fertil-issimus, útil-issimus, &c.
2. -rimus.

61 2. All Adj. ending in -er form the Compar. regularly, but the Superl. by adding -rimus to the Nominative:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>Liber, liber-i, free</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Celer, celér-is, swift</td>
<td>celer-ior</td>
<td>celer-rimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulcher, pulchr-i, beautiful</td>
<td>pulchr-ior</td>
<td>pulcher-rimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acer, acr-is, sharp</td>
<td>acr-ior</td>
<td>acer-rimus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Adjective vētūs, Gen. vētēr-is, old, has Comp. vētust-ior, Superl. veter-rimus.¹

Quam, than.

62 Rule.—Nouns coupled by quam (than) and a Comparative Adj. or Adv., are in the same case:

1. Nom.  { Ėqui útiliores sunt quam capri (sunt).
         | Horses are more useful than goats (are).

         | Pūedor flāgitūi, māgis quam errōris, hōmīnem complet.
         | Shame for the crime, rather than for the error, possesses the man: lit. of the crime, of the error.

2. Gen.

3. Dat.  { Pūero dat mēlīora dona quam pūellae (dat).
         | To the boy he gives better gifts than (he gives) to the girl.

4. Acc.  { Mālus fōlia hābet densīora quam māla (hābet).²
         | The apple-tree has leaves thicker than (it has) apples.

63 Rule.—When the first Noun is in the Nominative or Accusative, the second Noun is generally put in the Ablative without quam:

Nothing is more lovable than Nīhil est virtūte āmābīlius.

virtue.

¹ The Comparative vētérior is rare and archaic.
² Distinguish between māla, apples, and māla, evils.
N.B. Superlatives and Comparatives have each more meanings than one:

64 I. Tard-issimus means (1) slowest, (2) very slow.

65 II. Tard-ior means (1) slower, (2) rather, or somewhat, slow, or (3) too slow.

Exercise XXV.

Rule.—Similis, like, takes a (1) Gen. or (2) Dat.: 1—

(1) The boys are like (i.e., the likenesses of) their father.

(2) All things were more like to a camp than to a city.

67 Quidem, on the one hand; indeed. Autem, on the other hand; however; but. Neither of these words can stand first in a clause. They must be placed after some emphatic word. See Sentence 9 below.


1. Nothing is more useful to men than sight and hearing. 2. The husbandman’s garden is more fertile than the rich king’s fields. 3. Who is bolder than a soldier? who is juster than a judge? 4. The ass is a somewhat-foolish animal; the dog is very sagacious. 5. The boy’s sisters were more like (their) mother than (their) father. 6. The anger of the king was keener than the madness of the soldiers. 7. By very swift journeys

---

1 The Dative is rare in Cicero, but very common in later writers.
2 Two Adjectives coupled by et can agree with the same Noun.
the general leads (his) soldiers into a most rugged region.
8. Very beautiful trees fill the very low valleys of (the) most fertile region. 9. The very brave soldiers are being driven into the city by (a) very keen and bold leader. 10. The very ailing boy has very thin legs in winter.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

68

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bonus, good</td>
<td>melior</td>
<td>optimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malus, bad</td>
<td>pejor</td>
<td>pessimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnus, great</td>
<td>maior</td>
<td>maximus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvus, small</td>
<td>minor</td>
<td>minimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multi, (pl.), many</td>
<td>plures</td>
<td>plurimi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nequam, (indecl.)</td>
<td>worthless</td>
<td>nequissimus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adjectives ending in -icus, -speakng, -icus, -doing, -volus, wishing, form the Comp. in -entior, the Superl. in -entissimus:

malo-icus, ill-speaking, -dicentior, -dicentissimus.
muni-icus, gift-making, -ficentior, -ficentissimus.
bene-volus, well-wishing, -volentior, -volentissimus.

(These forms are really derived from Verbal forms in -ens, which will be recognised when the Verbs are mastered.)

68a Adjectives ending in -eus, -ius, -ius, seldom have a Comp. or Superl. form of their own, but are compared by appending the adverbs magis, more, maxime, most: pius, dutifil, magis pius, more dutiful, maxime pius, most dutiful.

69 In the following the Positive is defective, and is represented by a Noun, Adjective, or Preposition:

---

70 1 In Latin the Superlative is more frequently used than in English. We should say “the brave soldiers,” “a bold leader.” But in Latin the Superlatives must be expressed.

71 2 Multum, plas, and plurimum are also used in the Neut. Sing. as Nouns governing a Genitive Case.

They have much
more very much {of) money. Multum Plas Plurimum {pecuniae habent.
IRREGULAR COMPARISON. [Par. 72, 73

[Sénex], an old man sénior¹ nátu máximus, oldest.
[Júvénis], a young man júnior¹ nátu mínimus, youngest.
[Súpérus], upper súpérior suprémus, summus, highest.
[Inférus], lower inférior infímus, ímus, lowest.
[Extérus], outside extérior extrémus, (outermost or last).
[Prep. Intrá], inside intérior intímus, inmost.
[Postérus], after, behind postérior postrémus, (hundmost or last).

[Prep. Prae], before príor prímus, (foremost or first).
[Prep. Pröpě], near pröpíor¹ proxímus, (nearest or next).

[Prep. Ultrá], beyond ultérior ultímus, (furthest or last).

72 Plús, more, is thus declined:

Singular: a Noun.
Neuter.
Nom. and Acc. Plús Plúris Plúris
Gen. Plúrís Plúrįm Plúrįm
Dat. Plúři Plúřibus Plúřibus
Abl. Plúřé Plúřibus Plúřibus

Plural: an Adjective.
Masc. and Fem.
Plúrē Plúrįm Plúrįm
Plúrįm Plúribus Plúribus
Plúribus Plúribus

Mágis means more in degree and is used with Adjectives; plús, more in quantity, and is used with Verbs.

Balbus is more dutiful, but Balbus mágis plús est, sed Tullius delights (his) father Tullius patrem plús délectat. more.

Exercise XXVI.

73 Rule.—A Superlative, in agreement with a Noun understood, is followed by the Genitive:

The horse is the most useful pónis útilissimum (animal) (animal) of animals. ánimálīum est.


¹ Nátu mājor and nátu míñor are also used. Nátu means by birth, and is not declined.
² Why is dúcum? Ans. governed by dúx understood.
³ An Adj. e.g. optínææ, is often separated from its Noun by an intervening Genitive e.g. Tullii. (Par. 35.) Quid (Exercise XXII) is Acc. gov. by hábet.

The Nom. to hábet is it, i.e. the speech of Balbus, understood.

**1. The king, (who was) worse than (his) father, has a (still) more worthless son.** 2. Very old men praise former times. 3. The greater part of the outermost wall was nearest to the citadel. 4. The most benevolent of the younger (men) were inferior to (trans. as if to were than) the worst of the elder (men). 5. He gives more gifts to the worst of the sisters than to the most dutiful of the brothers. 6. The lowest part of the mountain was higher (comp. and superl. of superus) than the highest part of the citadel. 7. The younger rightly give reverence to (their) elders. 8. The younger of the brothers was very like the elder sister. 9. Very many praise what is best (trans. best-things). 10. On the last (30) day of (his) life the old-man was most happy. 11. He is blamed the whole day (long).

**NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.**

74 Numeral Adjectives are either (1) Cardinal, denoting how many, or (2) Ordinal, denoting in what order. All the Ordinal Adjectives are declined like bonus; but of the Cardinal Adjectives only a few are declined.

1. Únus, one.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen. Sing.</td>
<td>Un-ius</td>
<td>un-ius</td>
<td>un-ius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. Sing.</td>
<td>Un-i</td>
<td>un-i</td>
<td>un-i</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the other cases, Sing. and Plur., it is like bonus.

---

2 Why is mōdestiae Gen? Ans. governed by plūs, Adj. used as Noun. Why is sāpientiae Gen? Because quam (Par. 62) takes the same Case after it as before it. In translating bēnevōlentissimo add the or that.

76 The Gen. after pars, plūs, multum, &c., is often called the Partitive Genitive.

2 For the Distributive Numeral Adjectives see Exercise LXXXV. They are all declined like bōni, -ae, -a: (1) singūli, one a-piece; (2) bīni, two a-piece; (3) terni or trīni; (4) quāterni; (5) quīni; (6) sēnī; (7) septēni; (8) octōni; (9) nōvēni; (10) dēnī; (11) undēnī; (100) centēni; (101) centēni singūli; (200) dūcēni; (300) trēcēni; (400) quadringēni; (600) sescēni; (1,000) singula milia.
2. Duo, two.

3. Trēs, three.

Ambo, both, is declined like duo.

79 The Cardinal Numbers, from four to a hundred, are indeclinable.

The compounds of a hundred are declined like bonus:
Of two hundred men, Ducentorum hominum.

4. Millē, thousand.

80 The two uses of millē (a) Sing. (b) Plural, must be carefully distinguished:

a. Singular, an indeclinable Adjective:

Millē passus, a thousand paces.
Millē passibus, to a thousand paces, &c.

b. Plural, a Noun of the Third Declension, having an Adjective agreeing with it in Number and Case, and governing another Noun in the Genitive:

N.V. and Acc. Multa millia passuum, many thousands of paces.
Gen. Multorum millium passuum, of many thousands of paces.
Dat. Multis milibus passuum, to many thousands of paces.
Abl. Multis milibus passuum, by many thousands of paces.

1 Less commonly, dū-o.
2 Less commonly, tris.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic Symbols</th>
<th>Roman Symbols</th>
<th>Cardinals</th>
<th>Ordinals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>81</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>unus, -a, -um</td>
<td>primus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>duo, -ae, -o</td>
<td>secundus or alter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>III</td>
<td>tres, -tria</td>
<td>tertius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>quattuor (quattuor)</td>
<td>quartus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>quinque</td>
<td>quintus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>VI</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sextus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>VII</td>
<td>septem</td>
<td>septimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>VIII</td>
<td>octo</td>
<td>octavus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>IX</td>
<td>novem</td>
<td>nonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>decem</td>
<td>decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>XI</td>
<td>undecim</td>
<td>undecimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>XII</td>
<td>duodecim</td>
<td>duodecimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>XIII</td>
<td>tredecim</td>
<td>tertius decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>XIV</td>
<td>quattuordecim</td>
<td>quartus decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>XV</td>
<td>quindecim</td>
<td>quintus decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>XVI</td>
<td>sedecim</td>
<td>sextus decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>XVII</td>
<td>septemdecim</td>
<td>septimus decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>XVIII</td>
<td>duodeviginti</td>
<td>duodeviginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>XIX</td>
<td>undeviginti</td>
<td>undeviginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>viginti</td>
<td>vigintiog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>XXI</td>
<td>unus et viginti</td>
<td>unus et viginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>XXII</td>
<td>duod et viginti</td>
<td>duod et viginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>XXIII</td>
<td>tres et viginti</td>
<td>tres et viginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>XXIV</td>
<td>quattuordviginti</td>
<td>quattuordviginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>XXV</td>
<td>quindecviginti</td>
<td>quindecviginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>XXVI</td>
<td>viginti tres</td>
<td>viginti tres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>XXVII</td>
<td>duodeviginti</td>
<td>duodeviginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>XXVIII</td>
<td>undeviginti</td>
<td>undeviginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>XXIX</td>
<td>viginti</td>
<td>viginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td>triginta</td>
<td>triginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>XL</td>
<td>quadraviginta</td>
<td>quadraviginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>LX</td>
<td>quinquaviginta</td>
<td>quinquaviginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>LXI</td>
<td>sexaginta</td>
<td>sexaginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>LXII</td>
<td>septuaginta</td>
<td>septuaginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>LXIII</td>
<td>octoginta</td>
<td>octoginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>LXIV</td>
<td>nonaginta</td>
<td>nonaginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>LXV</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>LXVI</td>
<td>centum et unus or</td>
<td>centum et unus or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>LXVII</td>
<td>centum et triginta</td>
<td>centum et triginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sex or centum,</td>
<td>sex or centum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>LXX</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>LXXX</td>
<td>triginta</td>
<td>triginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>XLIII</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>XLIV</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>LXXXI</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>LXXXII</td>
<td>triginta</td>
<td>triginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>LXXXIII</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>LXXXIV</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>CXX</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>CXXI</td>
<td>triginta</td>
<td>triginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>CXXII</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>CXXIII</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>CXXIV</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>CXXV</td>
<td>triginta</td>
<td>triginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>CXXVI</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>CXXVII</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>CXXVIII</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>CXXIX</td>
<td>triginta</td>
<td>triginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>CX</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>CXI</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>CXII</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>CXIII</td>
<td>triginta</td>
<td>triginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>CXIV</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>CXV</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>CXVI</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>CXVII</td>
<td>triginta</td>
<td>triginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>CXVIII</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>CXIX</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>CX</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td>CXI</td>
<td>triginta</td>
<td>triginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>CXII</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
<td>CXIII</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>CXIV</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73</td>
<td>CXV</td>
<td>triginta</td>
<td>triginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>CXVI</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>CXVII</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76</td>
<td>CXVIII</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77</td>
<td>CXIX</td>
<td>triginta</td>
<td>triginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td>LXX</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79</td>
<td>LXXXI</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>LXXXII</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81</td>
<td>LXXXIII</td>
<td>triginta</td>
<td>triginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82</td>
<td>LXXXIV</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83</td>
<td>LXXXV</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84</td>
<td>LXXXVI</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>LXXXVII</td>
<td>triginta</td>
<td>triginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86</td>
<td>LXXXVIII</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87</td>
<td>LXXXIX</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88</td>
<td>CCC</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89</td>
<td>CCCI</td>
<td>triginta</td>
<td>triginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>CCCII</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91</td>
<td>CCCIII</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92</td>
<td>CCCIV</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93</td>
<td>CCCV</td>
<td>triginta</td>
<td>triginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94</td>
<td>CCCVI</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95</td>
<td>CCCVII</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96</td>
<td>CCCVIII</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>97</td>
<td>CCCIX</td>
<td>triginta</td>
<td>triginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98</td>
<td>CCCX</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99</td>
<td>CCCXI</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>CCCXII</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>CCCXIII</td>
<td>triginta</td>
<td>triginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102</td>
<td>CCCXIV</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103</td>
<td>CCCXV</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104</td>
<td>CCCXVI</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105</td>
<td>CCCXVII</td>
<td>triginta</td>
<td>triginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>106</td>
<td>CCCXVIII</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107</td>
<td>CCCXIX</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108</td>
<td>CCCXX</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109</td>
<td>CCCXXI</td>
<td>triginta</td>
<td>triginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>CCCXXII</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111</td>
<td>CCCXXIII</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112</td>
<td>CCCXXIV</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113</td>
<td>CCCXXV</td>
<td>triginta</td>
<td>triginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114</td>
<td>CCCXXVI</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115</td>
<td>CCCXXVII</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116</td>
<td>CCCXXVIII</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117</td>
<td>CCCXXIX</td>
<td>triginta</td>
<td>triginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118</td>
<td>CCCXXX</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119</td>
<td>CCCXXXI</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>CCCXXXII</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121</td>
<td>CCCXXXIII</td>
<td>triginta</td>
<td>triginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122</td>
<td>CCCXXXIV</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123</td>
<td>CCCXXXV</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124</td>
<td>CCCXXXVI</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125</td>
<td>CCCXXXVII</td>
<td>triginta</td>
<td>triginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126</td>
<td>CCCXXXVIII</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>127</td>
<td>CCCXXXIX</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128</td>
<td>CCCLXX</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129</td>
<td>CCCLXXX</td>
<td>triginta</td>
<td>triginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>CCCCLX</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>131</td>
<td>CCCCLXX</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132</td>
<td>CCCCLXXX</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>133</td>
<td>CCCCLXXXX</td>
<td>triginta</td>
<td>triginta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134</td>
<td>CCCCLXXXXII</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>135</td>
<td>CCCCLXXXXIII</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
<td>triginta sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>136</td>
<td>CXXXVI</td>
<td>centum et triginta</td>
<td>centum et triginta</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NUMERAL ADJECTIVES. [Par. 82—84]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic Symbols</th>
<th>Roman Symbols</th>
<th>Cardinals.</th>
<th>Ordinals.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>CCCC</td>
<td>quadringenti, -ae, -ā</td>
<td>quadringentēsīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500 I O or D</td>
<td></td>
<td>quingenti, -ae, -ā</td>
<td>quingentēsīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600 DC</td>
<td></td>
<td>sesequenti, -ae, -ā</td>
<td>sexequentēsīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700 DCC</td>
<td></td>
<td>septingenti, -ae, -ā</td>
<td>septingentēsīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800 DCCC</td>
<td></td>
<td>octingenti, -ae, -ā</td>
<td>octingentēsīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900 DCCCC</td>
<td></td>
<td>nongenti, -ae, -ā</td>
<td>nongentēsīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000 CI O or M</td>
<td>mīlē</td>
<td>mīlēsimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2,000 MM</td>
<td></td>
<td>bis mīlēsimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100,000 CCCI O O</td>
<td>centum mīliā</td>
<td>centiēs mīlēsimus 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISE XXVII.

82 Rule.—The Possessor is often expressed by the Dative Case with the Verb est, (sunt, ērat, ērant, &c.):

*Balbus* has, or had a book, i.e. *Balbo* est, or ērat, there was a book for Balbus. liber.


83 1 The number 500, I O, is multiplied by 10 as often as O is subjoined:—

\[ I_{O}O = 10 \times 500 = 5,000. \]

\[ I_{O}OO = 10 \times 5,000 = 50,000. \]

In order to double I O, or I O O, you must prefix C as many times as it is suffixed:—

\[ CI O = 2 \times 500 = 1,000. \]

\[ CCI O O = 2 \times 5,000 = 10,000. \]

84 2 Why is mīlīti Dat? Aus., *Dat of the Possessive after est.*

3 Jānuārius and September are Adjectives agreeing with mensis. The adjectival names of the months are sometimes used as Nouns, mensis being understood, e.g. *Februārii* in sentence 11. See p. 229.
peditum tria millia. 11. Januarii mensis unus dies est pars una et tricesima; Februarii, duodetricesima. 12. Undetriginta verberibus miles a centurione castigatur.

1. The general had (erant) three hundred and seven foot-soldiers. 2. The enemy had six hundred foot-soldiers, (and) two thousand horse-soldiers. 3. The husbandman gives twenty-five eggs to the wretched sailor. 4. There were on (in) the oak many thousand acorns. 5. On the sixth month of the year, in the seventh hour, there were in the city three thousand Germans. 6. The general leads into the city the twentieth legion and the third part of the thirtieth legion. 7. A century was the sixth part of a cohort; a cohort (was) the tenth part of a legion. 8. Once a legion had three thousand soldiers. 9. There were then in the legion six thousand foot-soldiers (and) three hundred horse-soldiers. 10. Once March was the first month of the year, November (was) the ninth, (and) December the tenth. 11. The old soldier had thirty-three wounds.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

The following adjectives (most of them capable of being used as Pronouns) are declined regularly (like bonus) in the Plural, and in all cases of the Singular, except the Gen. and Dat.; but (like the Pronouns) they make the Gen. Sing in -ius (-īus) or -rīus, and the Dat. Sing. in -i:

1. -ius (-īus).
   Ūnus, one, one only.
   Ullus, any.²
   Nullus, no, not any, none.
   Sōlus, alone.
   Tōtus, whole.

2. -rīus.
   Alter, Gen. altērīus, one (of two), the other (of two).
   Úter? utr-īus? which (of the two)?
   Neuter, neutr-īus, neither.

Ālīus, other, makes the Neut. Sing. in -ud. When twice used co-ordinately (i.e. so that and, but, &c., might be inserted), it means, in the Sing., one . . . another, or, in the Plur., some . . . others; and alter . . . alter mean, similarly, one of the two . . . the other of the two.

1 Why is Februārī (mensīs) Gen.? Ans. governed by pars understood. You must repeat “unus dies est pars” with duodetrīcesīma.

The pupil may henceforth (with the aid of Appendix VI.) write the Latin day of the month on his exercise.

2 Ullus is only used in (1) negative and (2) comparative sentences, or in (3) questions that expect a negative answer.
IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES. [Par. 88—91]

(1) He blames one thing, (and) praises another.
(2) Some overcome, (but) others are overcome.
(3) He gives one of the two sisters a pear, the other an apple.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Álius, other.</th>
<th>Nullus, no.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Singular.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Álius</td>
<td>ália</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. Wanting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. Alium</td>
<td>áliam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. Álius</td>
<td>álīus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. Alī</td>
<td>álī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. Alīo</td>
<td>álīa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

88 When álīus is repeated not co-ordinately (see Par. 86), it is sometimes construed as follows:—

Some women praise some things, others praise others.

The Nom. of álīus has į, the Gen. has į:

One man praises one man's conduct, another man another's.

89 Note alt-ērius, but ut-rius; so asp-ēri, but pulch-ri.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

90 Adjectives signifying nearness, dearness, pleasantness, fitness, likeness, equality, &c., and their opposites, govern the Dative.


91 1 Sēnum is Gen., governed by utri. But the Gen. after üter, neuter, ūnus, &c. and also after the Numerals generally, is often called a Partitive Genitive, because it implies a part belonging to a larger number or whole.

2 What sort of a Gen. is militum? Sōli agrees with ūni, which (85) is used as a Pronoun.
molestus erat; nullius mores culpatis. 10. Pater majora
dona filiae quam ulli filiorum dat. 11. Homo avarus est,
neque (18) ulli carus. 12. Utrique genti facile (34) erat
belli mala vitare (36a).

1. Which of the (two) brothers is the dearer to (their) mother?
2. The man is very worthless (68), and not dear to any of the
citizens. 3. To one of the (two) brothers he gives blame; to
the other praise. 4. To neither of the leaders was the coward-
ice of the armies pleasing. 5. Virtue is agreeable to one,
pleasure (is agreeable) to another. 6. One (man’s) constancy,
another (man’s) prudence, is praised by the leader. 7. To one
alone of the women does the queen give praise. 8. He gives
to (his) brother a better gift than to any (87) of his sisters.
9. Some had (82) shields, others had swords; but no one had
horses. 10. The woman was very worthless, and (18) not
dear to any of (her) sisters. 11. The butterfly lives one day.

PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

1. First Person.

Singular. | Plural.
---|---
I, me, &c. | We, us, &c.

Nom. Ēgō | Nōs
Acc. Mē | Nōs
Gen. Mēi | Nōstri
Dat. Mīhi | Nōbis
Abl. Mē | Nōbis

2. Second Person.

Singular. | Plural.
---|---
Thou, thee, &c. | Ye, you, &c.

N. and V. Tū | Vōs
| Tē | Vōs
Nōstri | Vestri
Tūi | Vōbis
| Tēbī | Vōbis

3. Third Person.

To express he, she, it, use is made of the Adjective (1)
ēs, m., that (man), (2) ea, f., that (woman), (3) ēd, n., that
(thing).

---

1 Nullius, nullo are used for nēminis and nēmine: From nēmo let me never see
Nēminis and nēmine.

2 In what sort of sentences is ullus used? Why is it used (87) here?

3 The Genitives Plural nostrum and vestrum, are used only in such
phrases as “nēmo nostrum, vestrum, no one of us, of you; the wisest
of us; some of us, &c. It is then called a Partitive Genitive: see above,
Par. 76, 91. Nōstri, vestri are really Adjectives in Gen. Sing. agreeing
with a Noun understood: mēmor est nōstri, He is mindful of our (business)
i.e. of us.
PRONOUNS.

46

4. THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.

This Pronoun has no Nominative nor Vocative, and the Plural is the same as the Singular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>He</strong></td>
<td><strong>They</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>She</strong></td>
<td><strong>They</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>It</strong></td>
<td><strong>Those</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong> Ĵs ēā īd</td>
<td><strong>Ei (ii) eae ēā</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong> Ėum ēam īd</td>
<td><strong>Ēos ēas ēā</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong> Ėius ēius ēius</td>
<td><strong>Ēorum ēārum ēōrum</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong> Ėi ei ei</td>
<td><strong>Eis (iiis) eis (iiis) eis (iiis)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong> Ėo ēā ēo</td>
<td><strong>Eis (iiis) eis (iiis) eis (iiis)</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Gen. ēius, ēorum, is often used for his, her, their: "līber ēius," his, or her book; "ēorum līber," their book.

EXERCISE XXIX.

I (or we), thou (or ye), he (or they) are said to be respectively the First, Second, and Third Persons. All ordinary Nouns are said to be in the Third Person (see page 237).

The form of the Verb in Latin must be altered to suit the Person as well as the Number of its Subject:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>I love, (ēgō) ām-o</td>
<td>We (nōs) āmā-mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>Thou lovest, (tū) āmā-s</td>
<td>Ye (vōs) āmā-tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>He loves, (ēs) āma-t</td>
<td>They (ei) āma-nt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RULE.—The Verb agrees with its Nominative Case in Number and Person.

All the Verbs that make the 3rd Pers. Sing. in -at (such as sūpēra-t, lauda-t, &c.), are changed in the same way as āmo above: but da-t has the a short, dāmus, dātis.

1 The quantity of the e in ei, eis is doubtful.
2 Instead of sē there is sometimes used the emphatic form sēsē. The pupil must be prepared hereafter to find that sē is used in some instances for he, him. But, for the present, it will be only used for himself, herself &c. (never for thyself, yourself).
96 Unus is sometimes used in agreement with a Noun or Pronoun to mean alone or only:—

Only Tullius loves me. Unus Tullius me amat.


97 The Genitives eius, eorum, are used for his, her, their; but the Genitives mei, tui, nostri, vestri, &c., are hardly ever used for my, thy, our, your, &c. For this purpose the following Pronominal Adjectives are used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Meus mea meum</td>
<td>my, mine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuus tua tum</td>
<td>thy, thine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noster nostrā nostrum</td>
<td>our, ours</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vester vestrā vestrum</td>
<td>your, yours</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sūus sūa sūum</td>
<td>his own, her own, its own, their own</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

98 Eius and Sūus. Note the difference. Sūus may be used (for the present) where you can insert own in the English.

(1) The mother loves her (own) son. Māter filium sūum āmat.
(2) Gaius and his brother love me. (See page 328.) Gaius et frāter eius mē āmant.
(3) I love her son. Āmo eius fīlum.

Note the ambiguity in Latin: eius is used both for her and for his. In practice, of course, the ambiguity would be generally removed by the context. On the other hand, the ambiguity of the English their is removed by the Latin use of eorum and ēarum.
99 Ēgo, tù, īs, nōs, &c., are generally omitted as the Subjects of a Verb: āmās, thou lovest, āmāmus, we love, &c.

99a But if emphasis is intended to be laid on the Pronouns, they are inserted: "ēgo tē āmo, tū mē nōn āmās."

EXERCISE XXX.

100 A question is asked by nōnne, num or -nē; -nē is added to, and emphasizes, the first word in the Sentence.

Do you blame me?
Do you blame me?

Tūnē mē culpās?
Mēnē culpās?

101 Nōnne? (i.e. nōn-nē?) expects yes; num? expects no.¹

Does he not blame me?
He does not blame me, does he?

Nōnne mē culpāt?
Num mē culpāt?

102 Rule.—Adjectives signifying mindfulness, knowledge, or forgetfulness and ignorance, take the Genitive.


1. ⁴ Balbus is not mindful of us; but (67) we love him. 2. No one of us praises his folly. 3. The girl is dear to us; we love her

¹ With cūr? why? quīs? who? and other interrogatives, -nē, nōnne, num, are omitted: Why does he not blame? Cūr nōn culpāt? When nōnne and num are used in direct questions, they generally stand at the beginning of the Sentence.


³ Mīhi is Dat., governed by "cārus (est)" understood.

⁴ Before doing this exercise, the pupil should read through all the sentences and ask which of the Pronominal Adjectives of the 3rd Pers., his, her, their, &c., can have own added to it. Wherever own can be added, suūs is the word to be used. But of course this does not apply to Pronouns not of the 3rd Pers. (my own, your own), which are to be rendered mēnus, &c.
exceedingly. 4. Thy sister does not love her father. 5. His brothers do not love their father. 6. Ye praise the fields of others, ye do not take care of your (own) (fields). 7. Our sisters are dearer to us, O most cruel (men), than your brothers to you. 8. Do ye, (being) ignorant of the way, point-out the way to us, O most foolish (men)? 9. Why dost thou blame thy father, and dost not (18) praise his virtue? 10. The generals overcome the anger of the soldiers by their wisdom.

**DEMONSTRATIVE AND EMPHATIC PRONOUNS.**

1. **Illē, that (yonder); pl. those.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>Illē</td>
<td>illā</td>
<td>illūd</td>
<td>Illi</td>
<td>illae</td>
<td>illā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>Illum</td>
<td>illam</td>
<td>illūd</td>
<td>Illos</td>
<td>illas</td>
<td>illā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>Illīus</td>
<td>illīus</td>
<td>illīus</td>
<td>Illōrum</td>
<td>illārum</td>
<td>illōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>Illi</td>
<td>illī</td>
<td>illī</td>
<td>Illīs</td>
<td>illis</td>
<td>illis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>Illo</td>
<td>illā</td>
<td>illo</td>
<td>Illīs</td>
<td>illis</td>
<td>illis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. **Istē, that (near you, or of yours), often used contemptuously; declined like illē.**

3. **Hic (-ī or -ī), this (near me); pl. these.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>Hic</td>
<td>haec</td>
<td>höc</td>
<td>Hi</td>
<td>hae</td>
<td>haec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>Hunc</td>
<td>hanc</td>
<td>höc</td>
<td>Hos</td>
<td>has</td>
<td>haec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>Huius</td>
<td>huius</td>
<td>huius</td>
<td>Hōrum</td>
<td>hārum</td>
<td>hōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>Huic</td>
<td>huic</td>
<td>huic</td>
<td>His</td>
<td>hīs</td>
<td>hīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>Höc</td>
<td>hāc</td>
<td>höc</td>
<td>Hīs</td>
<td>hīs</td>
<td>hīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. **Ipsē, -self, himself, herself, itself; pl. themselves.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>Ipsē</td>
<td>ipsā</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>Ipsī</td>
<td>ipsae</td>
<td>ipsā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>Ipsum</td>
<td>ipsam</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>Ipsos</td>
<td>ipsas</td>
<td>ipsā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>Ipsius</td>
<td>ipsius</td>
<td>ipsius</td>
<td>Ipsōrum</td>
<td>ipsārum</td>
<td>ipsōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>Ipsī</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
<td>Ipsis</td>
<td>ipsis</td>
<td>ipsis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>Ipso</td>
<td>ipsā</td>
<td>ipso</td>
<td>Ipsīs</td>
<td>ipsīs</td>
<td>ipsīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that ipsē differs from illē only in the Neut. Nom. Singular.
5. **Idem**, the same (declined like is; but is-dem is written idem, id-dem is written idem, and m before -dem is changed into n).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>Idem</td>
<td>ēadem</td>
<td>idem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>Eundem</td>
<td>ēandem</td>
<td>dem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>Eiusdem</td>
<td>eiusdem</td>
<td>eiusdem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>Eidem</td>
<td>eadem</td>
<td>eadem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ēodem</td>
<td>ēadem</td>
<td>ēodem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise XXXI.**

104 [Do not, for the future, use thou or ye in translating the Exercises, unless the language is poetical. You in English is commonly used of the Singular Number, and will be so used in future Exercises; it should therefore be rendered by tu, not by vos, unless the context shows that it is Plural].

105 **Ipse** is an Adj., agreeing in Gender, Number and Case with (1) a Noun or Pronoun understood; or (2) a Noun or Pronoun expressed.

1. (She) herself loves me. **Ipsa** mē āmat.
2. I give this to you yourself. **Tibi** *ipsi*, O filia, hōc do.
3. The queen herself loves. **Regina** *ipsa* āmat.


1. That gift of-yours is more pleasing to you yourself than to Balbus. 2. We all love the same native-land. 3. You, O friends, love the same (things), the same danger terrifies

---

1 For eisdem there is sometimes used Isdem.
2 (1) Ille... (2) hic, when thus used together, mean (1) that which is furthest, first-mentioned...(2) that which is nearest, last-mentioned: hence (1) the former...(2) the latter.
you. 4. This man we love, this man's conduct we praise.
5. The same-things are not always pleasing to the same-persons (34).
6. Why do you give larger gifts to this woman than to your own mother (trans. to your mother herself)?
7. The children of the same parents are not always equally beautiful.
8. The same vice is worse in a learned man than in an unlearned.
9. Do you blame us, O foolish (man)? In you yourself is the cause of these evils.
10. Do you give to yourself the best gifts?
11. Do you blame us the whole (85) day (long) (31)?

THE RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

107

1. Qui, which (man, woman, thing); who; that.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>Qui</td>
<td>Quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>Quem</td>
<td>Quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>Cuius</td>
<td>Cuius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>Cui</td>
<td>Cui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>Quó</td>
<td>Quá</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Relative in Latin often (1) precedes its Antecedent, and sometimes (2) is placed with it like an Adjective.

(1) He whom all love is praised by all.
(1) What, or that which, some praise, others blame.
(2) The friends whom (or what friends) he has, he praises.

108 Rule.—The Relative Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person.

You yourself, sister, who love others, do not love me.
You, brothers, who blame me, praise Tullius, who himself praises me.

Tu ipsa, sôror, quae állos ámăs, inē nôn ámăs.
Vôs, frâtres, qui mé culpâtis, Tullium laudâtis, qui ipse mé láudat.

1 Quibús is sometimes contracted into quiís.
2 Here the Antecedent is repeated, "quos amicos habet (eos amicos) laudat"; and it may be said that quos agrees (like an Adj.) with the repeated Antecedent, but has for its Antecedent "eos amicos" understood.
3 N.B. In Gender, Number, and Person—but not necessarily in Case.
2. The Interrogative Pronoun quīs differs in form from the Relative Pronoun merely in the Nom. Sing. Masc. and Neuter: quīs? who? quīd? what? The rest of its cases are the same as those of the Relative Pronoun:

Who gives you this?  Quīs tībī hoc dat?
What do you give me?  Quīd mihi dās?

The Interrogative Adjective qui is the same as the Relative in every case:

What has he done?  What Quīd fēcit?  Quōd fācīnus misdeed has he committed?

Exercise XXXII.

Rule.—Adjectives signifying nearness, e.g. vicīnus, near (to), finītīmus, bordering on, proxīmus, nearest, or next (to), are followed by the Dative.

1. Qui aliis vian monstrat hunc alii jure (38) laudant.  2. Qui sibi benigniores (65) sunt, ei non semper ab amicis laudantur.
3. Te, O soror, quae haec dona mihi das, maxime laudo.
4. Quis hos milites ducit?  Quod periculum eos terret?
5. Ego, O frater, qui vobis dona optima do, nonne sum vobis carissimus?  6. Cuius verba me culpant eum non laudo.
7. Quibus rex dona dat, eos non semper amat.
8. Quae pericula patrem terrent, ea nonne filii timent?
9. Agricola arbores serit quarum fructum ipse non gustat.
10. Cui patria cara est is bonus civis est.
11. Minae istae quibus agricolae timidis terrentur, militem non terrent.
12. In urbe, quae mari proxima erat, nautae plurimi erant: huc imperator suos (34) ducit.
13. Belgae, quorum agri Gallis finitimi sunt, a Caesare bello superantur.

1. You, O women, who (108) praise injustice (i.e. unjust-things) are paying (trans. giving) the penalty of your folly.  2. To you, O sister, who blame your brother, (your) brother himself gives this gift.  3. Those whose (113a) conduct is depraved, you do right not to praise (trans. you rightly do not praise).  4. His mother, who loves you exceedingly, praises you too much.  5. Why do you err, (you) who point out the way to them?  6. What are you tasting, O boys?  What fruit delights you?  7. We who overcome the nations bordering-on us, are overcome by the

1 Quīs is sometimes an Adj., chiefly with persons: quīs rex? what king?
2 Note that the Relative in the Genit. precedes the Noun that governs it: "quārum fructum," not "fructum quārum."
nation next to the Belgians. 8. The general leads his (men) into a plain which was nearer and larger. 9. You, O soldiers, are entering this city, which the enemy (pl.) at the same (30) time enter. 10. Friends love those who love (their) friends. 11. Who is this (man) whose blame terrifies you? 1

**THE VERB.**

114 Latin Verbs are divided into Four Classes called Conjugations. In the third Conjugation the Active Infinitive Present ends in -ère, in the rest in -re. That part of the word which comes before -re or -ère is called the Stem, and the last letter of the Stem distinguishes the Conjugation.

**Act., Inf., Pres.**

1. First, or **A** Conjugation
   - **Amā-re**, to love

2. Second, "**E**
   - **Mōnē-re**, to advise

3. (a) Third, "**Consonant**
   - **Regē-re**, to rule
   (b) "**U**
   - **Minū-ère**, to diminish

4. Fourth, "**I**
   - **Audi-re**, to hear

**FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.**

**Āmo, āmāvi, āmātum, āmārē,—to love. Stem: āmā-**

**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

**1. Present Tense.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing. Amō,</strong> <strong>I love, or am loving</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plur. Amāmūs,</strong> <strong>We love, or are loving</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Amās,</strong> <strong>thou lovest, or art loving</strong></td>
<td><strong>Amātis,</strong> <strong>ye love, or are loving</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Amāt,</strong> <strong>he loves, or is loving.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Amānt,</strong> <strong>they love, or are loving.</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**2. Future-Simple Tense.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Pl.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Amābo,</strong> <strong>I shall love</strong></td>
<td><strong>Amābimūs,</strong> <strong>We shall love</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Amābis,</strong> <strong>thou wilt love</strong></td>
<td><strong>Amābitis,</strong> <strong>ye will love</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Amābit,</strong> <strong>he will love.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Amābunt,</strong> <strong>they will love.</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**3. Imperfect Tense.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Pl.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Amābam,</strong> <strong>I was loving</strong></td>
<td><strong>Amābāmūs,</strong> <strong>We were loving</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Amābās,</strong> <strong>thou wast loving</strong></td>
<td><strong>Amābātis,</strong> <strong>ye were loving</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Amābāt,</strong> <strong>he was loving.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Amābant,</strong> <strong>they were loving.</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 For additional elementary exercises on the Relative, see p. 186.

2 The Imperf. also means **I used-to-love, thou wast-cont-to-love, he used-to-love,** &c. It has other meanings, which must be learned by practice.
4. Perfect Tense.

Sing. Am-āvī, I have loved, or I loved
    Am-āvistī, thou hast loved, or thou lovedst
    Am-āvit, he has loved, or he loved.

Pl. Am-āvīmūs, We have loved, or we loved
    Am-āvistīs, ye have loved, or ye loved
    Am-āvērunt, they have loved, or ām-āvēré

5. Future-Perfect Tense.

S. Am-āvērō, I shall have
    Am-āvēris, thou wilt have
    Am-āvērit, he will have.

P. Am-āvērimūs, We shall have
    Am-āvēritīs, ye will have
    Am-āvērint, they will have.

6. Pluperfect Tense.

S. Am-āvēram, I had loved
    Am-āvērās, thou hadst loved
    Am-āvērāt, he had loved.

Am-āvēramūs, We had loved.
    Am-āvērātīs, ye had loved
    Am-āvērānt, they had loved.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

S. Am-ā, Love thou.
    P. Am-ātē, Love ye.

Future Tense.

S. Am-āto, Thou must love
    Am-āto, he must love.

P. Am-ātōtē, Ye must love
    Am-anto, they must love.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Am-em, I may love
    Am-ēmūs, We may love
Am-ēs, thou mayst love
    Am-ētīs, ye may love
Am-ēt, he may love.
    Am-ent, they may love.

As in English v is omitted in o'er, ne'er, so in Latin -vi- and -ve- are sometimes omitted where no ambiguity would be caused. Thus āmāvisti, āmāvērunt, &c. become āmasti, āmārunt, &c.; but āmāvimūs, āmāvēre, cannot be contracted into āmāmus, āmāre, because these contractions would be liable to be confused with the Pres. Indic. and Pres. Infin.

2 The usual pronunciation is āmāveris, āmāverīmus; but the i is sometimes long.

3 The Tense distinction between the Forms of the Imperative is very doubtful. The forms in -o are generally reserved for legal language: see Par. 129. Must is seldom expressed by the Imperative, see Par. 163, 168.

4 This Mood is sometimes called the Conjunctive. The meanings I may love and I might love are seldom attached to the Subjunctive without the accompanying conjunction ūt (that).

5 Amēmūs, without a Conjunction, generally means let us love.
2. **Imperfect Tense.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Am-ärem,</td>
<td><em>might love</em></td>
<td>Am-äremüs, <em>we might love</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Am-äres,</td>
<td><em>mightest love</em></td>
<td>Am-äretis, <em>ye might love</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Am-äret,</td>
<td><em>might love</em></td>
<td>Am-ärent, <em>they might love</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. **Perfect Tense.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Am-äverim,</td>
<td><em>may have</em></td>
<td>Am-äverimüs, <em>we may have</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Am-äveris,</td>
<td><em>may have</em></td>
<td>Am-äveritis, <em>ye may have</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Am-äverit,</td>
<td><em>may have</em></td>
<td>Am-äverint, <em>they may have</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. **Pluperfect Tense.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Am-ävissem,</td>
<td><em>should have</em></td>
<td>Am-ävissemüs, <em>we should have</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Am-ävissēs,</td>
<td><em>would have</em></td>
<td>Am-ävissētis, <em>ye would have</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Am-ävissēt,</td>
<td><em>would have</em></td>
<td>Am-ävissent, <em>they would have</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INFINITIVE MOOD.1**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mood</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. and Impf.</td>
<td>Am-äre,</td>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td><em>to love</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf. and Pluperf.</td>
<td>Am-ävisse,</td>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td><em>to have loved</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future.</td>
<td>Am-ätürüs,</td>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td><em>essé, to be about to love</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUPINES.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Supine</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Am-ätum,²</td>
<td><em>to love</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Am-ätū,²</td>
<td><em>in loving</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PARTICIPLES.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present.</td>
<td>Am-ans, -antis, &amp;c.,</td>
<td><em>loving</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future.</td>
<td>Am-ätürüs (ä, um),</td>
<td><em>about to love</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

¹ This part of the Verb is sometimes spoken of as the *Verb Infinite*, and not as the *Infinitive Mood*.

² The Supines are really Nouns used only in the *Acc. and Abl.;* (1) the Supine in -um after Verbs of Motion, (2) the Supine in -u with a few Adjectives, Exercise LXXIV.

Hence *amätum* can never be used (as *amāre* is, Par. 34) for the Subject of a Verb.
SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Moneo, moneui, monitum, monere,—to advise. Stem: mone-.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Moneo</th>
<th>I advise, or am advising</th>
<th>Monemus</th>
<th>We advise, or are advising</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mone</td>
<td>thou advisest, or art advising</td>
<td>Moneitis</td>
<td>ye advise, or are advising</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mone</td>
<td>he advises, or is advising.</td>
<td>Mone</td>
<td>they advise, or are advising.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Future-Simple Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monabo</th>
<th>I shall advise</th>
<th>Monebimus</th>
<th>We shall advise</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monebis</td>
<td>thou wilt advise</td>
<td>Monebisis</td>
<td>ye will advise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moneabit</td>
<td>he will advise.</td>
<td>Monebunt</td>
<td>they will advise.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Imperfect Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monebam</th>
<th>I was advising</th>
<th>Monebamus</th>
<th>We were advising</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monebas</td>
<td>thou wast advising</td>
<td>Monebatis</td>
<td>they were advising</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monebat</td>
<td>he was advising.</td>
<td>Monebant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Perfect Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Moneui</th>
<th>I have advised, or I advised</th>
<th>Moneumus</th>
<th>We have advised, or we advised</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Moneisti</td>
<td>thou hast advised, or advisedst</td>
<td>Moneistis</td>
<td>ye have advised, or ye advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moneit</td>
<td>he has advised, or he advised.</td>
<td>Moneurint</td>
<td>they have advised, or -nere, or they advised.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Future-Perfect Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Moneuro</th>
<th>I shall have advised.</th>
<th>Moneurimus</th>
<th>We shall have advised.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Moneurus</td>
<td>thou wilt have advised.</td>
<td>Moneuritis</td>
<td>ye will have advised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moneurit</td>
<td>he will have advised.</td>
<td>Moneurint</td>
<td>they will have advised.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 The quantity of the e before o, and of u before i is not marked, because it is an invariable rule in Latin that a vowel before another vowel is short: see Appendix VII., p. 230.

2 The Imperf. also means I used-to-advice, thou wast-wont-to-advice, he used-to-advice, &c.
SECOND CONJUGATION.

6. Pluperfect Tense.

Môn-uēram, I had advised | Môn-uērāmus, We had advised
Môn-uērās, thou hadst advised | Môn-uērātis, ye had advised
Môn-uērāt, he had advised. | Môn-uērant, they had advised.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.


Future (see Par. 117) Tense.

Môn-ēto, Thou must advise | Môn-ētōtē, Ye must advise
Môn-ēto, he must advise. | Môn-ento, they must advise.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Môn-eam, I may advise | Môn-eāmus, We may advise
Môn-eās, thou mayst advise | Môn-eātis, ye may advise
Môn-eāt, he may advise. | Môn-eant, they may advise.

2. Imperfect Tense.

Môn-ērem, I might advise | Môn-ērēmus, We might advise
Môn-ērēs, thou mightst advise | Môn-ērētis, ye might advise
Môn-ērēt, he might advise. | Môn-ērent, they might advise.

3. Perfect Tense.

Môn-uērim, I may | Môn-ūērimūs, We may
Môn-ūēris, thou mayst | Môn-ūēritis, ye may
Môn-ūērit, he may } have | Môn-ūērint, they may } have
{ advised. | advised.

4. Pluperfect Tense.

Môn-uissem, I should | Môn-uissēmus, We should
Môn-uissēs, thou wouldst | Môn-uissētis, ye would
Môn-uissēt, he would } have | Môn-uissēnt, they would } have
{ advised. | advised.

1 Môneāmus, without a Conjunction, generally means let us advise.
THIRD CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVES.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Món-érē, to advise</td>
<td>Món-usēs, to have advised</td>
<td>Món-itūrūs, to be about to advise</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GERUND.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Món-endo, of advising</td>
<td>Món-endo, for advising</td>
<td>Món-endōnum, the advising</td>
<td>Món-endo, by advising</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUPINES.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Món-itum, to advise</td>
<td>Món-itū, in advising</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PARTICIPLES.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Món-ens, -entis, &amp;c., advising</td>
<td>Món-itūrūs (ā, um), about to advise</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

THIRD OR CONSONANT AND U CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Rēgo, rexī, rectum, rēgērē, — to rule. Stem: rēg-.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. Present Tense.</th>
<th>Present: rēg-umu, We rule, or are ruling</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rēg-o, I rule, or am</td>
<td>Rēg-imūs, Ye rule, or are ruling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rēg-is, thou rules, or art</td>
<td>Rēg-itūs, He rules, or art</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rēg-īt, he rules, or is</td>
<td>Rēg-unt, They rule, or are</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Future-Simple Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future-Simple Tense.</th>
<th>Present: rēg-umu, We shall rule</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rēg-am, I shall rule</td>
<td>Rēg-emūs, We shall rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rēg-es, thou wilt rule</td>
<td>Rēg-etūs, Ye will rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rēg-ēt, he will rule</td>
<td>Rēg-ent, They will rule</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Imperfect Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperfect Tense.</th>
<th>Present: rēg-umu, We were ruling</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rēg-ēbam, I was ruling</td>
<td>Rēg-ēbāmūs, We were ruling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rēg-ēbas, thou wast ruling</td>
<td>Rēg-ēbatīs, Ye were ruling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rēg-ēbāt, he was ruling</td>
<td>Rēg-ēbant, They were ruling</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ The Imperf. also means I used-to-rule, thou wast-wont-to-rule, he used-to-rule, &c.
### Third Conjugation

#### 4 Perfect Tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>Imperative Mood</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rex-i</td>
<td>I have ruled, or I ruled</td>
<td>Rex-imūs, We have ruled, or we ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rex-isti</td>
<td>thou hast ruled, or thou ruledst</td>
<td>Rex-istis, ye have ruled, or ye ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rex-īt</td>
<td>he has ruled, or he ruled.</td>
<td>Rex-erunt, or they have ruled, rex-ērē, or they ruled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 5 Future-Perfect Tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>Imperative Mood</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rex-ēro,</td>
<td>I shall have ruled</td>
<td>Rex-erimūs, We shall have ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rex-ēris,</td>
<td>thou wilt have ruled</td>
<td>Rex-ēritis, ye will have ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rex-ērit,</td>
<td>he will have ruled.</td>
<td>Rex-ērint, they will have ruled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 6 Pluperfect Tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>Imperative Mood</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rex-ēram,</td>
<td>I had ruled</td>
<td>Rex-eramūs, We had ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rex-ērās,</td>
<td>thou hadst ruled</td>
<td>Rex-ēratis, ye had ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rex-ērāt,</td>
<td>he had ruled.</td>
<td>Rex-ērant, they had ruled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperative Mood

**Present Tense.**

- Rēg-ē, Rule thou.
- Rēg-īte, Rule ye.

**Future (see Par. 117) Tense.**

- Rēg-īto, Thou shalt or must rule.
- Rēg-ūnte, Ye shall or must rule.
- Rēg-unto, They shall or must rule.

#### Subjunctive Mood

**1. Perfect Tense.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>Imperative Mood</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rēg-am,</td>
<td>I may rule</td>
<td>Rēg-amūs, We may rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rēg-ās,</td>
<td>thou mayst rule</td>
<td>Rēg-ātis, ye may rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rēg-āt,</td>
<td>he may rule.</td>
<td>Rēg-ant, they may rule.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**2. Imperfect Tense.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>Imperative Mood</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rēg-ērem, I might rule</td>
<td>Rēg-ēremūs, We might rule</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rēg-ērēs, thou mightst rule</td>
<td>Rēg-ērētis, ye might rule</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rēg-ērēt, he might rule.</td>
<td>Rēg-ērent, they might rule.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**3. Perfect Tense.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>Imperative Mood</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rex-ērim, I may have ruled</td>
<td>Rex-ērimūs, We may have ruled</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rex-ēris, thou mayst have ruled</td>
<td>Rex-ēritis, ye may have ruled</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rex-ērit, he may have ruled.</td>
<td>Rex-ērint, they may have ruled.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Rēgāmus, without a Conjunction, generally means let us rule.
Fourth or I Conjugation.—Active Voice.

Audio, audīvi, audītum, audīrē,—to hear. Stem: audī-.

Indicative Mood.

1. Present Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aud-io, I hear, or am</th>
<th>Aud-imūs, We hear, or are</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aud-is, thou hearest, or art hearing</td>
<td>Aud-ītīs, ye hear, or are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aud-īt, he hears, or is</td>
<td>Aud-īunt, they hear, or are</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Future-Simple Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aud-iam, I shall hear</th>
<th>Aud-iemūs, We shall hear</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aud-iēs, thou wilt hear</td>
<td>Aud-iētīs, ye will hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aud-iēt, he will hear</td>
<td>Aud-iēnt, they will hear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Imperfect Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aud-iēbam, I was hearing</th>
<th>Aud-iēbāmūs, We were hearing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aud-iēbās, thou wast hearing</td>
<td>Aud-iēbātīs, ye were hearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aud-iēbāt, he was hearing</td>
<td>Aud-iēbānt, they were hearing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 The Imperf. also means, I used-to-hear, thou wast-wont-to-hear, he used-to-hear, &c.
FOURTH CONJUGATION.

4. Perfect Tense.

| Aud-īvī,       | I have heard, or                               | Aud-īvīmūs,       | We have heard, or we heard |
|               | I heard                                        |                  |                             |
| Aud-īvistī,    | thou hast heard,                               | Aud-īvistīs,     | ye have heard, or ye heard  |
| Aud-īvit,      | he has heard, or                               | Aud-īverunt,     | they have heard, or they heard |
|               | he heard.                                      |                  |                             |

5. Future-Perfect Tense.

| Aud-īvēro,     | I shall have                                   | Aud-īvērimūs,    | We shall have               |
| Aud-īvēris,    | thou wilt have                                 | Aud-īvēritīs,    | ye will have                |
| Aud-īverīt,    | he will have                                   | Aud-īvērint,     | they will have              |

6. Pluperfect Tense.

| Aud-īvēram,    | I had heard                                    | Aud-īvērāmūs,    | We had heard                |
| Aud-īvērās,    | thou hadst heard                                | Aud-īvērātīs,    | ye had heard                |
| Aud-īvērāt,    | he had heard                                    | Aud-īvērant,     | they had heard              |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.


Future (see Par. 117) Tense.

| Aud-īto,       | Thou must hear                                 | Aud-ītōtē,       | Ye must hear                 |
| Aud-ītō,       | he must hear                                   | Aud-īuntu,       | they must hear               |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

| Aud-īam,       | I may hear                                     | Aud-īāmūs,       | We may hear                 |
| Aud-īās,       | thou mayst hear                                | Aud-īātīs,       | ye may hear                 |
| Aud-īāt,       | he may hear                                    | Aud-īānt,        | they may hear               |

2. Imperfect Tense.

| Aud-īrem,      | I might hear                                   | Aud-īremūs,      | We might hear               |
| Aud-īrēs,      | thou mightst hear                              | Aud-īrētīs,      | ye might hear               |
| Aud-īrēt,      | he might hear                                  | Aud-īrēnt,       | they might hear             |

3 Perfect Tense.

| Aud-īvērim,    | I may have                                     | Aud-īvērimūs,    | We may have                 |
| Aud-īvēris,    | thou mayst heard                               | Aud-īvēritīs,    | ye may heard                |
| Aud-īvērit,    | he may heard                                   | Aud-īvērint,     | they may heard              |

1 Audīāmūs, without a Conjunction, generally means let us hear.
FOURTH CONJUGATION. [Par. 121]

4. Pluperfect Tense.

| Audii vissem, | Aud-ivissēmūs, |
| I should have | We should have |
| Aud-ivissēs, | Aud-ivissētīs, |
| thou wouldst heard | ye would heard |
| Aud-ivissēt, | Aud-ivissent, |
| he would heard | they would heard |

**INFINITIVE MOOD**

| INFINITIVES. | GERUND. |
| Pres. and IMPERF. | Gen. Aud-iendī, of hearing |
| Aud-īrē, to hear. | Dat. Aud-iendō, for hearing |
| Perf. and PLUPERF. | Acc. Aud-iendum, the hearing |
| Aud-ivissē, to have heard. | Abl. Aud-iendō, by hearing. |
| Future. Aud-īturūs, to be about to hear. | |

**SUPINES.**

| Aud-ītūm, to hear. |
| Aud-ītū, in hearing. |

**PARTICIPLES.**

| Present. Aud-iens, -entis, [&c., hearing. |
| Future. Aud-īturūs (ā, um), [about to hear. |

121 In the Fourth, (as in the First) Conjugation, the omission of v causes the following

**CONTRACTED FORMS.**

**INDICATIVE.**

| PERFECT. | FUTURE PERFECT. | PLUPERFECT. |
| Audii | Audiēmus | Audiero |
| Audiisti (audisti) | Audiisticus (audistis) | Audieris, &c. |
| Audiit | Audiērunt | Audierit, &c. |

**SUBJUNCTIVE.**

| PLUPERFECT. | PERFECT. |
| Audissēm (audissēm) | Audierim |
| Audissēs (audisses) | Audieris |
| Audissēt (audisset) | Audierit, &c. |
**THE LATIN PERFECT.**

The Latin Tenses are inferior to the English in fulness as will be seen from the following Table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Simple or Indefinite.</th>
<th>Incomplete.</th>
<th>Complete.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td><em>I catch</em></td>
<td><em>I am catching</em></td>
<td><em>I have caught</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>capto</em></td>
<td><em>capto</em></td>
<td><strong>CAPTĀVI</strong>¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td><em>I shall catch</em></td>
<td><em>I shall be catching</em></td>
<td><em>I shall have caught</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>captābo</em></td>
<td><em>captābo</em></td>
<td><strong>captāvero</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td><em>I caught</em></td>
<td><em>I was catching</em></td>
<td><em>I had caught</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CAPTĀVI</strong></td>
<td><em>captābam</em></td>
<td><strong>captāveram</strong>²</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Sometimes Complete Present, **captāvi**, *I have caught.*
2. Sometimes Simple Past, **captāvi**, *I caught.*

---

¹ That this Present Complete Tense, *I have caught*, is really a Present (though the result of a past action) may be seen from such a sentence as "I have caught this fish," which means "I have (present) this fish—in my pocket, basket," &c. Until the pupil clearly understands that the English Complete Present is a Present and not a Past Tense, he will never intelligently master the rule for the Latin Sequence of Tenses.

² Besides these, other columns might have been added by substituting "been catching" for "caught" in the third column: *I have been catching, I shall have been catching, I had been catching,* and by substituting "about to catch" for "catching" in the second column.
These two meanings of the Latin Perf. are called (1) "the Perfect with have," (2) "the Perfect without have."

**Exercise XXXIII.**

**123 Apposition.**—When two Nouns (or a Noun and Pronoun) are placed together without a Conjunction, so that one describes the other, they are said to be in *Apposition*, and both are in the same case.

**124** When a Noun is in Apposition to a Name, the Name stands second in *English*, but *first* in Latin.

*The renowned general Balbus overcomes the enemy.*

*I will give a book to the industrious boy Tullius.*

**125** "If" with *English Present* often refers to *Future time*, and must then be translated by Latin Fut. Simple or Fut. Perfect:

*I will give it if he asks.*


1. You, *women* who praise(*108*) injustice(*34*), will rightly pay the penalty. 2. To you, *O sister*, who blamed your brother, (your) brother himself gives this gift. 3. Those whose morals are depraved, you were right in not praising (trans. you rightly did not praise). 4. His excellent mother (trans. his mother, a most excellent woman), who loved you exceedingly, praised you too-much. 5. Will you point out the way to us, (you) who your-

---

1 The Latin Future, after *si*, must be translated by English Present.
2 Lit. the judge, a very just man, but in English we say *the very just judge*, or, more commonly (*70*), *the just judge*. Why is *viro* *Dat.?* Ans. *Dat. in Apposition with judici*. Why is *gentis* (Sent. 10) *Genitive*?
3 In Apposition, write the literal English first and the idiomatic English afterwards; e.g. "Germanis, gentis fortissimae" lit., *to the Germans, a very brave race*, i.e., *to the brave race of the Germans*. N.B.—Two Nouns in Apposition need not be of the same Number.
selves often err? 6. We used to praise the conduct of the (126) brave centurion Tullius. 7. I shall not punish the boy if he improves (125) his conduct. 8. They will not err if the leader points out the way to them.

**Exercise XXXIV.**

127 If the Subject consists of two Nouns or Pronouns, the Verb is in the Plural; but the Verb agrees with the First Person rather than the Second, and with the Second rather than the Third.


11. You and I have presented excellent gifts to his mother. 2. Why did the unjust judge Tullius (126) chastise the innocent Balbus (trans. Balbus, a most innocent man)? 3. In winter, O husbandmen, you had blamed the cold, in summer the heat. 4. The king had given a horse to the same soldier whom he had before blamed. 5. If you overcome (trans. shall have overcome) the enemy, O soldiers, all will praise you. 6. Did (127b) not you and Tullius blame the kind Balbus? 7. The women dreaded the sea because the winds had blown violently. 8. Did not you, O Greeks, present to the Trojans the destructive gift of a wooden horse (trans. a wooden horse, a most destructive gift)? 9. Why did you, who pointed out the road to others, yourselves err? 10. You and Balbus blamed Alexander, the most illustrious of generals.

---

1 For this and future Exercises the pupil must look out the words in the Latin-English and English-Latin Vocabularies at the end of the book.

2 In English we say "you and I," in Latin the order is reversed, "Ego et tu."

3 The English Simple Past inserts *did*, when used negatively or interrogatively: "you blamed"); but "did you blame?" "you did not blame." But all three are expressed by the Latin Perfect.
THE INFINITIVE.

128  The Infinitive (though not declinable like a Noun) is nevertheless used as the Subject or Direct Object of a Verb:

To err is human.  Errare (nom.) humānum est.
Boys like to jump.  Puēri saltāre (acc.) āmant.

The Infinitive, although used as Subject or Object, may itself have an Object, and may be modified by an Adverb.

The woman desires to get wealth.  Mūlier divītiās pārāre optat.
To have gained fame honourably is sweet.  Fāmam hōnestē pārāvisse dulcē (34) est.

EXERCISE XXXV.

1. Peccare facile est, mores emendare difficillimum (est).  2. Quis non divitiās comparare optat?  3. Saltare dulcē est puellis, senibus autem molestissimum.  4. Aestate omnes nare amamus.¹
5. Melius est virtutem quam aurum parare.  6. Amicum amare præsentem dulcē est; desiderare absentem est tristissimum.¹
7. Peccare leve est plerisque pueros; senibus pec cavisse est acerbissimum.  8. Pericula superare saepe durum est; superasse semper dulcissimum est.

1. It is easier to blame than to praise.  2. To whom is it not pleasant to swim in summer?  3. It is sad for an old man to have sinned.  4. To all it is most pleasant to have overcome dangers by wise counsels.  5. Most men desire to get gold and silver.  6. You and I love to walk by night; Tullius and his (98, 2) brother love to walk by day.  7. It is very easy to swim; it is very difficult to swim well.  8. To have erred is sad; to err is sadder.

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD, PROHIBITIONS.

129  The word for not in commands is né. But this is seldom used with the Present Imperative except in Poetry, and seldom with (what is sometimes called) the Future Imperative, except in legal forms. Consequently, for the negative Imperative—

¹ Omnes agrees with "nos" understood.
² Absentem agrees with "āmicum" understood.
Rule.—Use ne with the Perfect Subjunctive of the Second Person, and with the Present Subjunctive of other Persons.¹

**Singular.**

Do not love.  
*Ne ámávēris.*

Let him not love.  
*Ne āmet.*

**Plural.**

Do not love.  
*Ne ámávēritis.*

Let them not love.  
*Ne āment.*

The First and Third Persons Plural of the Subjunctive can be used, with or without ne, in an Imperative sense:

Let us (not) love.  
(Ne) ámēmus.

Let him amend his conduct.  
*Émendet mōres.*

**Exercise XXXVI.**


1. Let us love absent friends. 2. Let us prepare arms; let not the enemy overcome us. 3. Take-care-of his children, 0 friends; do not blame the dead. 4. Do not appease the gods, 0 foolish (men), with victims; appease them with pious deeds. 5. Let (legal) ten maidens carry the image of Diana. 6. Let us praise virtue, let us not punish the good. 7. Tullius is guilty; let him not avoid punishment. 8. Let us not blame those-who-are-worthy (i.e. the worthy) of (28) praise (5a).

**The Subjunctive Mood.—I.**

*(Expressing purpose.)*

The Subjunctive Mood (besides other uses which will be hereafter mentioned) is used when a Verb is *subjoined* to another Verb, in order to express purpose.

---

¹ The Subjunctive, when not subjoined to some principal Verb, is sometimes called the Conjunctive; and some use the term Conjunctive in all instances instead of Subjunctive. For the method of expressing a prohibition by nōli with the Infinitive, see Par. 169.
131 In such cases, *that* or *in order that* is expressed by *ut*; *that* . . . *not*, by *né*.

132 The Tenses of the Subjunctive are:

(1) *Present*, after (a) *Pres.* (whether *Simple* or *Complete*); after (b) *Future Indic.*; and after (c) *Imperative*.

(2) *Past*, after *Past Tenses*:

1. (a) I *punish*, or
   
   the boy (a) Castigo, or
   
   Castigāvi
   
   have *punished*¹
   
   he may
   
   puĕrum ut
   
   mōres ēmendet.

   (b) I *shall punish*
   
   amend (b) Castigābo
   
   his
   
   mores ēmendet.

   (c) *Punish*
   
   conduct. (c) Castigā

2. (a) I *punished*
   
   the boy (a) Castigāvi
   
   Castigāvēram
   
   puĕrum ut
   
   mores ēmendāret.

   (b) I *was *punishing*
   
   amend (b) Castigābam
   
   his
   
   mores ēmendāret.

   (c) I *had punished*
   
   amend (c) Castigāvēram
   
   his
   
   conduct.

133 Caution.—The precise meaning of the ambiguous word *castigāvi* cannot be ascertained until we see whether it is followed by the Present or Imperf. Subj. If it is followed by the Present, it must be rendered *I have punished*; if by the Imperf., *I punished*.

**Exercise XXXVII.**

1. Nauta sidera servabit ne ex itinere erret.
2. Urbem rex aedificabat ut in ea quattuor millia civium habitarent.
4. Agricola agros araverat ut segetem sibi pararet.
5. Parate arma, cives, ut hostem propulsetis.
6. Cives arma celeriter paraverant ne milites urbem expugnarent.
7. Castigavi te ut mores emendes.
8. Senex in horto ambulavit ut floribus se (35) pulcherrimis delectaret.
9. Rex judicem injustum capite multavit ut ceteri judices rectē judicent.²
10. Balbum praemio decoravi ut litteras amet; Tullium heri (adv.) casti-

¹ *I have punished* is really a (complete) Present Tense: Par. 122, note.
² See *cāput* in Vocab.: *cāpite* may be parsed as *Abl. of Instr.*, as it is here used to denote *the punishment of death*. 
gavi ne iterum peccaret. 11. Germanos, gentem feroxissimam (126a), armis propulsate, ne fines vestros vastent. 12. Aliis equos alii arma donemus (118), ne viam hostibus monstrant.

1. Let us lay-waste the lands of the enemy that they may not fight a second time. 2. The citizens will point out the way for us that we may not err. 3. We pointed out the way for the beautiful maiden (124) Tullia that she might not err. 4. Our (men) will build for you, O Tullius (13), a great house, that your friends may dwell in it. 5. Let us build a temple and prepare victims that we appease Jupiter. 6. We have prepared arms that we may repulse the enemy. 7. We chastised the boy that he might improve his conduct. 8. He had preserved the letter of (his) sister that you might not blame her. 9. Why do you not walk in the garden that you may delight yourselves with the scent of the beautiful flowers (5a)? 10. He was hastening into the garden that he might show the flowers to his friends.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—II.

(Expressing a Dependent Question.)

Hitherto the Subjunctive in Latin has been expressed by the English may or might; we now come to idioms where the ordinary English Indicative has to be expressed by the Latin Subjunctive.

134 1. A DIRECT OR INDEPENDENT QUESTION is a question in the words of the speaker:

Does he love me?  
Num me amat?

Does he not love me?  
Nōnne me amat?

135 2. AN INDIRECT OR DEPENDENT QUESTION is one that is the Subject or Object of a Verb (called the Principal Verb):

I will ask whether he loves me.  
Interrogabo num me amat.

I will ask whether he does not love me.  
(Non)ne me amat.

136 Rule.—An Indirect or Dependent Question is expressed in Latin by the Subjunctive.

The Tense, in an Indirect Question, depends on the Tense of the Principal Verb; and the rule is, as above
SEQUENCE OF TENSES. [Par. 137—1396


1. Ask \( \text{whether they love, } \text{Interrogō} \) or are loving me. \( \text{Interrogō} \) āment.
   I ask \( \text{whether they loved} \) \( \text{Interrogō} \) āment. 
   I will ask \( \text{whether they loved} \) \( \text{Interrogō} \) āment. 
   I have asked \( \text{whether they loved} \) \( \text{Interrogō} \) āment. 

2. I was asking \( \text{whether they loved} \) \( \text{Interrogō} \) āment.
   I asked \( \text{whether they loved} \) \( \text{Interrogō} \) āment.
   I had asked \( \text{whether they loved} \) \( \text{Interrogō} \) āment.

137 (1) If the Tense of the Principal Verb is either Imperative, or Indic. Pres., Fut., or “Perf. with have”—the Tense of the Dependent Verb is Pres. Subj., or Perf. Subjunctive.

138 (2) If the Tense of the Principal Verb is Indic. Imperf., Pluperf., or “Perf. without have” (i.e. Simple Past)—the Tense of the Dependent Verb is Imperf. Subj., or Pluperf. Subjunctive.

Exercise XXXVIII.

139 Quīdem (67) on the one hand, is often followed by the and enclitic vēro, however, but yet (to be distinguished from vērē, truthfully). Ēquīdem, a form of quīdem, is often used with the First Person in the Nom. to mean I on the one hand, i.e. I at all events, I for my part.

A. 1. Hodie quīdem paremus (118a) arna; cras vero hostem propulsemus. 2. Tu quīdem me interroga quid fecerimus; ego vero nihil respondeo. 3. Balbo quīdem omnia monstravi; tibi autem nihil. 4. Quaero cur fratrum alterum quīdem laudes, alterum autem culpae. 5. Equīdem hoc affirmō, tu vero unus (96) negas. 6. Interrogat cur mihi quīdem multa des, Tullio autem nihil.

1 A common error is to write “āmārent,” in 1. b., “because the English is not have loved, but loved:” but the Latin Perf. Subj. (like the Latin Perf. Indic.) represents loved, as well as have loved.

1396 2 Do not translate the Latin Subjunctive in a Dependent Question by may, might, could, should, &c.; in a Dependent Question, it must be translated by the English Indicative.
140 Quisque, quaeque, quodque (pron. form quicquē), each, often follows a Superl. (with a Sing. Verb) to denote all:

**All the worst men deny this.**

This is denied by all the best citizens.

Pessimus quisque hóc nēgat.

Hóc ab optimō quoquē civium nēgātur.

B. 1. Interrogabimus num miles fidem servaverit. 2. Equidem rogo nonne puer vera narraverit; tu vero nihil affirmas. 3. Regina interrogavit num fabri aedes aedificavissent (or aedificassent). 4. Renuntiate mihi, O exploratores, num hostis in eo loco insidias paret. 5. Miles centurionibus non renuntiavit num hostes proelium pararent (were preparing). 6. Valde dubito num nuntius vera narraverit. 7. Sapiensissimus quisque nostrum (93) dubitabat num milites vera narrarent. 8. Xonne rogabis puerum num ita peccaverit?

1. I for my part will ask whether the enemy laid-waste our territories; but the messenger will not relate the truth (i.e. true things). 2. He asked whether the enemy took the city by storm. 3. Bring-back-word to me, O friend, whether the enemy is hastening hither. 4. Will you not ask all (140) the bravest of our-men whether they prepared arms? 5. Call-together the citizens that the enemy may not lay-waste our lands. 6. I had asked your father whether he had built a home that your brothers might dwell in it. 7. I doubt whether the enemy has laid waste these lands. 8. Let us explore whether the enemy is hastening hither. 9. You were asking the boy whether he had thus sinned. 10. They asked whether he had not (135) called-together the citizens.

---

140a 1 Note that in this and similar sentences (where the Perf. Subj. follows the Pres. or Fut. Indic.) there is often an ambiguity. It may mean "whether the soldier kept his word," or "whether the soldier has kept his word." Both translations should be given.

140b 2 Here, for took, may be read had taken; and therefore the Pluperf. Subj. may be used. N.B.—Whenever, after a Past Tense of the Principal Verb, the English Simple Past, e.g. took, may be replaced by the English Complete Past, e.g. had taken, the Pluperf. Subj. may be used in Latin. The Imperf. Subj. might mean was taking.
QUIDEM, ETIAM, VEL.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Exercise XXXIX.

141 Not even is nē...quidem: but nē must be separated from quidem by the word which even modifies:
(1) Not even you will deny this. Nē tū quidem hōc nēgābis.¹
(2) Not even the smallest tree. Nē mīnima quidem arbor.¹

141a The Latin for even (without a negative) is vēl, or ētiam, coming before the word emphasized.

This is clear even to the blind, Haec ētiam caecis āperta; easy even for boys. Haec vēl pūeris fācilia.²

142 Rule.—Some Verbs signifying (1) pleasing, obeying, helping, (2) displeasing, disobeying, and harming, take the Dative.


1. To teach is more useful than to weep. 2. Why did you not set a better example to your son? 3. Do not terrify this girl with threats. 4. If you obey your parents, your children will obey you. 5. Not even the most costly banquets will please the sick (men). 6. Do not displease your mother, O boys; obey (your) elders, who advise you well. 7. You, who terrify others, yourself fear all things. 8. He does not obey even his own (141, 2)

¹ N.B.—(a) In this phrase alone it is allowable to use nē with the Indicative Mood. (b) Quidem, without nē, never means even. (c) In translating nē...quidem, be careful to put even before the word that precedes quidem: not even you, not even the smallest.
² Sunt, (or est), is often omitted where the omission causes no ambiguity.
³ Why is Poro Dat.? Why is règi? See Par. 123.
father. 9. Those whom you were advising were wiser and better than those whom you had not advised. 10. You are destroying, O soldiers, a most prosperous city with fire and sword.

**Exercise XL.**

The Perfects of some Verbs of the 2nd Conj. end in -vi instead of -ui; but the parts of Verb after u and i are always the same, e.g. déleo, délēvi:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>mōnu-</th>
<th>délēv-</th>
<th>-i, -isti, -it, &amp;c.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pluperf.</td>
<td>mōnu-</td>
<td>délēv-</td>
<td>-ēram, -ēras, -ērat, &amp;c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd. Fut.</td>
<td>mōnu-</td>
<td>délēv-</td>
<td>-éro, -ēris, -ērit, &amp;c.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


1. Do not restrain a young-man too much lest he obey you, (but) not virtue. 2. Why did you not restrain the young-men (127b) that they might obey their parents? 3. Since not even punishment terrified him, certainly threats will not terrify him. 4. Why do you not obey him to whom you owe so-much? 5. Ask whether the young-man whose (113a) death is now known to us was older than my brother. 6. I did not terrify the boy with threats, lest (the) work should become-distasteful to him. 7. I asked the brave centurion Tullius whether the arrow had hurt him. 8. Let us give rewards to all (140) the bravest (trans. each most

---

1. Why is pecuniae Gen.? See Par. 71, and add tantum and quantum as taking Partitive Genitives.
2. So great a city as we ourselves have not, i.e. a greater city than we have.
brave) of the soldiers that they may set an example to the rest.
9. Do you now terrify with threats her to whom you gave so
large a sum (trans. so-much) of money?  10. The unjust king
Balbus had (86) one (man's) silver, another (man's) lands,
another (man's) cattle.

**EXERCISE XLI.**

Several Verbs that are followed by the Infinitive in
English may be regarded as implying a purpose, and
hence:

**143 Rule.**—Verbs of asking, commanding, advising, and
striving, are followed by ut or nē with the Subjunctive.¹

Take care to teach him, i.e. in order that you may teach
him.

He asked me not to hasten.

**143a**

N.B.—As the translation of English to by the Latin
Inf. is one of the commonest errors of beginners, it is well
to recollect that the English Infinitive is never to be
rendered by the Latin Infinitive except where (128) it is the
Subject or Object of a Verb.

1. Imperavit agricolis imperator ut frumentum compararent.
2. Curate ut prima vigilia adventum hostium expectetis.
3. Admonuit nos senex ut parentibus nostris semper parere-
mus.  4. Rogabo adulescentem ut junioribus exemplum
melius præbeat.  5. Ne optimus quidem præceptorum omnia
docebit.  6. Sapientissimus quisque curabit ut linguam
coeceat.  7. Quotiens imperavi tibi ut mores emendes!
8. Cave ne viam aliis monstres, ipse tamen eres.  9. Orabat
explorator, homo mendacissimus (126a), ut sibi veniam
darem.  10. Quantum cuique debetis, tantum curate ut detis.
11. Imperavit dux militibus no mercatum deterinert.

1. Give-orders to the soldiers to prepare their arms.  2. He gave-
orders to the spies not to show these-things to the king.  3. Our
parents advised us to await the arrival of friends.  4. Tullius
asked me to teach his (98) children.  5. I beg you to grant

¹ This Rule is sometimes remembered by the following rhyme:

"With ask, command, advise, and strive,
By ut translate Infinitive."
pardon to the wicked Balbus. 6. Have you not again and again advised that fellow (iste) to restrain his tongue? 7. If you teach (125), take care to teach well. 8. Take care that you do not displease those whom you are bound (debeo) to please.¹ 9. On the fourth day we gave-orders to him to call-together three thousand (80b) soldiers.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

144 Verbs of preventing are followed by quo-minus (by-which-the-less) and the Subjunctive.

I have hindered the man from speaking, lit. by-which-the-less he may speak. Ἡμῖνεμ προῆβην quōminus dīcat.

145 The words nōn est dúbium quīn, it is not doubtful but that, i.e. there is no doubt that, are followed by the Latin Subjunctive, (though the English is Indicative):

There is no doubt that he said this (N.B. not may have said). Nōn dúbium est quīn haec dixērit.

As regards the Tense of the Subjunctive, the Rule of the Sequence of Tenses must be observed. Like follows like: (see Par. 137).

There was no doubt that he feared (N.B. not would fear).

Exercise XLII.

146 Et sometimes means even or also:


¹ What is the government of whom?

² Probably the doubt is regarded as a kind of prevention; but instead of qua-men however, there is used an old form of quo, viz. quī, followed by ne, the two words quī-ne being contracted into quīn.

As regards the Tense to be used after “nōn dúbium erat quīn,” the Pluperf. should be used when (but only when) had is, or could be, inserted in the English: there was no doubt that the woman (had) killed him, “nōn erat dúbium quīn mūliēr eum interfēcisset.”

1. I advise you to depart. 2. There is no doubt that the wise learn daily. 3. They asked us to fix our spears in the earth. 4. If you read (125), (my) friends, (99a) I will write. 5. It is often more useful to learn than to speak. 6. We shall conquer the enemy, if you (99), O citizens, defend your city. 7. The leader will take care to draw up the line-of-battle. 8. Say what-is-true (trans. true-things), my friends; let us not feign what-is-false (i.e. false-things). 9. There was no doubt that the boys wrote carefully. 10. I will hinder that-fellow from conquering.

Exercise XLIII.

(Vinco, vincio, fingo, figo.)

147 Almost all Superlatives, and many Positives, in -us, -a, -um, make Adverbs in -ē, e.g. célerrīmē, difficillīmē, tardē.

148 Almost all Comparatives in -lor use the Neut. in -īus as an Adverb: tardīus, more (rather, too) slowly; diligentīus, more (rather, too) diligently.

149 The Adverbs, like the Adjectives (64), have more than one meaning: thus, tardīus, besides meaning (1) more slowly, may also mean (2) rather slowly, or (3) too slowly.


1 Quōtīdīē is more correctly spelt cottīdīē or cōtīdīē.

2 Mi is the irregular Vocative Masc. Sing. of mēus.
1. Do not feign what-is-false (i.e. false-things), my son. 2. I will ask him whether (his) leader bridged the river. 3. Do not write the letter too-quickly (149) lest your friends read it with-very-great-difficulty (use adverb). 4. There is no doubt that he wrote this letter. 5. There was no doubt that the general had collected supplies, (and) had drawn (his) army together. 6. Take care, my friend, to correct those errors of-yours; do not (5a) neglect even (141) one (error). 7. Have you asked the centurion why the soldiers fixed their spears in the earth? 8. There was no doubt that the hostages had feigned what-was-false. 9. Ask the centurion why he bound the captives. 10. I hindered the boy from exulting; but there was no doubt that he had conquered.

**Exercise XLIV.**

**Rule.**—*Cum, when*, if followed by the Imperfect or Pluperfect, generally requires the Subjunctive Mood.¹

1. Interrogabo num puer versus heri didicerit. 2. Hostes, cum tuba cecinisset, in campum descenderunt. 3. Statuī puerum corrīgere ut diligenter disceret. 4. Dux, cum exercitum collegisset, in Galliam contendit. 5. Orbāunt imperatōrem milites ut aciem instruāt. 6. Non dubium est quīn hostes jām in urbem irruperint, aedificia igni absūmant, omnia clamore et caede turbent. 7. Quod (trans. as if quod were hoc) cum intelligerem, statim interrogabam nuntium cur haec non antea dixisset. 8. Correxi errores eius ne amīcis suis temeritate sua gravitor nesceret. 9. Interrogabat imperatōr nonne jussa sua neglexisset, num murum fortiter defendissent?

1. When I heard this (i.e. which things when I had understood), I determined to obey (142) the general. 2. Correct these errors, my (151) son, lest they injure your friends. 3. When he had collected supplies, the general closed the gates of the city. 4. What do you say, (my) friends? Do you ask me why I neglected this task? 5. There was no doubt that traitors had closed the gates of the two citadels. 6. Who hindered the citizens from defending the wall? 7. When the trumpet sounded (i.e. had sounded), not even the most cowardly of the soldiers neglected the signal. 8. At-the-time-when my friend (152) was hastening into the city, I was walking in the garden.

---

¹ With these Tenses, *cum* generally implies not simply at-the-time-when, but because (or at least some logical connection), and “*Cum causal* is followed by the Subjunctive.”

**152** But when *cum* simply means at-the-time-when, it may be followed by the Indicative Imperfect or Pluperfect.
FOURTH CONJUGATION. [Par. 152a, 153]

EXERCISE XLV.


1. Do you sleep, O foolish (men), while the enemy are bursting into the city? 2. There is no doubt that the soldiers guarded the captive badly. 3. Why did you not train the boy better that he might obey (his) elders. 4. I ask you why you punished the innocent child Tulliola (124). 5. Let us ask the judge not to punish the boy, who is undeserving of punishment. 6. You who nourished your children's bodies with so-great care, will you not, O my friends, train also their minds? 7. We who had never obeyed our parents (108), punished our children because they did not obey us. 8. Train your mind that you may learn very-many (things). 9. When we had fortified our camp, the enemy descended into the plain (5a). 10. Have you asked the boy whether he has lost his books?

EXERCISE XLVI.

(Vēnio, rēpērio.)

1. Imperator cum tandem nostros vicisset, plurimos gravissima catena vixit. 2. Serius (149) venisti: comites enim vestri hesterna nocte venerunt. 3. Interrogas cur aurum non reppereris: non repperisti, quia in hac terra aurum non est. 4. Non dubium erat quin serius venissent; sed rex eis veniam dedit. 5. Si forte cras venies, fortasse quod amisisti reperies. 6. Quamduo dux ille vixit, nostri (34) vicerunt. 7. Archimedes multa et mira invenit. 8. Inter-

---

1 Vino may be parsed, for the present, as Abb. of Instr.; but see Par. 275.
2 Though nōnne and num generally stand first in a Direct Question, they are sometimes preceded by the Clause containing the Relative Pronoun: see Exercise XXXIII, Sentence 5.
3 In English we do not translate et coming between multus and another co-ordinate Adjective, e.g. "multa et pulchra," many beautiful things.
rogavi centurionem cur captivos tam gravi catena vinxisset

1. Why, O most cruel of men, did you bind with so heavy a chain the innocent (126) Balbus? 2. The woman came rather-late, but the king granted her pardon. 3. We conquered those who lived in that plain. 4. There is no doubt that they did not find gold in this land. 5. I asked why they came (145b), but no-one heard me. 6. I found yesterday night (30) what (i.e. that which) I had lost. 7. Will he not tell me why he came here? 8. Hast thou come at-length, O best of sons?

THE VERB Sum, I am.

Sum, fui, futurus, esse,—to be.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing. Sum, I am
Es, thou art
Est, he is.

Plur. Sümus, We are
Estís, ye are
Sunt, they are.

2. Future-Simple Tense.

Sing. Éro, I shall be
Éris, thou wilt be
Érit, he will be.

Plur. Érímús, We shall be
Eritis, ye will be
Erunt, they will be.

3. Imperfect Tense.

Sing. Éram, I was
Érás, thou wast
Érát, he was.

Plur. Érámús, We were
Érátís, ye were
Érant, they were.

4. Perfect Tense.

Sing. Fuí, I have been, or I was
Fuistí, thou hast been, or thou wast
Fuít, he has been, or he was.

P. Fuímús, We have been, or we were
Fuistís, ye have been, or ye were
Fuërant, they have been, or or fuërē they were.
SUM.

5. Future-Perfect Tense.

S. Fuēro, I shall have been | P. Fuērimūs, We shall have been
Fuēris, thou wilt have been | Fuēritis, ye will have been
Fuērit, he will have been. | Fuērint, they will have been.

6. Pluperfect Tense.

S. Fuēram, I had been | P. Fuērāmūs, We had been
Fuērās, thou hadst been | Fuērātis, ye had been
Fuērāt, he had been. | Fuērant, they had been.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing. Es, Be thou. | Plur. Estē, Be ye.

2. Future Tense.

Sing. Estō, Thou shalt or must be
Estō, he shall or must be, or let him be. | Plur. Estōtē, Ye shall or must be
Sunto, they shall or must be, or let them be.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing. Sim, I may be
Sis, thou mayst be
Sit, he may be. | Plur. Simūs, We may be
Sītis, ye may be
Sint, they may be.

2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing. Essēm or fōrem, I might be
Essēs or fōrēs, thou mightst be
Essēt or fōret, he might be. | P. Essēmūs or fōremūs
Essētis or fōretīs
Essent or fōrent, they might be.

3. Perfect Tense.

S. Fuērim, I may have been
Fuēris, thou mayst have been
Fuērit, he may have been. | Fuērimūs, We may have been
Fuēritis, ye may have been
Fuērint, they may have been.

4. Pluperfect Tense.

S. Fuissēm, I should have
Fuissēs, thou wouldst have
Fuissēt, he would have been. | P. Fuissēmūs, We should have
Fuissētis, ye would have been
Fuissent, they would have been.

1 Simus, without a Conjunction, generally means let us be.
INFINITIVE MOOD.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive Present,</th>
<th>Essē, to be.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>and Imperfect,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive Perfect,</td>
<td>Fuissē, to have been.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and Pluperfect,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive Future,</td>
<td>Fūtūrūs essē, or fōrē, to be about to be.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Participle Future,</td>
<td>Fūtūrūs, -a, -um, about to be.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISE XLVII.


1. You and I have been (127) very poor. 2. We (99a) were in the city; he and his brother were in the field. 3. Had you not been ungrateful, sister, to those who were formerly most benevolent to you? 4. If you are (i.e. shall have been) joyful, I shall be most joyful. 5. Take care not to be troublesome to the benevolent. 6. I asked the boy whether he was younger than his [own] brother. 7. There is no doubt that Tullius was very ungrateful. 8. Be brave, O soldiers, that ye may be fortunate. 9. You will be happy, (my) friends, if you are (125) always contented. 10. There was no doubt that Tullius had formerly been very rich, but was now very poor.

THE ACTIVE PARTICIPLES.

154 The Participle is partly like an Adjective, in that it agrees with a Noun or Pronoun, and partly like a Verb, in that it may govern an Object.²

The citizen slew the king (when he was, or who was) about to destroy the city with fire.

Civis rēgem urbem jam igni absumptūrum interfēcit.

The darts were troublesome to our men (while they were, or who were) waiting for help.

Tēla nostrīs mōlestā ērant auxiliōm expectantibus.

¹ Not if you shall have been just (125). But optas (Sent. 7) is Present, because it refers to Present time.
² The Participle must often be translated by a Conjunction when, while, &c., or by the Relative Pronoun.
THE DEPENDENT FUTURE INTERROGATIVE.

155 It has been shown above (Par. 136) how to turn a Direct Question in the Past or Present Tenses into an Indirect Question, by changing the Indicative Tenses into corresponding Subjunctive Tenses. But, as there is no Subjunctive Future, we cannot thus turn a Direct Question in the Future, *Will he come?* "Num veniet?" into an Indirect Question, *I ask whether he will come.*

For this purpose we employ a form compounded of the Verb *sum,* and the Participle in *-rus:* *ventūrus sum,* *I am about to come;* *ventūrae sunt,* they (fem.) *are about to come;* *ventūrus tuēras,* you *had been about to come,* &c.

Hence *Will she come?* or *Is she about to come?* becomes, when changed into an Indirect Question:

- *Ask* 
  - *I ask* 
  - *I will ask* 
  - *I have asked* 

- *whether the woman is about to come.* 
  - *Interrōgā* 
  - *Interrōgó* 
  - *Interrōgābo* 
  - *Interrōgāvi* 

- *I was asking* 
  - *I asked* 
  - *I had asked* 

- *whether the woman was about to come.* 
  - *Interrōgābam* 
  - *Interrōgāvi* 
  - *Interrōgāvēram* 

**Exercise XLVIII.**

156 The Latin for *when* in questions, whether dependent or independent, is not *cum* but *quando.*

**When will he come?**  
*Quando vēniet?*

**Let us inquire when he will come.**  
*Quaerāmus quando ventūrus sit.*


---

1 The Subj. of *plācuit* is *venire,* see Par. 128. Parse *obsidibus,* see Par. 142
verba, te culpantis, te in meliora revocantis? 10. Ecce, veniunt gladiatores, principem salutaturi. 11. Non erat dubium quin pauca dictura esset. 12. Vitione potius quam virtuti obtemperatus es?

1. The speech of the general was troublesome to our men, (since they were) not then expecting an attack. 2. You, (being) yourself about-to-err, blame your brother (who is) erring. 3. You, who are destined soon to ask help (trans. you, soon about-to-ask help) in-rain, now despise your friends (who are) affording help. 4. You ought to hear the voice of your friend's (who are) chiding you (and) recalling you to the path of virtue. 5. There was no doubt that his daughter was on the point of coming, i.e. about-to-come. 6. Why, O pupils, did you displease your teacher, (though he was) teaching you most-excellently? 7. When we heard this, we resolved to obey the general (trans. (it) pleased us, hearing these things, to obey, &c.). 8. When will you obey your friends (who are) giving you many gifts and about-to-give you more (gifts)? 9. Let us ask his sisters whether they are going to obey (i.e. about-to-obey) (their) father. 10. The frost destroyed very many vines (when they were) just (jam) about-to-put-forth (their) fruit.

FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Āmōr, āmātūs sum, āmārī,—to be loved.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

| Am-ōr, | I am loved | Am-āmūr, | We are loved |
| Am-ārīs or ām-ārē, | thou art loved | Am-āmīnī, | ye are loved |
| Am-ātūr, | he is loved. | Am-antūr, | they are loved.¹ |

2. Future-Simple Tense.

| Am-ābōr, | I shall be loved | Am-ābīmūr, | We shall be loved |
| Am-ābērīs or āmābērē, | thou wilt be loved | Am-ābīmīnī, | ye will be loved |
| Am-ābītūr, | he will be loved. | Am-ābuntūr, | they will be loved. |

¹ Cicero rarely uses āmāre for āmāris. It is liable to be confused with the Imper. Passive, as well as with the Pres. Inf. Active.
### 3. Imperfect Tense.

| Am-ābār, | I was being loved (115) | Am-ābāmūr, | We were being loved |
| Am-ābārīs or ām-ābārē | thou wast being loved | Am-ābāmīnī, | ye were being loved |
| Am-ābātūr, | he was being loved | Am-ābantūr, | they were being loved |

### 4. Perfect Tense.

| Am-ātūs sum or fuī, | I have been loved, or was loved | Am-ātī sūmūs or fuīmūs, | We have been loved, or were loved |
| Am-ātūs ēs or fuistī, | thou hast been loved, or wast loved | Am-ātī estīs or fuistīs, | ye have been loved, or were loved |
| Am-ātūs est or fuit, | he has been loved, or was loved | Am-ātī sunt, fuērunt, or fuērē, | they have been loved, or were loved |

### 5. Future-Perfect Tense.

| Am-ātūs ēro or fuēro, | I shall have been loved | Am-ātī ērīmūs or fuērīmūs, | We shall have been loved |
| Am-ātūs ērīs or fuērīs, | thou wilt have been loved | Am-ātī ērītīs or fuērītīs, | ye will have been loved |
| Am-ātūs ērīt or fuērīt, | he will have been loved | Am-ātī ērunt or fuērint, | they will have been loved |

### 6. Pluperfect Tense.

| Am-ātūs ēram or fuēram, | I had been loved | Am-ātī ēramūs | We had been loved |
| Am-ātūs ērās or fuērās, | thou hast been loved | Am-ātī ērātīs | ye had been loved |
| Am-ātūs ērāt or fuērāt, | he had been loved | Am-ātī ērant | they had been loved |

### Imperative Mood.

#### Present Tense.

| Am-ārē, | Be thou loved. |
| Am-āmīnī, | Be ye loved. |
FIRST CONJUGATION.

FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

Am-átòr, Thou must be loved | Am-antòr, They must be loved.
Am-átòr, he must be loved.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Am-ér, I may be loved | Am-émür, We may be loved
Am-érís or they mayst be loved | Am-émínì, ye may be loved
äm-érë, loved
Am-étùr, he may be loved. | Am-entùr, they may be loved.

2. Imperfect Tense.

Am-árë, I might be loved | Am-árëmùr, We might be loved
Am-árëús or thou mightst be loved | Am-árëmirì, ye might be loved
äm-árëërë, loved
Am-árëtùr, he might be loved. | Am-árentùr, they might be loved.

3. Perfect Tense.

Am-átùs sim or fuërim, I may have been loved | Am-áti simùs or fuërimùs, We may have
or fuerim, loved
Am-átùs sis or fuëris, thou mayst have been loved | Am-áti sitis or fuëritis, ye may have
or fueris, loved
Am-átùs sit or fuerit, he may have been loved. | Am-áti sint or fuerint, they may have
or fuerit, loved.

4. Pluperfect Tense.

Am-átùs essem or fuissem, I should have been loved | Am-áti essèmùs or fuissemmùs, We should
or fuissem, have been loved
Am-átùs essè or fuisse, thou wouldst have been loved | Am-áti essètis or fuiissetis, ye would
or fuisse, have been loved
Am-átùs essèt or fuiisset, he would have been loved. | Am-áti essent or fuiissent, they would
or fuiisset, have been loved.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. and Imp. Am-àri,
Perf. and Plup. Am-átùs (-a, -um) esse or fuisse,
Future. Am-átum irì (not declined).

1 For an explanation of āmātum irì, see Exercise LXXIV.
### PARTICIPLES

**Perfect.**  
Am-ātūs (-a, -um), loved or having been loved.

**Gerundive.**  
Am-andūs (-a, -um), meet to be loved.

### SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

|Mōneōr, mōnītūs sum, mōnēri—to be advised.|

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### 1. Present Tense.

|Mōn-eōr, | I am advised |
| Mōn-ērīs, | thou art advised |
| Mōn-ētūr, | he is advised. |

|Mōn-ēmūr, | We are advised |
| Mōn-ēmīnī, | ye are advised |
| Mōn-entūr, | they are advised. |

#### 2. Future-Simple Tense.

|Mōn-ēbōr, | I shall be advised |
| Mōn-ēbērīs or mōn-ēbērē, | thou wilt be advised |
| Mōn-ēbītūr | he will be advised. |

|Mōn-ēbīmūr, | We shall be advised |
| Mōn-ēbīmīnī, | ye will be advised |
| Mōn-ēbuntūr, | they will be advised. |

#### 3. Imperfect Tense.

|Mōn-ēbār, | I was being advised (115) |
| Mōn-ēbārīs or mōn-ēbārē, | thou wast being advised |
| Mōn-ēbātūr | he was being advised. |

|Mōn-ēbāmūr, | We were being advised |
| Mōn-ēbāmīnī, | ye were being advised |
| Mōn-ēbuntūr, | they were being advised. |

#### 4. Perfect Tense.

|Mōn-ītūs sum or fuī, | I have been advised, or was advised |
| Mōn-ītūs es or fuistī, | thou hast been advised, or wast advised |
| Mōn-ītūs est or fuīt, | he has been advised, or was advised. |

|Mōn-ītī sūmūs or fuīmūs, | We have been advised, or were advised |
| Mōn-ītī estīs or fuistīs, | ye have been advised, or were advised |
| Mōn-ītī sunt, fuērunt, or fuērē, | they have been advised, or were advised. |
SECOND CONJUGATION.

5. Future-Perfect Tense.

Mōn-ītūs ēro, I shall have been advised
Mōn-ītūs ēris, thou wilt have been advised
Mōn-ītūs ērit, he will have been advised

Mōn-ītī ērimūs, We shall have been advised
Mōn-ītī ēritis, ye will have been advised
Mōn-ītī ērunt, they will have been advised

6. Pluperfect Tense.

Mōn-ītūsēram, I had been advised
Mōn-ītūs ērās, thou hadst been advised
Mōn-ītūs ērāt, he had been advised

Mōn-ītī ērāmus, We had been advised
Mōn-ītī ērātis, ye had been advised
Mōn-ītī ērānt, they had been advised

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Mōn-ērē, Be thou advised.
Mōn-ērī, Be ye advised

Future (see Par. 117) Tense.

Mōn-ētōr, Thou must be advised
Mōn-ētōr, he must be advised.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Mōn-eār, I may be advised
Mōn-eāris, or thou mayst be advised
Mōn-eārē, he may be advised

Mōn-eāmūr, We may be advised
Mōn-eāmīnī, ye may be advised
Mōn-eantūr, they may be advised

2. Imperfect Tense.

Mōn-ērēr, I might be advised
Mōn-ērēris, or thou mightst be advised
Mōn-ērērē, he might be advised

Mōn-ērēmūr, We might be advised
Mōn-ērēmīnī, ye might be advised
Mōn-ērentūr, they might be advised.
PASSIVE VOICE.

3. Perfect Tense.

Mōn-ītūs sim or fuērīm, { I may have been advised | Mōn-ītī simūs or We may have been advised
Mōn-ītūs sis or fuēris, { thou mayst have been advised | Mōn-ītī sitūs or ye may have been advised
Mōn-ītūs sit or fuērit, { he may have been advised | Mōn-ītī sint or they may have been advised.

4. Pluperfect Tense.

Mōn-ītūs essēm or fuissem, { I should have been advised | Mōn-ītī essēmūs or We should have been advised
Mōn-ītūs essēs, or fuisśēs, { thou wouldst have been advised | Mōn-ītī essētūs or ye would have been advised
Mōn-ītūs essēt or fuisse, { he would have been advised | Mōn-ītī essent or they would have been advised.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. and Imp. Mōn-ērī, to be advised.
Perf. and Plup. Mōn-ītūs (-a, -um) essē or fuisse, to have been advised.
Future. Mōn-ītum īrī (not declined), to be about to be advised.

Perfect. Mōn-ītūs (-a, -um), advised, or having been advised.
Gerundive. Mōn-endūs (-a, -um), meet to be advised.

THIRD OR Consonant AND U CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Rēgōr, rectūs sum, rēgī,—to be ruled.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Rēg-ōr, I am ruled | Rēg-īmūr, We are ruled
Rēg-ērīs, thou art ruled | Rēg-īmīnī, ye are ruled
Rēg-ītūr, he is ruled. | Rēg-ūntūr, they are ruled.
THIRD CONJUGATION.

2. Future-Simple Tense.

Rēg-ār, I shall be ruled | Rēg-emūr, We shall be ruled
Rēg-ēris or thou wilt be ruled | Rēg-ēmīnī, ye will be ruled
rēg-ērē, he will be ruled | Rēg-entūr, they will be ruled.

3. Imperfect Tense.

Rēg-ēbār, I was being ruled (115) | Rēg-ēbāmūr, We were being ruled
Rēg-ēbāris or thou wast being ruled | Rēg-ēbāmīnī, ye were being ruled
rēg-ēbārē, he was being ruled | Rēg-ēbantūr, they were being ruled.

4. Perfect Tense.

Rec-tūs sum or fūi, I have been ruled, or was ruled | Rec-tī sūmūs or fūmūs, We have been ruled, or were ruled
Rec-tūs ēs or fūisti, thou hast been ruled, or wast ruled | Rec-tī ēstūs or fūistiūs, ye have been ruled, or were ruled
Rec-tūs est or fūit, he has been ruled, or was ruled | Rec-tī sūnt, or fūerunt, they have been ruled, or were ruled.

5. Future-Perfect Tense.

Rec-tūs ēro I shall have been ruled | Rec-tī ērimūs, We shall have been ruled
or fūero, | Rec-tī ēritūs, ye will have been ruled
Rec-tūs ēris thou wilt have been ruled | Rec-tī ēritis, or fūeritis,
Rec-tūs ērit he will have been ruled | Rec-tī ērint, they will have been ruled.

6. Pluperfect Tense.

Rec-tūs ēram I had been ruled | Rec-tī ēramūs, We had been ruled
or fūeram, | Rec-tī ēramūs, or fūeramūs,
Rec-tūs ēras thou hadst been ruled | Rec-tī ēratūs, ye had been ruled
or fūeras, | Rec-tī ēratūs, or fūeratūs,
Rec-tūs ērāt he had been ruled | Rec-tī ērant or fūerant,
or fūerāt, | Rec-tī ērant, they had been ruled.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Rēg-ērē, Be thou ruled. | Rēg-ēmīnī, Be ye ruled.
### Future (see Par. 117) Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rēg-ītōr,</td>
<td>Rēg-untōr,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thou must be</td>
<td>They must be ruled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ruled</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he must be</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ruled.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Subjunctive Mood.

#### 1. Present Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rēg-ār,</td>
<td>Rēg-āmūr,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I may be ruled</td>
<td>We may be ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or</td>
<td>or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thou mayst be</td>
<td>thou mayst be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēg-ārē,</td>
<td>ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ruled.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rēg-ātūr,</td>
<td>Rēg-āmīnī,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he may be ruled.</td>
<td>ye may be ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rēg-antūr,</td>
<td>Rēg-antūr,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they may be ruled.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 2. Imperfect Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rēg-ērēr,</td>
<td>Rēg-ērēmūr,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I might be ruled</td>
<td>We might be ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or</td>
<td>or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thou mightst be</td>
<td>thou mightst be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēg-ērērē,</td>
<td>ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ruled.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rēg-ērētūr,</td>
<td>Rēg-ērēmīnī,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he might be ruled.</td>
<td>ye might be ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rēg-ērēntūr,</td>
<td>Rēg-ērēntūr,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they might be ruled.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 3. Perfect Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rec-tūs sim</td>
<td>Rec-tī sīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I may have</td>
<td>We may have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or fuērim,</td>
<td>fuērimūs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>been ruled</td>
<td>been ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rec-tūs sis</td>
<td>Rec-tī sitīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thou mayst have</td>
<td>ye may have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuēris,</td>
<td>fuēritis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>been ruled</td>
<td>ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rec-tūs sit</td>
<td>Rec-tī sint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he may have</td>
<td>they may have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuērit,</td>
<td>fuērint,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>been ruled.</td>
<td>been ruled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 4. Pluperfect Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rec-tūsussem</td>
<td>Rec-tī essēmūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I should have</td>
<td>We should have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or fuissesem</td>
<td>or fuissesemūs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>been ruled</td>
<td>been ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rec-tūsus</td>
<td>Rec-tī essētīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thou wouldst</td>
<td>ye would have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essēs,</td>
<td>or fuissesetūs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have been</td>
<td>been ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ruled</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rec-tūsus essēt</td>
<td>Rec-tī essent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he would have</td>
<td>they would have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essēt,</td>
<td>or fuissent,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>been ruled.</td>
<td>been ruled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Infinitive Mood.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. and Imp.</td>
<td>Rēg-ī,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be ruled.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf. and Plup.</td>
<td>Rec-tūs (-a, -um) essē or fuissē,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to have been ruled</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future.</td>
<td>Rec-tūm irī (not declined),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be about to be</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ruled.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PARTICIPLES

Perfect.
Rec-tūs (-a, -um), ruled or having been ruled.
Rēg-endūs (-a, -um), meet to be ruled.

Gerundive.

FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Audiōr, auditūs sum, audīrī,—to be heard.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Audiōr, I am heard  |  Aud-imūr, We are heard
Aud-īris, thou art heard  |  Aud-īmini, ye are heard
Aud-ītūr, he is heard  |  Aud-iuntūr, they are heard

2. Future-Simple Tense.

Audiōr, I shall be heard  |  Aud-īemūr, We shall be heard
Aud-īēris, or thou wilt be heard  |  Aud-īemini, ye will be heard
Aud-īērē, he will be heard  |  Aud-īentūr, they will be heard

3. Imperfect Tense.

Audiēbār, I was being heard (115)  |  Aud-īēbāmr, We were being heard
Audiēbaris, or thou wast being heard  |  Aud-īēbāmini, ye were being heard
Audiēbārē, he was being heard  |  Aud-īēbantūr, they were being heard

4. Perfect Tense.

Audiītūs sum or fui, I have been heard, or was heard  |  Aud-ītī sūmus or fuīmus, We have been heard, or were heard
Audiītūs es or fuisti, thou hast been heard, or was heard  |  Aud-ītī estīs or fuistīs, ye have been heard, or were heard
Audiītūs est or fuit, he has been heard, or was heard  |  Aud-ītī sunt, or fuērunt, they have been heard, or were heard
PASSIVE VOICE.

5. Future-Perfect Tense.

| Aud-ītūs ēro | I shall have been heard | Aud-ītī ērımūs | We shall have been heard |
| Aud-ītūs ēris | thou wilt have been heard | Aud-ītī ērītīs | ye will have been heard |
| Aud-ītūs ērit | he will have been heard | Aud-ītī ērunt | they will have been heard |

| Or fūero, | | Or fūerūs, | | Or fūerīt, | |

6. Pluperfect Tense.

| Aud-ītūs ēram | I had been heard | Aud-ītī-ērāmūs | We had been heard |
| Aud-ītūs ērās | thou hadst been heard | Aud-ītī ērātīs | ye had been heard |
| Aud-ītūs ērāt | he had been heard | Aud-ītī ērant | they had been heard |

| Or fūeram, | | Or fūerēs, | | Or fūerēt, | |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

| Aud-īrē, | Be thou heard. | Aud-īmīnī, | Be ye heard. |

Future (see Par. 117) Tense.

| Aud-ītōr, | Thou must be heard | Aud-iuntōr, | They must be heard. |
| Aud-ītōr, | he must be heard. | | |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

| Aud-īār | I may be heard | Aud-īāmūr, | We may be heard |
| Aud-īāris | thou mayst be heard | Aud-īāmīnī, | ye may be heard |
| Aud-īātūr, | he may be heard. | Aud-īantūr, | they may be heard. |

2. Imperfect Tense.

| Aud-īrēr, | I might be heard | Aud-īrēmūr, | We might be heard |
| Aud-īrēris | thou mightest be heard | Aud-īrēmīnī, | ye might be heard |
| Aud-īrētūr, | he might be heard. | Aud-īrentūr, | they might be heard. |
FOURTH CONJUGATION. 93

3. Perfect Tense.

Aud-ītūs sim or \( I \) may have been heard
Aud-ītūs sis or thou mayst have been heard
Aud-ītūs sīt or he may have been heard.

Aud-ītī simūs or \( I \) we may have been heard
Aud-ītī sītīs or ye may have been heard
Aud-ītī sīt or they may have been heard.

4. Pluperfect Tense.

Aud-ītūsessem or \( I \) should have been heard
Aud-ītūs essēs or thou wouldst have been heard
Aud-ītūs essēt or he would have been heard

Aud-ītī essēmus or \( I \) we should have been heard
Aud-ītī essētīs or ye would have been heard
Aud-ītī essēnt or they would have been heard.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. and Imp. Aud-īri, to be heard.
Perf. and Plup. Aud-ītūs (-a, -um) essē or fuissē, to have been heard.
Future. Aud-ītum īri (not declined), to be about to be heard.

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect. Aud-ītūs (-a, -um), heard or having been heard.
Gerundive. Aud-īendūs (-a, -um), meet to be heard.

EXERCISE XLIX.

57a If two Subjects are connected by Disjunctive Conjunctions, e.g. vēl, or (if you please), or (rather), aut or (else), the Verb generally agrees with the latter of the two.

What man or what monster committed this crime? Qui hōmo, vēl quae hēlūa hōc facĭnus commĭsit?

Either you or Tullius said this. Aut tū aut Tullius hae dicĭt.

1. Equus ab auriga domabitur (32), mox aurigam dorso portabit.
2. Cura ut Tullia, puella pulcherrima, floribus a matre ornetur.
5. Curavit sacerdos ut haec divitiae in aedem Jovis portarentur.
6. Si animum recreabis, nihil obstabit quominus saneris.
7. Cura ut a medico saneris, qui te facillime sanabit, si
PASSIVE PARTICIPLES. [Par. 158—160]

The land of the Germans, which was never (115) wont-to-be laid-waste before, was laid waste by our men. 2. While we are being overcome by disease, our allies are being overcome by the enemy. 3. The leader took care that the citizens should be preserved. 4. Take care that the gates of the city are strongly-guarded, (trans. strengthened with a guard), that our men may not be overcome by the enemy. 5. What enemy, or (rather) what danger (111) prevented this wealth from being carried (use quominus, see Par. 144) into the temple? 6. Our men, not expecting an attack, were being overcome by the enemy. 7. We shall be cured (17) by this medicine if we obey the physician’s precepts. 8. How will you be preserved, (my) friends, in this great (trans. so-great) conflagration? 9. The priests were-taking-pains that the temple should be adorned by the servants with very-many flowers. 10. Let us take-care that the gates of the city are (143) strongly-guarded.

PARTICIPLES AND PARTICIPIAL TENSES.

158 The Participle Passive agrees with its Noun in Number and Gender.

\[
\text{Hostes sūpērātī fūgiūnt.}
\]

\[
\text{Urbem captam incendunt.}
\]

159 N.B.—Note how the English and can be expressed by the Latin Passive Participle.

159a The Perfect, Future Perfect, and Pluperfect Tenses of āmor, both in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, are not really independent Tenses of āmor, but rather Tenses

1 Sūbītō is an Adv. Adj. in -us, -a, -um, and -er, -a, -um, mostly make Adv. in -ē; but there are exceptions: tūtō, safely; cītō, quickly; &c.
PASSIVE PARTICIPLES.

of the Verb sum joined to forms of the Passive Participle amatus which must agree with some Noun or Pronoun:

The town is taken. Oppidum captum est.
The girls will have been adorned. Puellae ornatae fuerint.

Exercise L

161 If two or more Subjects are (1) animate beings of different genders, their Adjective or Participle is Masculine; (2) if inanimate, generally Neuter Plural.

(1) His father and mother have been slain. Pater eius et mater interfecti sunt.
(2) Anger and avarice were more powerful than authority. Ira et avaritia imperio potentiöra erant.

1. Interroga num pater meus et mater a Tullio servati sint (9a).

1. Have the wall and the gate been stormed by the enemy (101)?
2. Ask whether the wall and the gate have been preserved by the citizens. 3. The town is stormed (i.e. has been stormed): our men are overcome. 4. The bridge, having been preserved by the husbandmen, had been pointed out to us by the spy. 5. There was no doubt that two hundred ships of war had been preserved by the enemy. 6. The shower was troublesome to the enemy (who were) now put-to-flight. 7. Did you not owe everything (trans. all things) to Tullius, by whom your very life had been preserved? 8. Having been praised by all the best citizens (140), will you and your sister, (150) my (dear) Tullius, commit this great (i.e. so great) crime (101)?
SECOND CONJUGATION.

Exercise LI.

162 The Passive is sometimes used impersonally in Latin where we use the Active:

*All laughed,* lit. *it was laughed by all.*  
**Ridebātur** āb omnībus.

*The enemy had fought bravely,* lit. *it had been fought bravely by the enemy*  
**Pugnātum** ērat ācīter āb hostibus.

163 The Neuter of the Passive Participle in -ndus (commonly called the Gerundive) is very frequently used in this impersonal way, the Agent being expressed by the Dative:

*I must fight,* lit. *it is meet to be fought to, or for, me.*  
**Pugnandum** est mīhi.¹

*Ought you not to remain?*  
**Nōnne tībi mānendum** est?


1. There is no doubt that two-hundred cities were utterly-destroyed by the cruel general Balbus (124).  2. We must fight bravely that the enemy may not (131) take the city by-storm.  3. Fighting

---

¹ If the Verb *e.g. pareo* governs a Dat., “parendum est nobis” would be ambiguous, meaning either *obedience must be paid to us, or by us.* This ambiguity is avoided by using ā with the Abl. to express the Agent:  
*We must obey the magistrate.*  
Magistrātūā nobīs parendum est.

² Quīsque is Nom. Sing. in Apposition to *cives.* Note that in this phrase, they came, returned, each to his &c., sūus always precedes quīsque.
was kept up briskly (trans. it-was-fought briskly) by the Germans, that our men, terrified by the multitude of the darts, might retire into the city. 4. There is no doubt that the master will exercise (155) the bodies of the slaves. 5. Why must you weep? Ought (163) not you (101) rather to fight that your fields may not be laid waste by the enemy? 6. There is no doubt that answer-was-made most-bravely by our leader. 7. I took care that the city might be filled with soldiers that you might not be terrified by the danger. 8. We ought not to be terrified in this great danger (trans. this so-great danger). 9. Our men, when-they-could scarcely sustaining the charge of the enemy and (were) almost fleeing, were recalled by the voice of (their) brave (70) leader. 10. What tyrant, or (157a) what (111) danger, will prevent (144) us from remaining in our city?

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Exercise LII.

166 I am on the point of conquering. In ēo sum ut vincam. I was on the point of conquering. In ēo ēram ut vincērem.

Rule.—When an Active Verb governing a Dative is turned into the Passive, it retains the Dative but is used impersonally. Thus, *all obey you, omnes tibi pārēbunt*; but:

167 You will be obeyed by all, i.e. Tībi āb omnibus pārēbitur it will be obeyed to you by all. (not tū pārēbēris).

1. Qui non, puer, regitur, is, senex, non bene reget.1 2. Nisi te ipsum (125a) viceris, hostes a te inutiliter vincentur. 3. Cur ne falsa a te fingantur. 4. Curabant senes ut a filiis suis recte viveretur. 5. Cum nostri in eo essent ut urbem intrarent, subito portae clausae sunt. 6. Non dubium est quin exercitus, fortiter pugnans, ab hostibus oppressus sit. 7. Cavendum est ne ab hostibus conteremini. 8. Interrogavisti nonne conjuratio alteri consuli a tribus testibus detecta esset. 9. Rhenus fluvius a Cæsare ponte eo tempore junegatur. 10. Castra a duobus milibus militum, viris acerrimis, defendentur. 11. Liber ille a liberis meis summa diligentia scribitur. 12. Quid obstat quominus agri colantur, quoniam mox hostes in fugam vertentur? 13. Tune agros colis qui, quotiens colentur, totiens ab hostibus vastabuntur?

---

1 *Puer* is Nom., in Apposition with *qui*, *he who*, *when (or as) a boy*, &c.
1. The town will be defended bravely by the citizens. 2. Take care that the gates are shut and that the city is guarded (trans. strengthened with a guard). 3. If the river (125) is bridged by the enemy, you will be in great danger, citizens. 4. Do you (tu), the partner 1 of our plans, give-orders that the conspiracy shall be disclosed (pres. subjunct.)? 5. I asked my children whether the books were being written by them. 6. There was no doubt that the fields, formerly laid-waste by the enemy, were now being cultivated. 7. If you, (when) a boy, obey your parents, you will be obeyed, when old, by your children (trans. it-will-be-obeyed to you (when) an old-man). 8. Our men are on the point of putting the enemy to flight. 9. The enemy were on the point of being put to flight by our men. 10. If the conspiracy is disclosed (125) to-morrow, the city will be preserved by you.

Exercise LIII.


1. There is no doubt that the letter was written by his sister. 2. What prevented the fields from being cultivated? 3. When the enemy had now been conquered, the husbandmen determined to cultivate the fields. 4. There was no doubt that the old man's memory had been cherished (lit. cultivated) by those whom he had taught. 5. Let us ask the poet why he did not compose (lit. write) a better story. 6. The king asked the general why he had not himself drawn up the line-of-battle with greater care (lit. more-diligently). 7. Our ambassadors were sent a-second-time into the city to seek for peace (lit. about-to-

1 In what case should partner be? See Par. 123.
FOURTH CONJUGATION.

168 When the Gerundive is used as an Adjective, it still takes the Dative of the Agent; (if (164) there is no ambiguity:)

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{The boys} & \quad \text{are (fit) to be punished} \quad \text{Puēri} \quad \text{sunt mihi pũniend} \quad -i.
\text{girls} & \quad \text{are (ed by me)} \quad \text{Puellae} \quad \text{sunt mihi pũniend} \quad -ae.
\text{I must learn this.} & \quad \text{Haec mihi discenda sunt.}
\end{align*}
\]

Exercise LV.

1. There is no doubt that lions are found in Africa. 2. Will you not obey, O most ungrateful boy, the father by whom you were clothed, nourished, (and) educated? 3. Let us take care that war may be terminated by peace. 4. The spies of the enemy must be punished by us. 5. What prevents the camp from being fortified by our men (144)? 6. The dead used-to-be-buried by the ancients outside the city. 7. On the fourth day, my son, you will be heard by the judges. 8. You were being patiently heard by all: why did (127b) you not yourself (105) hear me?

Exercise LV.


\(^1\) Diligentiā is Abl. of Manner: see Exercise LXXIX.

1. I asked whether the bodies of the dead had been buried. 2. Will (it) not please you to nourish those by whom you yourselves have been nourished? 3. There is no doubt that many lions have been found in Africa. 4. These who have been bound by you, O soldiers, have secretly escaped. 5. The story which had been beautifully written by the poet did not please the king. 6. Take-care that you are clothed with a thick garment, that the cold may not hurt you. 7. She was heard by the same judges by whom his sisters had already been heard. 8. What have you found, my friend, which has not already been found out by others (5a)?

THIRD CONJUGATION IN I.

Cāpiō, cēpi, captum, cāpērē,—to take.
(stem: cāp-, or cāpī-)

When the First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. of the Third Conjugation ends in -īo, it (1) drops the ī before ī and ē, but (2) retains it otherwise, e.g. before a, o, ē, and u.
Thus (1) cāpīmus, cāpēre, cāpē.
But (2) cāpi-am, cāpi-o, cāpi-ēs, cāpi-unt.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Fut. Cāpi-am, cāpi-ēs, cāpi-ēt, cāpi-emus, cāpi-ētis, cāpi-ēnt.

Regular Tenses.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Pres.} & : & \text{Cāpi-o, cāp-īs, cāp-īt, cāpīmus, cāp-ītis, cāpi-unt.} \\
\text{Fut.} & : & \text{Cāpi-am, cāpi-ēs, cāpi-ēt, cāpi-emus, cāpi-ētis, cāpi-ēnt.} \\
\text{Imperf.} & : & \text{Cāpi-ēbam, cāpi-ēbas, cāpi-ēbat, cāpi-ēbamus, cāpi-ēbatis, } \\
& & \text{cāpi-ēbant} \\
\end{align*}
\]

\[168a\]

1 Vincti is Masc. Nom. agreeing with a Masc. Nom., men or captives, implied in milia.
2 For easy Exercises on the Regular Verbs, see pp. 173—175.
3 The only exception is the 3rd Pers. Sing. of the Fut. Indic. cāpi-ēt, which follows the form of the other persons, cāpi-ēs, cāpi-ēmus, &c.
THIRD CONJUGATION IN -i.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. cáp-ē, cáp-īte,
Fut. cáp-īto, cáp-īto, cáp-ītōte, cáp-īunto,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres. Cāpī-am, cāpī-as, cāpī-at, cāpī-amus, cāpī-atis, cāpī-ant,
Imperf. Cāp-ērem, cāp-ēres, cāp-ēret, cāp-ēremus, cāp-ēretis, cāp-ērent,

Regular Tenses.

{ Perf. Cēp-ērim, cēp-ēris, &c.
Pluperf. Cēp-issem, cēp-īsses, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Cāp-ēre, Perf. Cēp-is

PARTICIPLES.


GERUND.
Cāp-iendi.

Supines.
Cāptum, captu.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

(Only the Present and Present-Derived Tenses are given below.)

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Cāpī-or, cāpī-ēris, cāpī-ētur, cāpī-ēmur, cāpī-ēmini, cāpī-
untur.
Fut. Cāpī-ar, cāpī-ēris (-ērē), cāpī-ētur, cāpī-ēmur, cāpī-
ēmini, cāpī-ēntur.
Imperf. Cāpī-ēbar, cāpī-ēbaris (-bārē), cāpī-ēbatur, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Fut. Cāpī-tor, cāpī-untor.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres. Cāpī-ar, cāpī-āris, cāpī-ātur, &c.
Imperf. Cāp-ērer, capēr-ēris, capēr-ētur, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Cāp-i.
**EXERCISE LVI.**

169 A prohibition is often expressed by the Imperative Sing. nōlī or Plur. nōlite, be unwilling:

*Do not flee, i.e. be unwilling to flee.* Nōlī, or nōlite, fūgēre.

170 The Ablative of the Gerund is used instrumentally:

*Water hollows the rock by falling.* *Aqua saxum cāvat cādendo.*

1. Cape pira quoniam cupis, sed noli piro meae quatiendo nocere.
2. Si haec scripseris, mox cupies non Scripsisse.
3. Interrogavit num, haec facientes, recte et sapienter faceremus.
4. Accipe trecentos denarios, si dederit; ducentos ne acceperis.
5. Curate ut versus vestri Nasonem sapiant.
6. Nōlite fugere, O milites; fodiendum est, non fugiendum, ut castra muniamus.
7. Si quaeris monumentum, circumspice.
8. Noli, O judex, injusta facere: nonne te oravit rex ut justitiam semper respiceres?
9. Miles, jam telum conjecturus, hostem jaecentem aspexit.
10. Interrogavi qualia animalia multiplices fetus parerent.

**EXERCISE LVII.**

171 *Whether...* or, in (a) Independent, as well as in (b) Dependent Questions, can be expressed by (1) utrum...ān; (2) -nē...ān:

(a 1) *Is this true or false?* Utrum haec vēra ān falsa sunt?
(a 2) *Was he white or black?* Albus nē ān āter ērat?

---

1 These words are inscribed on the tomb of Sir Christopher Wren in St. Paul's; *quaeris* refers to present, not (125) to future time.
2 From what two Verbs may parerent come, the quantity being left unmarked? What Case does each govern?
3 Note that *have-regard-to* is one Verb in Latin governing an *Accusative Case.*
Par. 172—177] ALTERNATIVE QUESTIONS. 103

(b 1) We must enquire whether this is true or false.
(b 2) It is uncertain whether he was black or white.

Quaerendum est utrum haec vera sint an falsa.
Incertum est albus ne an ater fuerit.

172 Or not in Interrogatives may be rendered by annon or necne:
Ask whether he will come or not. Quaerut utrum venturus sit necne (or annon).

173 N.B. (1) Aut and vel (157a) are not to be used in Dependent or Independent Questions.

174 (2) When whether is not followed by or, num (135) is generally used instead of utrum.

175 (3) The Rule (136) for Sequence of Tenses always holds.

1. Præceptor dubitabat tune an Tullius rem melius gereret. 2

176 1 Both in Independent and Dependent Questions (c) an is sometimes used without utrum or -nè preceding; and in Dependent Questions (d) -nè is sometimes used for or, without a preceding particle. It is uncertain whether he was the son Filius nepos ne fuerit Tullii incentum est.

176a 2 The disjunctive an disjoins tu from Tullius and causes geregret to agree with Tullius; tu may be parsed as the subject of geregret understood: see Par. 157a.

177 3 Dicitur, with a Personal Subject, should generally be rendered in English impersonally, it is said that Latona, &c.
1. Who doubted whether you or your brother had made these verses?
2. We must either depart or learn. 3. Let us make an end of this war or (rather) insurrection. 4. The general ordered the soldiers to hurl their darts against (in gose., acc.) the enemy.
5. Either we shall carry on this war prosperously or we shall be driven into exile. 6. There was no doubt that the queen, or (rather) her son, had waged that war very-prosperously. 7. It was doubtful whether the general had seen the horse-soldiers, or (whether) ignorant of their arrival, he had drawn up the line-of-battle. 8. Let us ask whether the men will come on the third or fourth day. 9. It is uncertain whether the city has been stormed or not. 10. Who doubts whether the queen will (155) carry on the war in winter (5a)?

PREPOSITIONS.

178 1. The following Prepositions take the Ablative, and no other Case:

| A, āb (before a vowel), by, from. | Ė, (ex before a vowel), out of. |
| Absque (rare), without. | Pālam, openly, in the presence of. |
| Clam, secretly, without the knowledge of. | Prae, before, in comparison with, (with a negative because of.) |
| Cōram, in the presence of. | Prō, before, for, on behalf of, instead of, in return for. |
| Cum, with. | Sīne, without. |
| Dē, down from, from, concerning. | Tēnus (after its Case), as far as. |

These Prepositions are sometimes committed to memory in the following rhyme:

A, or āb, and ex or Ė
Cum, pālam, cōram, clam and dē
Tēnus, sīne, prō, and prae
Always govern the Ablative.

1 Clam is used by the Comic Authors with the Accusative.
2 Pālam is used as a Preposition only after Cicero, and mostly by poets.
3 Prae is rarely used by Cicero to mean because of except with non, vix, &c.: I am not able to speak for sorrow, Prae maerōre lōqui non possum.
4 Tēnus governs the Abl. Sing.; but with a Plural Noun, more often takes the Genitive, Alpium tēnus, as far as the Alps: but the Gen. Pl. construction is not found in the prose of Cicero.
ExerciSe LVIi.

179  **Rule.**—Cum is affixed to tē, mē, sē, nōbīs, vōbīs, quō, quibus: mēcum, (not cum mē) nōbīscum, quōcum, &c.

1. Puer inde a pueritia cum matre vixerat, quae ab Italia ad Graeciam se receperat. 2. Pecuniam mihi reddidit quam ipse a fratre meo, proximo anno, coram patre meo acceperat. 3. Irruperunt clam imperatore milites cum gladiis, cum scutis; qui (see 'qui') cum me vehementissime increpissent, equidem cum constantia respondi. 4. Tu quidem Rheno tenus regnabis, filius autem tecum regnabit. 5. Alpium tenus omnes gentes vicerat. 6. Verbo tenus te adjuvabit, re ipsa nihil faciet. 7. Ira sine viribus inutilissima est. 8. Pro obsidibus causam egit Tullius; cui (i.e. et ei, see Par. 298, I) pro tantis eius laboribus gratias Allobroges egerunt. 9. Nos pro patria pugnantes dejectis de Capitolio (32), jam ex urbe ejicitis. 10. Multis de causa cupis tecum de hac re deliberare.

1. In-the-presence-of his father the youth deliberated with me concerning this matter. 2. Let us return thanks to the worthy Balbus, who pleaded our cause with (181) zeal before the king. 3. There was no doubt that he had conquered all Asia as-far-as Taurus. 4. From a boy he had lived in Greece. 5. Since the general forbids (us), let us fight for (our) country without his knowledge. 6. He was slain by the soldiers in-the-sight-of the people. 7. From Italy I shall retire to Greece, and my son will travel with me. 8. Tullius, who pleaded for us, replied to these charges with indignation. 9. I scarcely write for tears: having been driven out-of (my) native-land into exile. 10. What will anger without wisdom effect for us?

180  **Prepositions Taking the Accusative or Ablative.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ABLATIVE.</th>
<th>ACCUSATIVE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In, meaning <strong>rest in</strong></td>
<td>In, meaning into, to, towards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sūb, <strong>rest under</strong></td>
<td>Sūb, <strong>motion from below</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sūper, <strong>concerning</strong></td>
<td>Sūper, <strong>above, over, upon</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

1. Rē is Adverbial Abl.; see Par. 182.
2. 'From many reasons,' i.e. 'for many reasons.'
3. The form sūbter (hardly, if at all, found, except in poets and late prose writers), meaning extension under, generally takes the Acc. but sometimes the Abl. in poetry.
4. Sūper, meaning above, also takes the Abl. in poetry, and in Caesar.
Exercise LIX.

181 Rule.—The Manner of an action may be expressed (1) by the Abl. of a Noun, with an Adjective attached to it; (2) by the Abl. following cum.

He spoke with, or in, anger; I replied with the greatest firmness.

Ille quidem 

cum

ēra

lōcātus est; ūgō

vēro

summā

con-

stantia

respondi.

N.B. The Abl. without an Adj. or Prep. is used to denote Instrument, but not Manner.

182 Some exceptional Ablatives of Nouns are used (without Adjectives) adverbially, e.g. jūre, rightly; ordīne, in order; spēcīē, in appearance; rē or rē

ipsa,

in

fact, &c. They may be parsed as Adverbial Ablatives.


1. The wisdom of Socrates was the talk (trans. was in the mouth) of all the Athenians. 2. There is no doubt that he will deliberate with you about this matter. 3. Why, O foolish man, did you send the Romans under the yoke, (since you were) soon about-to-pay the penalty of (your) deed by death? 4. If this comes under your notice (trans. eyes), do not neglect (it). 5. Above the wall let us erect a very high tower, that our men may not be under fire. 6. By-this-time two cohorts of our men had come under the fire of the enemy. 7. It is said that Daphne was changed (trans. Daphne is said to have been changed) into a laurel by Apollo. 8. How-long did you remain in Italy, and what do you say of (i.e. concerning) that country? 9. The Romans, who subtracted a part from his

---

1 Lit. for us under eyes, i.e. under our eyes. Why is nobis Dat? See Par. 7.
kingdom, presented to him, (in return) for this (part), a new province. 10. There is no doubt that the brave centurion Balbus received wound on wound.

### 183  
**PREPOSITIONS TAKING THE ACCUSATIVE ALONE.**

| Ad, Adversūs, Antē, Apūd, Circā, circum, Circītēr, Cis & cītā, Contrā, Ergā, Extrā, Infrā, Intēr, Intra, | Juxtā,  
| to. towards, against.  
| before.  
| at, near, among, in the house of, in the presence of, in the pages of.  
| around.  
| about.  
| on this side of.  
| against, contrary to.  
| towards (only of the feelings).  
| outside of.  
| below.  
| between, among.  
| inside of, within.  
|  
| Öb, Pēnēs, Pēr, Post, Praetēr, Prōpē, Proptēr, Sēcundūm, Suprā, Trans, Ultrā, Versūs, | near, hard by, next to.  
| in front of (rare); on account of.  
| in the hands of.  
| through.  
| after.  
| besides, beyond.  
| near.  
| close to, on account of.  
| following, in accordance with.  
| above.  
| across.  
| on the farther side of.  
| towards (in the direction of). 2

### 184  
The various meanings of the Prepositions (only a few of which have been given above) must be learned by practice. But some help may be gained by remembering that most Prepositions can be used to denote some thought, such as that of cause, obstacle, superiority, &c., besides denoting relations of place and time. Thus Öb meant originally (1) in front of, but it means more commonly (2) on account of; për means (1) through, of space, but it also means (2) throughout or during, of time, and (3) through, of means, or owing to, of cause; antē means (1) before, of time, "before

1 Pōnē, an old form of post, is used as an adverb by Virgil, but is rarely used as a Preposition except by ante-classical and post-classical authors.

2 Versus usually follows the name of the place to which motion is directed: in the direction of Ambracia, Ambrāciam versus. Sometimes ad is inserted before the name of the place: ad Oceānum versus. Versus and adversus have old forms versusum and adversum.
daybreak;” (2) before, of place, “before the gates;” (3) before, of estimation, “He loved Balbus before, or above, the rest.”

Exercise LX.

Ad, to or towards, is used to denote purpose, with the Acc. of (1) the Gerund, or (2) if the Verb is used transitively in English, the Acc. of the Gerundive Adjective.

(1) This will be useful to drink-(ing). I am prepared to fight(ing).

(2) This is useful for cultivating the fields, i.e. towards the fields being hereafter cultivated.

1. Postquam ad multam noctem pugnatum est, ad castra uterque exercitus revertit. 2. Qui apud me manserant, ii apud judices rei facti sunt. 3. Apud antiquos (sic apud Ciceronem scriptum est) mos erat ante lucem surgere, negotia ante voluptatem ponere. 4. Post paucos dies videbo te cum manibus tuis post tergum vinctis ad carcerem reductum. 5. Citra Alpes erat Gallia Cisalpina; ultra Alpes, Gallia Transalpina. 6. Phaethon, Phoebi filius, quum per aethera patris sui equos paulisper egisset, de curru dejectus est. 7. Ob oculos mihi mors est; hanc poenam superbiae meae jure do. 8. Hoc contra jus fasque est, trans Euphratem exercitum tuum in pace traiicere. 9. Interfecti sunt hostium supra viginti milia. 10. Hoc est infra tuam dignitatem. 11. Tela haec ad eamus (adv.) feriendam sunt utilissima. 12. Vallis ad pugnandum nostro equitandum parum apta erat.

1 In Old English to was followed by a Gerund resembling the form drinking, not by an Infinitive.

2 Trans. “after the battle had gone on,” and remember that postquam with the Latin Perfect (not Pluperfect) represents the English had.

Also distinguish carefully between the Conjunction postquam, when or after (that), and the Preposition post.

3 Look out rēus.

4 Why is jūrē Abl. ? See Par. 182.

5 “Traiecte . . . exercitum” is in Apposition to hoc.

6 Hostium is Gen. governed by milia. The Nom. to interfecti sunt is hostes understood, or some other Masc. Nom. implied from the context.

7 Equitātui is Dat. of Advantage, see Par. 7.
1. Among the ancients it was the custom to rise before dawn and to dine in the evening (30). 2. Why have you led your army across the Euphrates? 3. In-the-pages-of Cicero we read many (things) (that are) truly, all (things) tastefully expressed (i.e. said). 4. When he had been accused in-the-presence-of the judges he was led to prison. 5. Bread is useful even for quenching thirst. 6. This water is not fit to drink. 7. Why do you do these things against the law of-man and of-God? 8. It is right to place business before pleasure. 9. Have not these things come under your notice (i.e. eyes)? 10. During (per) two nights, in this great (i.e. so-great) storm, death was before our eyes.

Exercise LXI.

**INTER SE** (expressing all reciprocal relations) means among themselves; together; with, between, or from, one another.

Cicero’s children are very loving among one another.

These things do not agree together, or disagree from one another.


1. He who loves no one besides himself is himself loved by no one (92). 2. Virtue is to-be-sought on-account-of itself. 3. How

---

1 Which is the Principal Verb? The Antecedent of quem? The subject of laudat? See Hints on Construing, Appendix III., p. 216.

2 To-be-sought, i.e. meet-to-be-sought.
great a-difference-is (there) between hopes and deeds! 4. The
general took-care to keep his soldiers out of shot. 5. One
road (led) beside the walls of the city, the other (led)
through a small wood, across a stream. 6. The judgment is in
your hands: When (will) you judge? 7. Why do you
beyond measure praise the foolish (Tullius)? 8. Labienus
will hasten in-the-direction of the Rhine. 9. When will you
send our cavalry against the enemy, who are now fighting
amongst one another? 10. I ask you, my friends, how virtue
and vice are contrary (to one another) 11. For this cause
we prepared an ambush in a wood, which was near (propê)
the town.

VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH PREPOSITIONS.

190 Formation.—(1) The Present Tenses of Verbs com-
ounded of a Preposition and a Verb usually change a or
e of the Verb into i: thus, from fácio we have déficío
sufficío, (i.e. sub-fício), confício, (i.e. cum-fício), &c., and
from lēgo we have délígō, collígō, (i.e. con-lígō or cum-
lígō), &c.¹ But the perfects remain unchanged: dé-fécī,
suf-fécī, de-lēgī, collēgī, &c.²

191 (2) The Verb prōd-est, it is profitable, retains d before
all forms of sum beginning with a vowel, but drops it
before all beginning with a consonant.

Prōd-est; prōd-érat; prōd-érît; prōd-esse.
Prō-sum; prō-fuit; prō-fuérat; prō-fuérît.

192 Construction.—Verbs compounded with Prepositions
mostly either (1) take a Dative of the Indirect Object,
or, (2) they repeat the Preposition with the Case proper
to the Preposition.

(1) He took a ring from me. Ānūlum mīhi dētraxit.
(2) He took a ring from my
finger. Ānūlum dē digīto mēo dē-
traxit.

¹ But there are exceptions: e.g. intelligo (not intelliúdo) is the correct
form.
² Three compounds of -lēgo make the Perf. in -lexi, (1) dilígō, love;
(2) neglígō, neglect; (3) intelliúdo, understand.
The Compounds of sum, e.g. ādest, īnest, interest, &c., all take a Dative:

Help me, Jupiter!

Adēs mīhi, Juppīter.

Note the following use of ābest:

I am, or shall be, within a very little of falling, lit. very little is absent by-which-not (145a)
I fall.

I was within a very little of falling.

Minimum ābest, or ābērit, quīn cādērem.

Exercise LXII.


1. There was no doubt that the enemy had surrounded their camp with a ditch (i.e. set-round the camp a ditch). 2. The camp was within a very little of being taken by the enemy. 3. I asked the leader how-much (of) he was about-to-impose-on the conquered city. 4. That old soldier has taken-part-in twenty-two battles. 5. You are within a little of committing a very-great wickedness. 6. Why did you snatch-from me the last hope I had (trans, the hope which I had last, ‘last to agree with ‘which’)? 7. These words of the general displeased the king: who withdrew from him a large part of the army. 8. I will ask him why he imposed-on us these hard (trans, these so hard) conditions. 9. By-this-time all hope was gone (i.e. was absent) from us. 10. Conquered (pass. part. agrees with ‘Balbus’) by this great calamity, Balbus was within a very little of surrendering the city.
THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

196 There is no regular Perfect Participle Active in Latin, so as to express the English having killed. Latin has therefore to use the Passive Participle in the Ablative, thus:

The barbarians, the citizens having been killed (by them) set the city on fire i.e. the barbarians, having killed the citizens, set the city on fire.

Barbāri, cīvībus interfectīs, urbem incenderunt.

The Noun and Participle thus expressing some circumstance in connection with the principal Verb, are put in the Ablative (which is the ordinary Case to express manner and circumstance, as well as instrument, see Par. 181); and this Ablative is called the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

The Ablative Absolute cannot always be rendered by the English Active, e.g.

The citizens having been slain, the city was set on fire.

Cīvībus interfectīs, urbs incensa est.

EXERCISE LXIII.

1. Caesar, Rheno trajecto, constituit in Galliam se recipere.1
2. Hostes, castris relictis, in suos fines subito se receperunt.
3. Brutus, filiis suis a se ipso interfectis, culpam non effugit.

---

1 In this exercise the Ablative Absolute should be translated in two ways, 1st, literally, the Rhine having been crossed (by him), and 2nd, according to the English idiom, having crossed the Rhine or when he had crossed the Rhine. In subsequent Exercises the second or true English translation may suffice.
1. The enemy having made a charge (i.e. a charge having been made by the enemy), our men for a short time retreated.
2. Having disembarked (his) cavalry, Caesar gave orders to (his) foot-soldiers to leap down into the water, i.e. the cavalry having been disembarked, Caesar gave, &c.
3. There is no doubt that our leader, having ascertained the number of the enemy, will quickly retire.
4. Having carried on the war most prosperously, the general was praised by all (his) countrymen.
5. The city having been plundered, the citizens determined to declare war against the barbarians.
6. After slaying the three hundred hostages (i.e. the three hundred hostages having been slain) the barbarians had no hope of peace.
7. The general, having imposed this heavy tribute (trans. this so-great tribute having been imposed) on the conquered nation, restored to them the cities he had taken.
8. Codrus, king (123) of the Athenians, having been slain, those who were besieging Athens retired in haste.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE (continued).

The Ablative Absolute is also used (1) with Active Present Participles, and (2) with a few Nouns or Adjectives.

(1) When the sun sets, lit. the sun setting, lions leave their caves.
   Sōle occidente, leōnes antra linquunt (p. 207).

(2) While Tullius was king, lit. Tullius being king.
   While I am alive, i.e. I being alive.
   In my judgment, i.e. while I am judge.
   Tullio rége.
   Mé vivo (adj.).
   Mé júdice.

N.B.—When the Noun with which the Participle agrees can be made the Subject or Object of a Verb, the Ablative Absolute must not be used. Thus, While the general was leading on his men, he was transfixed by an arrow, must not be rendered "Impērātōre milites dūcentē (is) sāgittā transfixus est," but "Impērātor, milites dūcens, sāgittā transfixus est," or else "Impērātōrem, milites dūcentem, sāgittā transfixit."

1 Note that the Relative, when omitted in English, must be inserted in Latin: the cities (which) he had taken.
Dionysius having been banished, (he) taught boys.  

Diōnysius, ex urbe pulsus, puēros docebat (not, Diōnysio pulsō.)

Having at last found the boy, Tullius sent him back to his (the boy’s) friends.

Pūērum tandem rēpertum Tullius ad āmicos eius rēmisit (not, Pūēro rēperto ... T. eum rēmisit.)

**Exercise LXIV.**

1. Hostes, me duce, facillime vincetis. 2. Trecentos obsidum, quos in armis cepimus, vinctos statim interfecimus. 3. Filia, matre nequiquam misericordiam implorante, jugulata est. 4. Mūlier, nequiquam misericordiam implorans, coram rege jugulata est. 5. Tullius, reclamante optimo quoque civium, in exilium pulsus est. 6. Trajecto fluvio, Suevorum fines intrabimus; quibus, me judice, nobis acerrime resistetur (167). 7. Gaio haec dicente, omnes tacebant; itaque Tullius, nullo reclamante, ab exilio revocatus est. 8. Caesare et Bibulo consulibus, hoc templum prope viam Latinam aedificatum est. 9. Non igitur dubium est quin Alpibus trajectis Hannibal in Italiam descensurus sit. 10. Itaque, his compertis, consentientibus civibus, magistratus omnia ad resistendum (186) paraverunt.

1. By your own judgment (i.e. you yourself being judge) your brother has conducted this war unsuccessfully. 2. The barbarians, having immediately slain the hostages, determined to stir up a war against us. 3. The daughter was led before the king, while the mother in vain protested (i.e. the mother in vain protesting). 4. The general having been pierced with an arrow, the enemy determined to deliver him to us (198). 5. The bridge having been broken-down, we determined to withdraw from Germany into Gaul. 6. During the reign of Tarquin, great buildings were erected in the city. 7. There is no doubt that our general, having ascertained the arrival of the enemy, will immediately retire. 8. The excellent Tullius (126) was recalled to his country, on the fourth day, no one (92) protesting (against it.)

---

1 The he is very often (though incorrectly) inserted even in modern English; but it must be omitted in Latin.
**Exercise LXIV.*

(Recapitulatory.)


**DEPONENT VERBS.**

199 A few Verbs (called Deponent) have a Past Participle with Active meaning. These Verbs, though having an Active meaning, yet have a Passive form in all the Tenses and in the Past Participle, as hortor, I exhort, hortábor, I will exhort, hortáitus, having exhorted.

200 Besides the Passive forms, every Deponent Verb has also the Active forms of the Participles, Supines, and Gerunds: hortans, hortaturus, exhorting, about to exhort, &c.

201 The Deponent Gerundive, e.g. hortandus, meet to be exhorted, is used like the Gerundive of an ordinary Verb.\(^1\)

---

\(^1\) The Past Participles of a few Deponent Verbs are sometimes used Passively, as, adeptus, having been obtained, from adipiscor.
I. Hortör, hortätus sum, hortari, exhort, like amōr.
II. Vēreōr, vēritūs sum, vērēri, fear, like mōneōr.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I.</th>
<th>II.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Present.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hort-ēr,</td>
<td>Vēr-eōr,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hort-āris (āre), &amp;c.,</td>
<td>I may exhort.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Simple.</td>
<td>Imperfect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hort-ābor,</td>
<td>Vēr-eōris (ēre), &amp;c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect.</td>
<td>Vēr-ēbor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hort-ābar,</td>
<td>I shall exhort.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect.</td>
<td>Vēr-ēbar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hort-ātus sum,</td>
<td>I was exhorting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hort-ātūs ēro,</td>
<td>I have exorted, or I exorted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect.</td>
<td>Vēr-ētūs sum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hort-ātūs ēram,</td>
<td>I shall have exorted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pluperfect.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Perfect.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hort-ātūs ēram,</td>
<td>I have exorted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Supines.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Gerund.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hort-ātum,</td>
<td>Hort-ātum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to exhort.</td>
<td>to exhort.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hortātūr,</td>
<td>Hortātūr,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>about to exhort.</td>
<td>about to exhort.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hort-ātūs,</td>
<td>Hort-ātūs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>having exorted.</td>
<td>having exorted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hort-ātūs,</td>
<td>Hort-ātūs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet to be exorted.</td>
<td>meet to be exorted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hort-ātūs,</td>
<td>Hort-ātūs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of exhorting.</td>
<td>of exhorting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Indicative Mood.**
- **Present.** | **Present.** |
- Hort-ēr, | Vēr-eōr, |
- Hort-āris (āre), &c., | I may exhort. |
- Future Simple. | Imperfect. |
- Hort-ābor, | Vēr-eōris (ēre), &c.|
- Imperfect. | Vēr-ēbor. |
- Hort-ābar, | I shall exhort. |
- Perfect. | Vēr-ēbar. |
- Hort-ātus sum, | I was exhorting. |
- Hort-ātūs ēro, | I have exorted, or I exorted. |
- Pluperfect. | Vēr-ētūs sum, |
- Hort-ātūs ēram, | I shall have exorted. |

**Subjunctive Mood.**
- **Present.** | **Present.** |
- Hort-ārē, | Vēr-ērē, |
- Exhort thou. | Fear thou. |
- Future. | Imperative. |
- Hort-ātōr, | thou shalt, or must exhort. |

**Imperative.**
- Pres. & Imperf. Hort-ārē, to exhort. |
- Perf. & Plup. Hort-ātūs esse, to have exorted. |
- Future. Hort-ātūrūs esse, to be about to exhort. |

**Infinitive.**
- Vēr-eār, I may fear. |
- Vēr-eāris (ēre), I might fear. |
- Vēr-eātūs sum, I may have feared. |
- Vēr-eātūs ēro, I should have feared. |
- Vēr-eātūs ēram, I had feared. |

**Participles.**
- Present. Hort-ānūs, exhorting. |
- Future. Hort-ātūrūs, about to exhort. |
- Perfect. Hort-ātūs, having exorted. |
- Gerundive. Hort-āndūs, meet to be exorted. |

**Supines.**
- Hort-ātum, to exhort. |
- Hort-ātūr, to be exorted. |
- Hort-āndūs, of exhorting. &c. |

**Gerund.**
- Vēr-ētum, to fear. |
- Vēr-ētūr, to be feared. |
- Vēr-ēndūr, of fearing. &c. |
### DEPONENT VERBS.

#### III. Lōquō, lōcūtus sum, lōqui, *speak*, like régō.
#### IV. Partiōr, partītus sum, partīrī, *divide*, like audīō.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>III.</th>
<th>IV.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Part-iōr,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lōqu-ōr,</td>
<td><em>I divide,</em> or am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lōqu-ēris (ērē), &amp;c.</td>
<td><em>dividing.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut. Simple.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Part-iār,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lōqu-ār,</td>
<td><em>I shall divide.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imperfect.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Part-iār,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lōqu-ērēr,</td>
<td><em>I was dividing.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Part-iētūs,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lōcūtūs sum,</td>
<td><em>I have divided,</em> or I spoke.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut. Perfect.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Part-iētūs,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lōcūtūs ēro,</td>
<td><em>I shall have divided.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pluperfect.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Part-iētūs,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lōcūtūs ēram,</td>
<td><em>I had divided.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>III.</th>
<th>IV.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Part-iār,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lōqu-ōr,</td>
<td><em>I may divide.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lōqu-ērē,</td>
<td><em>I might divide.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imperfect.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Part-iētūs,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lōcūtūs sim,</td>
<td><em>I may have divided.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Part-iētūs,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lōcēn-tūs essēm,</td>
<td><em>I should have divided.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pluperfect.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Part-iētūs,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lōcēn-tūs essē,</td>
<td><em>I had divided.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>III.</th>
<th>IV.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres. &amp; Imp.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Part-iēr,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lōqu-i,</td>
<td><em>Divide thou,</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perf. &amp; Plup.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Part-itōr,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lōcēn-tūs essē,</td>
<td><em>thou shalt, or must divide.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Part-iērus,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lōcēn-tūrus essē,</td>
<td><em>to be about to divide.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gerundive.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Part-iēnus,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lōqu-endūs metīto bespoken</td>
<td><em>dividing.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>III.</th>
<th>IV.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Part-iēnus,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lōqu-ēn,</td>
<td><em>speaking.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Part-iērus,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lōqu-tūras,</td>
<td><em>about to speak.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Part-iēnus,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lōqu-tūs,</td>
<td><em>having spoken.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gerundive.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Part-iēnus,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lōqu-endūs metīto bespoken</td>
<td><em>about to divide.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>III.</th>
<th>IV.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Supines.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Part-itūm,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lōqu-tūm,</td>
<td><em>to divide.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lōqu-tū,</td>
<td><em>to be divided.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gerund.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Part-itūn,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lōqu-endīl,</td>
<td><em>of dividing.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&amp;c.</td>
<td>&amp;c.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercise LXV.

202 The Participle can be used (like the Adjective, Par. 34) to agree with men understood: victis parcē, spare the conquered; fugientes sequēre, follow those-who-are fleeing.


1. Virtue is to be followed for its own sake (i.e. on account of itself). 2. Having imitated the bad from (his) boyhood, the boy made himself very like (66) the bad. 3. The life of those-who-follow (trans. those-following) virtue is most happy. 4. Attempt great things, that you may at-least accomplish small things. 5. Having long contemplated the stars, the philosopher did not see the well at (ad) his feet. 6. Why, O ye traitors, do ye meditate plots? How-often shall I entreat you not to (143) lie-in-wait-for the consul? 7. Invain do you venerate the gods, most deceitful of men, (while) meditating snares for the innocent (7). 8. Ah! the happy life of those-who-scorn wealth and do not (18) suffer poverty.

203 Rule.—Obliviscor, rēminiscor, rēcordor, misēreas, commonly govern the Genitive.

204 Note that "iis victis" would mean "them, since they are conquered," and "eos fugientes," "them, while, or since, they are fleeing;" and generally a Latin Participle, in agreement with a Noun or Pronoun, may be rendered by an English Conjunction (154a).

205 When an ordinary and a Pronominal Adjective both agree with the same Noun the Pronominal Adjective generally comes between the ordinary Adjective and the Noun: That distinguished man, clarissimus illē vir.

206 The Accusative is commonly used with O in exclamation (not in address), and may be called the Exclamatory Accusative.

4 These Verbs were once reflexive, I forget-myself, remember-myself, pity-myself of, &c. Compare the French "se plaindre," to pity, and in Old English, I remember myself of.

Distinguish between (1) misēor, -āri, I shew-pity-to, which governs an Acc., and (2) misēreas, -ēri, I feel-pity-for, which governs a Genitive.
207 Rule.—Fungor, fruor, útor, vescor, pótior, govern the Ablative. 1

Exercise LXVI.

1. Non dubium est quin mulier oratione liberrima usa sit (9a). 2. Interrogabam barbaros num pane vescerentur, nonne ferarum pellibus pro vestitu uterentur. 3. Miserere Balbi, viri justissimi, quem nemo adhuc miseratus est. 4. Recordare uxor tuae; ne liberorum oblitus sis, in tuo spem ponentium. 5. Vastandi sunt agrigentis illius crudelissimae quae nihil veneratur, nullius miseretur. 6. Regno potitus, promissorum statim oblitus est. 7. Qui magistratibus functerant, eos, capta urbe sumno honore affecimus. 8. Dum vita fruimini, nolite (169) virtutis oblivisci. 9. Sagacitate canum ad nostram utilitatem utimur. 10. Cur nullius ipse miseritus, nostra misericordia frui cupis?

1. To remember past evils is sometimes pleasant. 2. There is no doubt that very-many enjoy the memory of past evils. 3. You should eat (i.e. it-is-to-be-eaten) that you may live; you should not live that you may eat. 4. Let us use the opportunity which the enemy have afforded us. 5. If you do not (i.e. unless you shall) show pity to the conquered, beware lest you yourselves suffer the same fate [trans. same (things).] 6. Having suffered adversity, the woman will peculiarly [i.e. before (ante) others] enjoy prosperity. 7. I will ask whether he discharges his duty well or (171) ill. 8. Do not forget, (as) an old-man, those precepts which you learned (as) a boy. 2

Exercise LXVII.


1 These Verbs were also once reflexive, e.g. fruor, I enjoy myself with; vescor, I feed myself with; útor, I employ myself with.
2 Old-man is in Apposition with you the Subject of forget.
3 Pollicentibus is not Abl.; see Par. 202.
4 Vulpês is feminine; why therefore is partitūri masc.; See Par. 161.
N.B. Latin inserts et between each pair of a list of Nouns or omits et between each; English inserts it only before the last
The lion, the ass, and the fox. Léo, (et) âsinus, (et) vulpês.
THE INFINITIVE  [Par. 208, 209]


1. Did not pain seem the greatest of evils (73) to the disciples of Epicurus? 2. Take care to obtain liberty. 3. Having confessed this, do you dare to remain in the city? 4. The general made every preparation (i.e. prepared all things) that he might set-out on the next day. 5. The woman was within a very little (194) of dying of (Lat. Abl.) hunger and thirst. 6. When-they-had-conversed (154a) together (189) they determined to set-out at night. 7. Do not draw-lots about the booty, O soldiers, since-you-are (i.e. being) about-to-obtain a greater booty by fighting. 8. Trust one-who-has-experienced (202) (it): he-who promises much (i.e. many things) performs little (i.e. few things). 9. I asked the rich Balbus when (156) he was going to enjoy (i.e. was about-to-enjoy) the riches which he had (subjunctive) obtained. 10. What prevented you from confessing the truth (i.e. true things)?

THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE (ACTIVE).

208 1. OBJECT-CLAUSES.—When a Principal Sentence, e.g. he is mistaken, becomes the Object of a Verb, e.g. believe, declare, &c., there are two ways of expressing the change in English but only one in Latin, viz., the Accusative and Infinitive:

I declare (1) that he is mistaken. Dico ēum errāre.

I declare (2) him to be mistaken.

Here errāre is “the Infinitive depending on dico”; and ēum is “the Subject of the Infinitive errāre,” (i.e. ēum is so related to errāre that, if errāre were in the Indicative, ēum, or rather īs, would be its Subject or Nominative).

209 2. SUBJECT-CLAUSES.—The same construction, viz., Accusative and Infinitive, is used in Subject-Clauses: That-he-is-in-error, is certain, (or, It is certain that he is in error),

1 What is the antecedent (Par. 107) of qui?
2 The punctuation shews that omen is not Nom. after sunt: what Case is it then (123)?
Certum est ēum errāre; That I should go into exile pleased them, (or, It pleased them that I should go into exile), Plācīt eis mē in exxilium īre.

210 The Tense in Subject and Object-Clauses.—After a Past Tense of the Principal Verb, the Tense of the English Indicative e.g. is (208, 1) is changed, but the Tense of the English Infinitive e.g. to be (208, 2) remains unchanged: and the Latin Infinitive also remains unchanged: I declared (1) that he was mistaken; I declared (2) him to be mistaken: dixi ēum errāre.1

211 Object-Clause.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principal Sentence.</th>
<th>Tullius said,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) &quot;I conquer&quot;</td>
<td>Tullius dixit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) &quot;I am conquering&quot;</td>
<td>(1) sē vincère</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) &quot;I have conquered&quot;</td>
<td>(2) sē vīcisse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;I shall conquer&quot;</td>
<td>(3) sē victūrum esse²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;I am about to conquer&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISE LXVII, A.


---

1 Dixi ēum errāvisse would have meant, I declared him to have been, or that he had been, mistaken.
2 In accordance with Par. 24, esse takes the same case after it as before it; and therefore, since sē is the Accusative, victūrum is also Accusative.
3 Hitherto sē has been used only for himself, themselves, &c.: but in Object-Clauses it must often be rendered by he, they, &c.
THE INFINITIVE

(Write out the Subject and Object-Clauses in the above Exercise as Principal Sentences: 1. Ego tibi. . . credam. 2. Meliore fato digni sumus, &c.; see 218a).

1. It is certain that no dangers will terrify him. 2. He said that he feared (210) these dangers. 3. The boy writes that he had always exercised (his) body. 4. My sister says that she will not depart from the city. 5. Have you heard that the barbarians set the city on fire? 6. Do not (169) say that you did this. 7. He said that he should bind the captives. 8. He did not know that they had escaped in the night.

THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE (PASSIVE).

212 As the Latin Passive has no Future Infinitive (except the Supine iri, (248)), the Latin employs a periphrasis: Tullius said that he should be conquered. Tullius dixit fôre, or futûrum esse, ut vincerêtur, i.e. that it would come to pass that he would be conquered.

213 Object-Clause.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principal Sentence.</th>
<th>Tullius dixit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;I am being conquered&quot;</td>
<td>sê vinci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;I am conquered&quot;</td>
<td>(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;I was conquered&quot;</td>
<td>(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;I had been conquered&quot;</td>
<td>(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;I have been conquered&quot;</td>
<td>(c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;I shall be conquered&quot;</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;I am about to be conquered&quot;</td>
<td>(a)(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;fôre, or futûrum esse ut vincerêtur&quot;</td>
<td>(c)(d)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he was being conquered</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) (b) he was conquered</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) (d) he had been conquered</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he should be conquered</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he was about to be conquered</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Wherever he, she, &c., in a Subordinate Clause, stand for some Noun or Pronoun which is the Nominative to the Principal Verb, they must be rendered by sê.

2 The esse or fuisset is sometimes omitted (as also in the Active Inf.): and care is then required to distinguish the Inf. from the Participle.

Some Compound Tenses are occasionally supplied in Latin by the phrase "in eo sum ut" (Par. 166). Tullius said that he was or had been (on the point of) being conquered, Tullius dixit se in eo esse, or fuisset, ut vincerêtur.

3 "I am loved" would imply that the action continued, and would be rendered "sê āmāri;" but "I am conquered" implies that the action is
IN SUBJECT AND OBJECT CLAUSES. 123

N.B.—The Tense of the Latin Infinitive in the third column above, is the same as that of the English Verb in the second column, where it is used as a Principal Verb.

Rule.—The Latin Inf. in a Subject or Object-Clause is of the same Tense as the English Verb would be, if it were made a Principal Verb in the words of the speaker.

Exercise LXVIII.

Rule.—Use se, suus, &c. (not eum, eius, &c.) when the Pronoun (in a Subordinate Clause, see page 328) stands for the Subject of the Principal Verb:

Tullius said that he (i.e. Tullius) Tullius dixit se errare.
was mistaken.
I said that he was mistaken. Dixi eum errare.


past, and only the result is present. The pupil must carefully distinguish between the two meanings of the ambiguous English Passive, e.g. (1) "the house is burned, incensa est"); (2) "the house is guarded," custoditur.

1 The pupil (before proceeding to the English-Latin Exercise) should write out the Subject and Object Clauses in the Latin Exercise, as Principal Sentences, and in the words of the speakers. Thus, (1) sol lunā major est. (2) Ego in animo habeo, &c. (3) Ego in animo habui (or habueram) ex Italia, &c. (4) Nunquam nos revertemur, &c.

In the English-Latin Exercise, (before being turned into Latin) the Subject and Object Clauses may be similarly turned into Principal Sentences. (1) Four hundred of the enemy are hastening, &c. (2) Some of the citizens say one thing, others another. (3) I had purposed to set out for Greece, but now I purpose, &c. Then use the Rule in Par. 217.
1. It had been ascertained that four hundred of the enemy were hastening to the city. 2. He answered that some (86) of the citizens said one thing, others another. 3. He said that he had formerly purposed to set-out for (i.e. to) Greece, but (139a) that now he purposed to remain in Italy. 4. It is certain that the women will never remain in Greece. 5. Who does-not-know that Italy is larger than Sicily? 6. We did-not-know that the hostages had been immediately bound. 7. I informed his brother that we had the horse, and that we should sell it to-morrow. 8. It was ascertained by our spies that three thousand of the enemy had set-out from the camp by night. 9. They said that we (212) should be conquered by the Scythians. 10. Who does-not-know that Tarquin was sent into exile by Brutus? 11. I for-my-part (139) still hope; but Tullius says that the river will be crossed before the third day. 12. When will you confess that you (168) (164) alone (96) must pay the penalty of this folly?

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

219 1. Impersonal Verbs denoting feeling require the Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Cause:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Misèret</td>
<td>pity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piaget</td>
<td>am vexed at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poenit</td>
<td>me tuae stultitiae.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Püdet</td>
<td>am ashamed of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taedet</td>
<td>am weary of</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

220 2. Others require an Accusative of the Person, and an Infinitive, or Nominative, for the Subject:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dècet</td>
<td>diligentia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dèdecet</td>
<td>hóc fácere.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Industry</td>
<td>becomes or misbecomes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To do this</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

221 3. Others require a Dative of the Person and an Infinitive for the Subject.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Libet</td>
<td>It pleases me (suits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lícet</td>
<td>It is lawful for me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>my fancy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to do this</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

221a 1 So in Old English, it repents me of, it pitied him of, &c.

2 Placèt is used somewhat similarly with a subject-clause, "plàcit légatos mitti," it pleased them, i.e. they resolved, that ambassadors should be sent; but being personally used, it is not classed among Impersonal Verbs.
4. The verbs *ôportet*, *it behoves*, and *liquet*, *it is clear*, take an Accusative and Infinitive as their Subject-Clause.

It is clear that the man has been *liquet* hōmīnem interfectum esse.

Note that *ôportet* (or *dēbeo*, *I owe*) is never followed by the Perfect Infinitive.

You ought to come, lit., *ôportet té* (or *dēbēs*) venīre.

You ought to have come, lit., *ôportuit té* (or *dēbuisti*) venīre.

5. Several Verbs relating to the weather are used impersonally, as in English: *plāit*, *it rains*, &c.

All the above Verbs (except those in Class 5) are of the 2nd conjugation: *dēcēre*, *dēcēbit*, *dēcēbat*, *dēcuit*, *dēcuērat*, *dēcuisset*, &c.

Besides the Perfects in -uit, there are also in use *pertae-sum* est (for *taedūit*); *mīsēritum* est; *pīgitum* est; *pūdī-tum* est; *licītum* est; *libītum* est (which is found in Cicero perhaps to the exclusion of *libūit*).

**Exercise LXIX.**

1. Senem stultitiae suae poenitebit.  
2. Quando mulieres suspicionis suae pudebit?  
3. Non dubium est quin pedites huius tam longi itineris taedeat.  
4. Licebit hosti nocte ex urbe proficisci.  
5. Oportuit te ei mulieri veniam dare.  
6. Nonne licebat nobis isti praedam eripere?  
7. Interrogavi latronem nonne se tot scelerum pudaret, nonne latrociniorum jam pertae-sum esset.  
8. Nonne judicem dedecebant inepto loqui?  
10. De hac re libitum est mihi plura scribere.

---

1 *Ôpōrtet* and *îce* are also followed by the Subjunctive with *út* omitted; *ôpōrtet* (*út*) virtūtem ãmes, *it is right that you should love virtue*. The insertion of the *út* is post-classical, or rare.

2 As the implied Subject of the sentence is *sēnex*, “the old man will repent,” *sūs* is here used and not *eius*, see Par. 218.

3 *Tam* is often used between a pronominal and ordinary Adjective in the sense of *very*. 
11. Interrogabo mulierem nonne se jam jactationis suae taedeat. 12. Liquebat hostes per dolum atque insidias pacem petere. 13. Licet omnes (227) fremant; consilium meum non muto.

1. When will it-be-lawful for us to set-out from the city? 2. There is no doubt that the citizens are-ashamed of their (227a) boasting. 3. Ask, dear son, whether the women repented of their suspicion. 4. Does it befit an orator to be-angry without cause? 5. You ought to know at-least these-things which it misbecomes even (141a) a boy to-be-ignorant-of. 6. I asked the magistrate whether it-was-lawful to bury the dead within the city. 7. It is-clear that his brothers were treacherously slain. 8. Let (227) them murmur to one another (189) that I am guilty; I-for-my-part (139) know that I am innocent. 9. When will you confess that you ought to (223) have led those two hundred soldiers with you? 10. It was uncertain whether the woman was weary of the journey or desired to return to her father. 11. Balbus declared that his slaves ought to have snatched the booty from the robbers.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

229

1. Possum, pötui, possě,—to be able; can.¹

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Present.</td>
<td></td>
<td>3. Imperfect.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pos-sum</td>
<td>Pos-sim</td>
<td>Pöt-ēram</td>
<td>Pos-sem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pöt-ēs</td>
<td>Pos-sís</td>
<td>Pöt-ērás</td>
<td>Pos-sês</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pöt-est</td>
<td>Pos-sit</td>
<td>Pöt-ērāt</td>
<td>Pos-sĕt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pöt-sëmūs</td>
<td>Pos-simūs</td>
<td>Pöt-ērāmūs</td>
<td>Pos-sémūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pöt-estūs</td>
<td>Pos-sítís</td>
<td>Pöt-ērātūs</td>
<td>Pos-sētīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pos-sunt</td>
<td>Pos-sint</td>
<td>Pöt-ērant</td>
<td>Pos-sent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Future-Simple.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>(wanting:)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pöt-ēro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pöt-ērīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pöt-ērīt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pöt-ērīmūs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pöt-ērītūs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pöt-ērunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Perfect.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pöt-ui</td>
<td>Pöt-uērīm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pöt-uistī</td>
<td>Pöt-uērīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pöt-uīt</td>
<td>Pöt-uērīt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pöt-uīmūs</td>
<td>Pöt-uērīmūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pöt-uistīs</td>
<td>Pöt-uērītūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pöt-uērunt(ērē)</td>
<td>Pöt-uērīnt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

¹ Pos-sum is compounded of potis-sum, I-am-able, which passes into pôte-sum and thence to pos-sum. The Tenses may be obtained by putting pot- before the different parts of the Verb sum and (1) striking out f after t, e.g. pot-(f)ui; (2) changing t into s before s, e.g. pos-sum (not pot-sum); (3) contracting pot-esse and pot-essem into posse and possem.
As *possum* has no Participle in *-rus*, it cannot form the Periphrastic Tense of the Subjunctive (Par. 155) used to represent the Future in an Indirect Sentence. Hence, in this and other Verbs which have not the Participle in *-rus*, a Periphrasis (see Par. 212) is used:

*I will ask whether he will be able to help me.*

Interrōgābo num *futūrum sit ut possīt mīhi subvēniere*, *i.e.* whether *it-will-come-to-pass that he may be able.*

**Exercise LXX.**

*Pōtu* (and sometimes *pōtēram*) is sometimes followed, like *ōportuit* above, by a Present Inf. where the English *could* requires the Perfect Infinitive:

*You could have come.*  
*Pōtuisti* (*or pōtēras*) *vēniere.*

1. *Veniam si potero; cura tu ut venire possis.*  
2. *Poteras patri tuo parere, sed beneficiōrum eius plerumque immemor eras.*  
3. *Interrogāvi nonne possent trecentī nostrorum, cum mille equitibus sociorum, duobus milibus hostium resistere.*  
4. *Non possimus justius quam a te gubernari.*  
5. *Nonne potuistis melius scribere?*  
6. *Frater vester optime scribere poterat* (*used to be able*).  
7. *Nihil honestius Epaminondae dari potuit quam mors clarissima.*  
8. *Quis dubitat quin urbs*
1. There is no doubt that you can help me, O friends. 2. I asked our men whether they could resist three thousand of the enemy. 3. Will you not be able to come, boys, if we ask you? 4. You could have written better, but you neglected the matter. 5. That you may be able to help others, acquire riches. 6. The enemy bridged the river that they might be able at any time (quilibet) to invade our territories. 7. Do you believe that you will be able to resist these great enticements? 8. Those who cannot be first, can generally be before (prior) the last.

2. **Volo, volui, vellē.**—I am willing, wish.
3. **Nolo, nolui, nolle.**—I am unwilling, do not wish.
4. **Malo, malui, mallē.**—I prefer, would rather, had rather.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### 1. Present.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Volo</th>
<th>Nolo</th>
<th>Malo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vis</td>
<td>Non vis</td>
<td>Mavis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vult</td>
<td>Non vult</td>
<td>Mavult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volumus</td>
<td>Nolumus</td>
<td>Malumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vultis</td>
<td>Non vultis</td>
<td>MAVULTIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volunt</td>
<td>Nolunt</td>
<td>Malunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 2. Future-Simple.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Völ-am</th>
<th>Nöl-am</th>
<th>Mäl-am</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

#### 3. Imperfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Völ-ebam</th>
<th>Nöl-ebam</th>
<th>Mäl-ebam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

---

1. Where *suus* cannot possibly refer to the Subject of the Principal Verb, it may be used to refer to the Subject of the Subordinate Verb.

2. For *can* may be substituted *am, is, are able; and for could, was, or were able; and this will often help the pupil to determine the Tense and Mood of *possum* into which *can* should be translated.

3. *Nolo* is for ne-vōlo, and *malo* for ma- (i.e. māgis or māge) -vōlo. The dropping of the *v* is illustrated by the forms *sis* (for *si vis, if you please*) and (sultis for *si vultis*).

4. These Tenses are declined like the corresponding Tenses of *rego*. 

---

128  

---

*232a*  

1 Where *suus* cannot possibly refer to the Subject of the Principal Verb, it may be used to refer to the Subject of the Subordinate Verb.

*233*  

2 For *can* may be substituted *am, is, are able; and for *could, was, or were able; and this will often help the pupil to determine the Tense and Mood of *possum* into which *can* should be translated.

*234*  

3 *Nolo* is for ne-vōlo, and *malo* for ma- (i.e. māgis or māge) -vōlo. The dropping of the *v* is illustrated by the forms *sis* (for *si vis, if you please*) and (sultis for *si vultis*).

4 These Tenses are declined like the corresponding Tenses of *rego*.  

---

*Par. 232a—234*
4. **Perfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vōl-ui</th>
<th>Nōl-ui</th>
<th>Māl-ui</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

5. **Future-Perfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vōl-uēro</th>
<th>Nōl-uēro</th>
<th>Māl-uēro</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

6. **Pluperfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vōl-uēram</th>
<th>Nōl-uēram</th>
<th>Māl-uēram</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.**

1. **Present.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vēl-im</th>
<th>Nōl-im</th>
<th>Māl-im</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vēl-is</td>
<td>Nōl-is</td>
<td>Māl-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vēl-it</td>
<td>Nōl-it</td>
<td>Māl-it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vēl-imūs</td>
<td>Nōl-imūs</td>
<td>Māl-imūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vēl-itūs</td>
<td>Nōl-itūs</td>
<td>Māl-itūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vēl-int</td>
<td>Nōl-int</td>
<td>Māl-int</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. **Imperfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vēl-lem</th>
<th>Nōl-lem</th>
<th>Māl-lem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vēl-lēs</td>
<td>Nōl-lēs</td>
<td>Māl-lēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vēl-lēt</td>
<td>Nōl-lēt</td>
<td>Māl-lēt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vēl-lēmūs</td>
<td>Nōl-lēmūs</td>
<td>Māl-lēmūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vēl-lētūs</td>
<td>Nōl-lētūs</td>
<td>Māl-lētūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vēl-lent</td>
<td>Nōl-lent</td>
<td>Māl-lent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. **Perfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vōl-uērim</th>
<th>Nōl-uērim</th>
<th>Māl-uērim</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

4. **Pluperfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vōl-uēssēm</th>
<th>Nōl-uēssēm</th>
<th>Māl-uēssēm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1 These Tenses are declined like the corresponding Tenses of mōnēo.
IMPERATIVE MOOD.

**Present.**

(Wanting.)

Nōl-ī.
Nōl-īte.

**Future.**

Nōl-īto.
Nōl-īto.
Nōl-ītōte.
Nōl-untō.

INFINITIVE MOOD

**Present.**

Vel-le.
Nōl-lē.
Mal-lē.

**Perfect.**

Vōl-uisse.
Nōl-uisse.
Māl-uisse.

**Present Participle.**

Vōl-ens.
Nōl-ens.

**Gerunds and Supines.**

(Wanting.)

(Wanting.)

(Wanting.)

EXERCISE LXXI.

Mālo, (being a contraction of māgis—vōlo, I wish rather), is naturally followed by quam than, coupling Infinitives or Nouns (62) in the same Case.

We had rather fight than yield. Pugnāre quam cēdere mālūnus.

1. Idem velle atque idem nolle—ea demum est vera amicitia.¹
2. Imperator cum nollet mīhi obesse, interroga vit fratrem meum num vellem clam ex urbe excedere. 3. Non dubium est quin malis hic (adv.) manere; sed excedendum tibi erit. 4. Māne nunc, si vis; sed si eras voles excedere, non tibi

¹ The Nom. to est is the sentence Idem ... nolle. Idem (not Idem, Par. 103) is Acc. Neut. governed by velle. Instead of ea we ought strictly to have id, i.e. that (thing), Nom. in Apposition to the sentence Idem ... nolle. But id is “attracted” into the gender of āmicītia.

1. What do you wish, citizens? Do you prefer six hundred kings to (quam) one? 2. Why, O friend, would you not (i.e. were you unwilling to) obey the excellent Tullius? 3. There is no doubt that he was unwilling to resist the citizens. 4. When, if not ( nisi) now, will they be willing to take up (i.e., to prepare) arms that they may preserve the city? 5. I have no doubt, (my) friend, that you prefer death to (quam) slavery. 6. I asked them whether they wished to be slaves (i.e., to serve); but they (illi autem) replied that they preferred (217) to pay tribute rather than die. 7. To wish for things useful, is a great part of a happy life. 8. I asked his friends to help him; but they were unwilling to sustain an idle man. 9. Which (85) of you (93) two prefers to dine out of doors? 10. I am ashamed of having even (141a) wished for this.

Féro, tuli, ferré, látum, I bear, endure, bring.

Féro, in the Present-derived Tenses, is conjugated like régō, except that, after fer-:

(1) e final is dropped, and also e before r.  — fer-(e), Imperat.; fer-(e)res, Imperf. Subj.

(2) i is dropped before s or t.

fer-(i)s, fer-(i)t, Indic. Pres.

1 The Subject of videbitur is a Clause. Hoc is Acc. governed by vóluisse.

3 Not lădrē màiš. The Latins do not like to have a prose sentence ending in " " "", because it is the regular end of a hexameter verse. They would prefer " rēdirē stātim volēbant " to " stātim rēdirē volēbant."

3 Where is the Dat. naturally governed by respondit? Foris is an Adverb.

4 The -e final is similarly dropped in the Imperative Sing. of dico, dúco, and tácio: dic, dúc, tác.
The Perfect-derived tenses are formed, in the Active, regularly from ālū (root toll-o, I bear), and, in the Passive, from lātus (another form of the same root).

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

IRREGULAR TENSES.

Indic. Present. Fēr-o, fer-s, fer-t, fēr-imus, fēr-tis, fēr-unt.
Infinitive Pres. Fer-re.

REGULAR TENSES.

Supines. Lātum, lātu.
Gerund. Fērendi, &c.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

IRREGULAR TENSES.

Indicative Pres. Fēr-or, fer-ris, fer-tur, fēr-īmur, fēr-īmini, fēr-untur.
Imperative Pres. [Fer-re],
Subjunctive Imperf. Fer-er, fer-rēris, fer-rētur, fer-rēmur, fer-rēmini, fer-rentur.
Infinitive Pres. Fer-ri.

1 There is no instance of this form occurring in Latin literature.
The following compounds of *fero* are noteworthy for the changes of the prefix:

Af-*fero* (ad-*fero*) af-*ferrē*, at-*tūli*, ad-*lātum*.
Au-*fero* (ab-*fero*) au-*ferrē*, abs-*tūli*, ab-*lātum*.
Ef-*fero* (ex-*fero*) ef-*ferrē*, ex-*tūli*, ē-*lātum*.
In-*fero* (in-*fero*) in-*ferrē*, in-*tūli*, il-*lātum*.
Of-*fero* (ob-*fero*) ob-*ferrē*, ob-*tūli*, ob-*lātum*.
Rē-*fero* (rē-*fero*) rē-*ferrē*, rē-*tūli*, rēl-*lātum*.

**INDIRECT QUESTIONS.**

The construction of the Indirect Question (Par. 136) is used with Interrogative Pronouns and Conjunctions, not only after Verbs of *asking*, but also after any Verbs that take a question as their Subject or Object. Thus the Direct Question "Quid fēcisti?" What did you do? becomes:

\[
\text{It is uncertain} \quad \{ \text{Incertum est} \}
\]
\[
\text{Tell me} \quad \{ \text{Dīc mihi} \}
\]
\[
\text{I shall ascertain} \quad \{ \text{Cognoscam} \}
\]
\[
\text{I know} \quad \{ \text{Cognōvi}\}
\]
\[
\text{what you did.} \quad \{ \text{quīd fēcēris.}\}
\]
After all these Verbs, there holds the law of the Sequence of Tenses (Par. 136).

Exercise LXXII.

1. Respondete, milites fortissimi, quomodo laturi sitis hanc tantam contumeliam hostium vel ad vallum vestrum equitantium (154a).

2. Ferebamus convicia eius, fereinus maledicta; laudem eius perferre omnino non poteramus.¹

3. Nonne reperire potes quis hanc rogationem ad populum tulerit?²

4. Non dubium est quin Ariovisto, regi potentissimo, bellum illaturi simus. ⁵

5. Nonne miles es? Nonne vallum fers et arma? ⁶

6. Interrogavi nonne milites essent? cur tandem arma ferrent nisi ut hostibus resisterent. ⁷

7. Comperistine quot nostrorum in hoc tarn (228) funesto proelio ceciderint? ⁸

8. De provinciis ad Patres consules rettulerunt; de legatis nihil relatum est. ⁹

9. Cognoscam per nuntium num legem a Graccho rogatam Patres aegre tulerint. ¹⁰

10. Cognoscere voluimus num haec totaeque calamitates a fratre eius patientius perferrentur. ¹¹

11. Quid obstat quominus, occasione oblata, res ad senatum referatur? ¹²

12. Spem mihi (192), quam unam habui, tu tua temeritate abstulisti. ¹³

13. Tu qui totiens promisisti, (152a) nonne jam perficies?

1. *I have never been able to ascertain* why the matter was referred to the senate.

2. *Tell* (237) me, friend, *why* you took away from (192) me the last hope (i.e. the hope which last) I had.

3. *Do not tell them* how-many insults you endured, nor how many you are about to endure; *for* they will not believe you.

4. *The consuls had referred* the subject of the prisoners (trans. had referred concerning the prisoners) to the senate.

5. *The matter was referred to the senate*: nevertheless you who (108) referred (it), now deny that you referred (it).

6. *Tell me,* Tullius (13), when (156) you will bring help to me.

7. *I asked the soldier why* he bore arms except to (143a) fight against the enemies of (his) country.

8. *We could not* (i.e. were-not-able to) ascertain how-many captives our-men had taken.

9. *You who patiently endured* so many great (i.e. so-many and so-great) calamities, *will you not* (see sent. 13, above, and Par.

---

¹ (a) *Omnino non* means altogether not, i.e. not at all, certainly not; (b) *nōn omnino* means not altogether, not quite.

² *Why quis, not qui?

³ Repeat *interrogāvi* before *cūr*; look out *tandem*.
152a) endure this very (228) slight loss? 10. There is no doubt that the enemy will soon offer us an opportunity (5a).

6. Ėo, īvī, īrē, ītum—*I go.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative, Subjunctive</th>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1. Present.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ė-o E-am</td>
<td>I-vi or I-i I-vērim or I-ērim</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ė-s E-ās</td>
<td>I-vistī &amp;c. I-vēris &amp;c.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ė-t E-āt</td>
<td>I-vīt &amp;c. I-vērit &amp;c.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| or I- vērē |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>2. Future-Simple.</strong></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ė-bo Ė-tūrūs sim</td>
<td>I-vēro or I-ēro (wanting)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ė-bīs Ė-tūrūs sis</td>
<td>I-vēris &amp;c.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ė-bīt Ė-tūrūs-sit</td>
<td>I-vērit &amp;c.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ė-bīmūs Ė-tūrī sīmūs</td>
<td>I-vērimūs &amp;c.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ė-bītīs Ė-tūrī sītīs</td>
<td>I-vēritīs &amp;c.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ė-bunt Ė-tūrī sint</td>
<td>I-vērint &amp;c.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>3. Imperfect.</strong></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ė-bam Ė-rem</td>
<td>I-vēram or I-vissem, I-issem,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ė-bās Ė-rēs</td>
<td>I-ēram or I-ssem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ė-bāmūs Ė-rēmūs</td>
<td>I-vērāt &amp;c. I-vissēt &amp;c.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ė-bant Ė-rent</td>
<td>I-vērātīs &amp;c. I-vissētīs &amp;c.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| I-vērant &c. I-vissent &c. |
### Imperative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I-to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ī-tē</td>
<td>Ī-tōtē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Participles.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present.</th>
<th>Future.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ī-ens (Gen. ē-untīs)</td>
<td>Ī-tūrūs (ā, um)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supine.</td>
<td>I-tum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Infinitive.

- Pres. and Imp. Ī-rē
- Perf. and Plup. Ī-vissē, Ī-issē, or īssē
- Future. Ī-tūrūs essē

**242** The Passive of ēo is only used impersonally, *e.g.* ītur, *it is gone*, i.e. they go: see Par. 247.

**243** 1. The compounds of ēo are conjugated in the same way, except that those which take an Accusative in the Active, have the full Passive Voice. Thus from in-ēo and praeter-ēo come the Pass. Participles Īn-ītus and Praetēr-ītus, and the Gerundives, Īn-ēundus and Praetēr-ēundus.

**244** 2. The compounds of ēo generally omit v in the Perf. and Perfect-derived Tenses: rēd-ii, trans-iērim, praetēr-iēram, &c.

**245** 3. The Dative is not governed by these compounds, except by sūb-ēo (rarely), and praē-ēo.

**Exercise LXXIII.**

1. Cum jam mulieres liberique flamen auctum imbribus transiisset, curavit imperator ut senes transirent. 2. Peribit iste, nisi celeriter (125) redieris. 3. Cum ad ripam redisses, alios transituros, alios jam transeuntes inveni. 4. Iam forte ad forum cum subito Tullius me adiit. 5. I, decus nostrum, i pater patriae, ut mox triumphaturus redeas. 6. Praei jurandum mihi, pontifex. 7. Pudet me abissē; redire statim volo. 8. Unus tantum (adv.) exiens ab hostibus captus est: ceteri, cum jam exuentes fraudem intellexissent, subito redierunt. 9. Flumen quod heri transiiistis, jam glacie plenum omnino (241) non transibitis. 10. Quid obstat quominus

1. There is no doubt that he met death with (181) fortitude.
2. Having passed over the river (196) they began-to-wish (im-perf.) immediately to return (redeo) (236).
3. If you begin the battle without cavalry, you will not be able to resist the greater forces of the enemy. 4. Alas! when, O citizens, will you return to the city whence you now go-forth exulting? 5. There is no doubt that we must return to the city with speed.
6. Returning to the city I met Balbus himself returning.
7. Tullius besought me to go to the city with him.
8. The river which you crossed in-the-morning cannot be crossed now, since-it-is-swollen (i.e., being-increased) by showers (236) (5a).
9. Are you ignorant that death must be met by all?
10. The battle having now begun (i.e., having-been begun) the general gave-orders-to the sixth legion to (143) charge the enemy.

THE SUPINES.

246 1. The Supine in -u is a Verbal Noun of the Fourth Declension, used only in the Ablative, and mostly after Adjectives signifying good or evil, pleasant or unpleasant, fitness or unfitness, &c., as "āmārum gustātu," bitter in the tasting, i.e., bitter to the taste.

247 2. The Supine in -um is a Verbal Noun used only in the Accusative after Verbs of Motion without the Preposition ād. It can take an object after it, which the Supine in -u cannot do:

He came to play.
Vēnit lūsum.
He went to see the city.
Īvit visum urbem.

248 3. Besides the form with fōre mentioned in Par. 212, the Supine in -um is used after the Pres. Inf. Passive of eo, I go, to supply the missing Future Passive Infinitive:

He said that the city would be taken.
Dixit īri captum urbem.¹

¹ The words are arranged in this order to show the construction; but in practice, īri follows the Supine.
The literal rendering of this is, *He said that there was a-going* (i.e. being used impersonally) to take (captum being the Supine after the Verb of Motion) *the city* (urbem being Accusative after captum). So:

*He said that we should be sent* Dixit nōs ād carcērem ductum

*i.e.*. (Parse nōs).

**Exercise LXXIV.**

249 Names of Towns and small Islands are put in the Accusative (without a Preposition) after Verbs of Motion; and so are the Nouns dōmum and rūs.


1. **The ambassadors who have been sent to seek-for peace have returned without accomplishing anything.** 2. **The citizens sent the prophet in vain to Delos; for Apollo predicted that the captives would be slain by the enemy.** 3. **We have come here (i.e. hither) to fight, not to talk.** 4. **I asked the physician whether the herb was bitter or (171) sweet to taste.** 5. **When will you return home, my son?** 6. **The youth (monstrous to relate!) set-out for the country from the city intending-to-slay (trans. about-to-slay) his own father.** 7. **Having set the city on fire, the general gave orders to his men to set-out for Carthage (196).** 8. **I asked the young man to come to dine with (see ‘with’) me, but he answered that he must-go to Athens on that day.**

---

1 What are the two pronunciations, and consequently the two meanings of "venimus"? Why is *uxōrem* (in Sent. 3) Accusative (248)?
THE GERUND.

250 1. When an English Transitive Verbal, e.g. *writing*, is the Nominative to a Verb, or the Accusative governed by a Verb, it is expressed (Par. 128) by the Latin Infinitive:

*Writing letters is easy.*

*I prefer writing letters.*

2. But when the Transitive Verbal is preceded by of, for, to, towards, during, in, by, &c., the former Object of the Verbal *writing* is now made the Object of the Preposition *of*, for, &c., and the Latin Gerundive *Adjective scribendus*, *meet-to-be-written*, is used in agreement with its former Object:

*The art of writing letters, i.e. of letters meet-to-be-written.*

*Let us pay attention to making a bridge, i.e. to a bridge meet-to-be-made.*

*During the building of a city, i.e. during a city meet-to-be-built.*

*In making a bridge, i.e. in a bridge meet-to-be-built.*

*Choiceness of expression is increased by reading orators and poets.*

251 1. With the English Verbal, we may generally either insert or omit the ... of: *in (the) building (of) a city*, but the Latin construction is the same in either case. The English *meet-to-be-built, made, &c.*, is an inadequate rendering of the Latin Gerundive, which has no exact English equivalent.

2. The use of the Gerundive Adjective to express the Ablative of the Instrument, is rare.
253 4. The impersonal Gerundive (163) may govern any case except the Accusative:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We must do our duty</td>
<td>Fungendum est officio.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We must obey the laws</td>
<td>Parendum est légibus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We must not forget benefits</td>
<td>Non est oblìvìscendum bēnē-ficiōrum.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise LXXV.**

254 **Rule.**—To turn into Latin a Transitive English Verbal preceded by a Preposition, place the Object in the Case demanded by the English Preposition, and make the Gerundive agree with it.¹


1. They live for the sake of eating; in-eating they consume their lives. 2. Do (237) something, my son; we are born to act (i.e. for acting), not to consume the fruits of the earth. 3. For the sake of discharging duty towards his friends, Tullius neglected his children.² 4. By punishing and by pardoning, not by forgetting, will you improve the bad. 5. (We) must obey (our) elders; we must pity the poor. 6. The conspirators had conceived the hope (trans. had come into the hope) of slaying the consul. 7. He pays attention to writing verses. 8. Have you come to Athens to hear philosophers, or (171) for the sake of breeding dogs? 9. Even in (in) leading a cohort there is some art (i.e. something of art); either (157a) lead better, Marcus, or else do not lead.

255 ¹ Of course in such sentences as I will take-care-of the making of the bridge, the “Case demanded by the English Preposition” is the Acc., because take-care-of is really a Transitive Verb, cûrāre.

256 ² The Verbs fungor, fruor, ātor, vescor, pōtior (207) may be used either in the Impersonal or in the Personal Construction, i.e. either governing the Abl. or agreeing with a Noun.
THE IMPERSONAL INFINITIVE, &c.

257 (1) He is persuaded. Persuásum est (167) ei.¹
(2) (It) is certain that he is persuaded. Certum est ei persuásum esse.
(3) He says he is persuaded. Dicit sibi persuásum esse.

258 2. The Verb fio, I am made, I become, is used as the Passive of facio. In its Present and Present-derived Tenses it is conjugated like the Active of audio, except that fir- is always written fiër-; and the Infinitive is fiēri (not firé nor fière). The Perfect-derived Tenses are formed regularly from the Passive Participle factus.

259 3. Incomplete Transitive Verbs, e.g. make, esteem, call, &c. (which require, besides the Primary Object, a Complementary Noun or Adjective to complete the meaning) have the Complementary Object in the same case as the Primary Object.

We will make you leader Te dúcem fácíëmus.

260 4. In the Passive, these Verbs take the Complementary Subject in the same Case as the Subject.

Balbus was made leader Balbus dux factus est.
He said that Balbus was made leader Dixit Balbum dúcem factum esse.

Exercise LXXVI.

1. Mulieres ob incolumitatem filiorum suorum gavisae sunt.
2. Histrio omnia fit: heri rex fiebat, cras fiet servus.
8. Constat paucos hostium resistere ausos esse (32), nemini

¹ Persuádētur ei would mean it is being persuaded to him, i.e. he is being persuaded.
The Accusative expresses extent (a) of space, and (b) of time; and therefore answers to the questions (1) How far? high? long? deep? broad? (2) For, or during, how long a time? and (3) sometimes (3) How long ago?

262

(a) The ditch is ten feet broad. Fossa dēcem pedes est lata.
(b) He sleeps all the night. Tōtam noctēm dormīt.
(c) He died two years ago. Abhinc biēnium ōbiit.

263

The Accusative and Ablative of Time.—Distinguish between the Accusative of extent of time (how long?), and (3) the Ablative (Par. 30) of the point of time or season (when?)

He cannot sleep in the night. Noctē dormǐre non pōtest.

Exercise LXXVII.

1. Tiberius Caesar tredecim annos principatum obtinuit. 2. Quis nescit Platonem octoginta unum annos vixisse, Socratem anno septuagesimo veneno interfecit esse? 3. Decimo die post captam urbem, fōssam decem pedes altam arci

263α

The Ablative also answers to the question: Within what time? We shall know everything in (the next) three days. Omnia his tribus diēbus, or hoc trīduo, comperta hābēbimus; see Par. 30.

264

Note this idiom after the city taken, i.e. after the taking of the city; so ante urbem conditam, before the foundation of the city.
circumdeditimus. 4. Pericles, cum quadraginta annos Atheniensibus praefuisset, morbo correptus est. 5. Cum jam viginti milia passuum iter fecisset, nuntiant exploratores bidui iter hostes abesse. 6. His auditis, imperator aggerem ducentos pedes latum, triginta altum, exstruere statuit. 7. Non erat dubium quin hostes castra tria tantum milia passuum ab urbe posuisset. 8. Decima hora per exploratores comperit est hostes habere in animo nocte castra oppugnare. 9. Tullius, senex impigerrimus, jam sex et sexaginta annos natus, dicit se tribus his mensibus Athenas navigaturum, esse. 10. Quis non meminit Trojam, decern annos obsessam, per Ulyssis dolos esse captam?

THE LOCATIVE CASE.

265 With the names of Towns and small Islands (and with hum-i, on the ground; döm-i, at home; bell-i,1 in the wars; militiae, in the wars; rür-i, in the country), the question Where? is answered by the old Locative Case, thus:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First declension</td>
<td>Röm-ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second</td>
<td>Cörinth-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third</td>
<td>Carthāgin-ē ²</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

265a With the names of Towns and small Islands (and also with dōmo and rūre) the question Whence? is always answered by the Ablative.

266 1 Militiae and belli are seldom used except with dōmi.

267 2 The older form Carthāgin-i is only to be used where the Acc. is in -im, as Neāpōl-im, Neāpōl-i. Röm-ae, is a contraction for Rōm-āl.
Rule.—The Dative is sometimes used to denote a purpose, especially with the Verbs sum and do.

He imputed it to me as a fault, lit., gave for a fault.

This will be (for) a proof to me.

Exercise LXXVIII.


There is no doubt that, if you remain longer at Corinth, you will be a disgrace to your friends. Let his life be an example to you, that you may know that life in-the-country is often happier than in the city. I asked him not to impute to me as a fault the-fact-that (quod, i.e., because) I had departed from Carthage in-order-to live at Rome. You will remain three months at Rome, your brother at Athens, we at Samos; soon we shall all go to Gaul, thence we shall sail to Rhodes. When Socrates had been put-to-death at Athens—which (270) was a disgrace to the Athenians—his friend Glaucus betook himself to Cyprus; thence after two months he set out for Asia. I like to live at Rome; that-fellow (likes to live) in Campania;

1 i.e. "dated from Ephesus," (not "at Ephesus," which would be Ephesii): see Par. 265a.
2 Note this use of id quod, that which, i.e. as, your father recommends: id may be parsed as Nom. in Apposition to the sentence "ruri vitam ages."
3 Not nē, because the nōn goes with sōlum.
4 Dum is mostly used with the Present, though the Principal Verb is in the Past: "dum habe geruntur, hostes terga dabant."
5 Vobis is Dat. governed by vidētur.
you, who are a laughing-stock to all the best-men (140), are setting out from Athens that you may live at Capua. 7. That great man was not more-renowned in-war than in-the-arts-of peace (trans. at home). 8. There is no doubt that you remember (memini, Appendix II., page 216) when (156) the Romans were defeated by Hannibal at Cannae (239).

THE ABLATIVE.

1. Since the Ablative denotes the means or instrument, it can express the definite price, by means of which anything is bought.

The fish was bought for a denarius, i.e. with a denarius.

2. It can also express the measure, by means of which one thing exceeds, or falls short of, another.

The sun is (by) many times larger than the moon.

3. It can express that, by means of which anything is filled.

The river is full of water, i.e. filled with water.

4. It can also express any circumstance, in which, or with which, something occurs; and hence it can express, (a) manner, or (b) quality. But in such cases the Noun must have an Adj. agreeing with it.

(a) MANNER. He answered in haste. Respondit summa celeritate, or cum celeritate.

(b) QUALITY. Tullius was a man of ability. Tullius ingeni haud parvo, or magno, erat.

1 Hence "much better," "little better," should be rendered "multo paulo, melior," not multum.
2 But in the best writers plenus more often takes the Genitive.
3 Under this head comes the Rule (Par. 28) that dignus, indignus, frētus, contentus, &c., take the Ablative; but the Ablative after these words requires no Adjective agreeing with it.
279 5. The Ablative is also used after Verbs and Adjectives implying need, deprivation, emptiness, freedom from, &c.

I am free from cares.  
I have need of money.

Vācuus sum cūris.  
Opus est mīhi argento.

280 Rule.—After Verbs of promising and hoping, the English Present Infinitive is expressed by the Latin Future Infinitive.

I promise to come, or that I will come.  
I hope to see her to-morrow.

Prōmitto, or, pollīceor, mē ventūrum esse.  
Spēro mē crās eam visūrum esse.

Exercise LXXIX.

1. Ne mille quidem talentis virtutem emere poteris. 2. Multo sanguine ea victoria nobis stetit. 3. Duabus unciis proceor eras quam frater tuus. 4. Fossae aqua plenae erant, urbs frumento abundabat; sed omnes armis egebamus. 5. Compertum est nostros ab hostibus commeatu interclusos esse. 6. Magnō timore sum, sed sperō mox fore ut puer convalescat. 7. Centurioni, viro sumnia probitate, promittenti se venturum, nonne tu credes? 8. Omittō timorem, mi fili; nam, quo fortius ei resistes, eo facilius tibi cedet. 9. Divitiēs facile caretis; nemo facile virtute carēt. 10. Opus est auxilio tuo; miliēs promisisti te venturum esse; omissis jam excusationibus, fac venias (see ‘facio’). 11. Balbus (multō feliciō quam frater) ante urbem captam mortem obierat. 12. Quod ne asse (see ‘as’) quidem emere volumus, id asse carum est.

1. There is no need of excuses; promise to help us. 2. There is no doubt that that victory cost us much blood. 3. We (can) easily do-without flesh, but (sed) we need water. 4. Tullius, a man of approved excellence, had promised to come to see us. 5. Are you much taller than your brothers? 6. The more patiently he bore these insults, the more-steadily he was loved by the citizens. 7. I will ask the general whether he has cut off the enemy from supplies. 8. He answered in-anger (276)

281 1 Verbs ending in -SCO commonly have the sense of beginning an action or state, and are called Inceptives. Inceptives rarely have a Fut. Part. in -rus, and consequently require, even in the Active, the use of the periphrasis före ut, like possum (Par. 231).

2 Quo . . . eo, lit. by how much . . . . by so much, i.e. the more bravely . . . . the more easily. Why is quo Abl.? See Par. 274.
that there was no need of an axe. 9. He is a man of little ability, yet by his perseverance he conquered very many rivals. 10. What prevents us from carrying on the war much more successfully, Tullius being now (jam) our leader (197) (5a)?

THE GENITIVE.

The Genitive is used in the following constructions:

282 1. (a) Descriptively, and (b) to express quality, as in English.
   (a) A fleet of two hundred vessels. Classis dūcentārum nāvium.
   (b) He is a man of ability. Vir est magni ingēnii.
   In such instances, the Genitive Noun must always be accompanied by an Adjective.

283 2. To express (a) estimation, and (b) indefinite price.
   (a) Rule.—Magni, plūris, plūrīmi, parvi, mīnōris, mīnīmi, tanti, quanti, and nīhīli, are used after Verbs of estimation, such as pendo (I hang, weigh, value), fācio, aestīmo.

284 (b) Rule.—Tanti, quanti, plūris, mīnōris (but magno, parvo, plūrīmo, &c.) are used after Verbs of selling and buying.
   (a) I do not count you worth a straw. Non flocei tē fācio.
   (b) At what price was the corn bought? For a large sum. Quanti frūmentum emptum est? Magno.1

285 3. To express plenty or want (but this is more often expressed by the Ablative).
   The pupil must learn by practice what words generally take the Genitive and what the Ablative: for example, indīgeo generally takes the Genitive, and ēgeo the Ablative.

286 1 The distinction between the Genitive and Ablative appears to be this: the Gen. is used when the price is stated indefinitely and regarded as a quality, the Abl. when it is stated definitely and regarded as the instrument whereby the purchase is effected.
4. After Adjectives of knowledge and ignorance, such as conscius, conscious of; nescius, ignorant of; insuetus, unaccustomed to, &c.

He is ignorant of manners, but very learned in the law.

He informed me of his plan, i.e., he made me more certain of his plan.

5. After Present Participles and Adjectives that have the force of Nouns, such as avidus, potens, insolens, cupidus, &c.

Patient (i.e. an endurer) of cold.

He was an extreme lover of his country.

6. After a suppressed Noun, such as nature, mark, duty, lot, part, &c.

It is (the mark) of a wise man not to be easily disturbed.

It is (the duty) of a young man to respect his elders.

It is not (the luck) of every one to do this.

7. After a suppressed Noun, such as charge, cause, &c., with Verbs of accusing, acquitting, convicting, &c.

Having been accused (on the charge) of theft, Balbus was condemned to death.

Exercise LXXX.


1 The Genitive is not habitually used to denote the punishment, but only the charge. But it is used of the punishment in the phrases, “capitis, dupli, quadrupli, &c., (multa) condemnare,” to condemn (in the fine) of death, two-fold, four-fold, &c.
4. Tardi ingenii est nihil nisi omnibus nota\(^1\) perspicere.  
5. Themistocles, providi animi vir, persuasit Atheniensibus ut classem centum navium compararent.  
6. Majestatis accusati, alii in metalla, alii ad bestias, alii capitis damnati sunt.  
7. Quaerebam mecum quare apud hanc gentem parum (adv.) virium veritas haberet.  
8. Rhodum aut aliquo (adv.) terrarum hinc migrandum est.  
10. Stultorum est doctrinae cupidos contemnere.  
12. Tempori cedere a plerisque, sed non a Catone, sapientis est habitum.

1. The Christians, having been accused of treason before (apud) the proconsul, were condemned to the mines.  
2. Where (292a) in-the-world shall we find a-second-man so fond of learning, so patient of labour?  
3. Balbus, a man of incredible perfidy, was found guilty of bribery.  
4. I value the farm at a-great-price; but it was sold for a-small price.  
5. I asked why the farm had been sold for more than (quam) the house.  
6. It is not like a philosopher (i.e. the mark of a philosopher) to be disturbed by trifles.  
7. It is not the lot of everybody to persuade those-who-listen (202).  
8. His brother was acquitted of theft; but Balbus himself, a man free from all fault, was condemned to death.  
9. It requires (i.e. it is the part of) a great leader to effect this task; for effecting (186) which, Tullius has too-little ability.  
10. Whither in-the world are you migrating from Athens?

SOME USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

291  
I. The Subjunctive Mood is used in its proper Subjunctive use when it is subjoined to a Principal Verb, to express (132) purpose or indirect question. But it is also subjoined to express (1) result, and (2) reason: (for *cum* causal with Subjunctive, see Par. 151a).

292  
\(^1\) *Nota* is Neut. Pl. Acc., used as a Noun, governed by *perspicis* understood: to perceive nothing unless (you perceive) things-known to all. The phrase *nif nisi* is often used thus with the force of except.  
\(^2\) Here *id* is the Accusative of Duration (292); but instead of *tempus*, there is the Partitive Genitive *temporis*.  

292a  
The Partitive Gen. often follows (a) Neut. Pronouns, e.g. "quicquid, or si quid ebi hābūimus," whatever food, or all the food, we had; and also (b) Adverbs, e.g. *ālīquo terrārum*, lit. some-whither of lands, i.e. to some place or other in the world; *ūbi terrārum* where in the world?
THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. [Par. 293—293b]

(1) The fighting was so brisk that many were slain on both sides; among whom it happened that the leader himself fell.

Tam ācriter pugnātum est ut multi utrimque interficērent; inter quos accidit ut dux ipse occidēret.

(2) The Athenians condemned Socrates to death because he had (said they) corrupted the youth.

Āthēnienses Socrātem cāpītis damnāvērunt quod juvenītatem corrupisset.1

293 II. Besides its uses in the above subjoined clauses, the Subjunctive (or, as it is sometimes called, the Conjunctive Mood) is also used independently, as follows:

(1) Hortatively, i.e. exhorting: āmēmus, let us love.2

(2) Concessively, i.e. granting for the sake of argument:

Grant that you expel nature, yet she will continually return. Nātūram expellas; usque tāmen rēcurret.

(3) Optatively, i.e. wishing: pēreas! may you perish!

(4) Conditionally, i.e. expressing a statement made subject to the fulfilment of a condition.

I should like to come (i.e. if it could be allowed, &c.).

Vēlim vēnire.

III. The Subjunctive is used (1) after si, if, to express a condition, and also (2) to express a consequence.3

If he came, (then) he would conquer.

Si (1) vēniat, (2) vincat.

The if-clause is called the Protasis (see p. 238); the Consequent, or then-clause, is called the Apodosis (see p. 233).

293a 1 The Subjunctive implies that the reason influences the mind of others, not the mind of the writer. Corruptērat would have implied that the writer believed the charge: because he had (as a fact) corrupted the youth.

2 This usage is ordinarily placed under the Imperative.

293b 3 Si with the Indic. Pres. or Perf. (less frequently Imperf. or Pluperf.) is used in conditions which are assumed to be true, and is often equivalent to when or since.
Rule.—After si, né, num, use quis for any one, quando for at any time, ("si āliquis" would mean if some one; "si āliquando," if at some time).

The Tenses of the Subjunctive in Conditional Sentences vary with the nature of the condition.

The Past Tenses of the Subjunctive are naturally employed to express conditions (1 a) impossible or (1 b) regarded as impossible.

The Present expresses (2 a) conditions possible or (2 b) though really impossible, graphically regarded as possible.

(1 a) If I had received anything (which I have not done) I would have given it.

(1 b) Should I receive, or, if I received anything (which there is no reason for thinking likely) I would give it.

(2 a) Should I receive, or, if I received, anything (which is possible) I would give it.

(2 b) Imagine Plato come to life again; believe me, you would blush while saying this.

N.B.—The Tense is the same in the Protasis and Apodosis.

Exercise LXXXI.

Rule.—Ut... non is not to be changed into nē when the Subjunctive expresses Consequence.

So vigorous was the charge Tantus ērat impētus ut rēsis-
that they could not resist tere nōn possent.

1. Bonorum exempla imitemur, malorum caveamus.1 2. Peream nisi haec vere dico. 3. Plures cecidissent nī nox proelio intervenisset. 4. Si semper optima videre et facere possemus, haud sane praeceptore nobis opus foret. 5. Si quis gladium a te insaniens poscat, nonne dare peccatum sit?

Note that, where in English we say "those of the bad," the Latin either (1) repeats the Noun, "mālorum exempla," or (2), as above, leaves the Noun to be understood; but in no case inserts ea.

1. By-chance it happened that a few of our-men had been slain by the arrows of the enemy. 2. If the excellent Tullius had promised to (280) help a friend, he would have kept his word. 3. If any one asked (295, 2a) you whence you come, you would reply that you come from Carthage. 4. It cannot be (fieri) that a just man would wish to use an unjust power. 5. If by some (quidam) magic art, Balbus were able to assume the form of any animal (he-pleased), he would choose a fish, that he might (131) not be compelled to speak. 6. The general was so greedy of fame as to envy (i.e. that he envied) even his own centurions. 7. How are you-getting-on (i.e. what are you doing, quid agis) at Athens, my son? 8. Write to me how you are getting-on at Corinth.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE (continued).

298 Qui takes the Indicative (I.) when it is used for a Demonstrative Pronoun with a Coordinate Conjunction such as and, but, &c. 2; but (II.) it takes the Subjunctive when used for a Demonstrative with a Subordinate Conjunction denoting (1) purpose, (2) consequence, (3) cause, &c.

I. At length we reached the enemy; who (i.e. but they) immediately fled. Tandem ventum erat ad hostes; qui stātim terga dābant.

II. (1) We sent ambassadors to (Lat. who should i.e. that they should) ask for peace. Missimus légās qui (i.e. ut ēi) pācem pētērent.

(2) There were some that (i.e. such that they) blamed you. Érant qui (i.e. āliqui tāles ut) te culpārent.

299 See the use of accidit in the first example in page 150, above. The Subjunctive is used after Verbs of happening, coming to pass, &c. as if they implied a result consequent on something preceding.

299a *Qui* is sometimes used for the Demonstrative without a Conjunction, e.g. in the idiom "tū, cuīus ēs sapientiae (282°), non errābis," *you (of such wisdom are you, i.e. such is your wisdom) will not err.*
(3) I congratulate you because you have such a son.

Grátulor tibi qui (i.e. quod tu) talem filium habeás.

300 After the antecedent némô, or quîs, you must not write qui nôn, nor quá (old form quî) nôn, but quîn (this applies to all Genders.)

(2 a) Who is there (or, there is no one) that does not hate you?

Quîs est (or, Nêmo est) quîn tê õédërit?

There was no day but Tullius walked with me, lit. on-which-not T. walked with me.

Dies ërat nullus quîn (i.e. quo nôn) Tullius mècum ambùlaret.

Vërëor means I am anxiously on the watch. Hence, when it is translated I fear, the English requires (1) the insertion of a negative if the Latin omits it, and (2) the omission of a negative if the Latin inserts it.

(1) I fear he will not come.

Vërëor (or tîmëo) ût vêniat, lit. I am anxiously watching that he may come.

(2) I feared he would come.

Vërítus sum (or tîmuï) nê vëni-ret, lit. I anxiously watched that he might not come.

N.B.—After fear, translate the English Future by the Latin Subjunctive.

302 Nescio ân. Before ân, utrum is always implied, if not expressed. Hence in Direct Questions ân is used to introduce an alternative to which the speaker is driven, “(Utrum hôc fâtëris) ân hôc nègâs?” (Whether do you confess this) Or must I suppose that you actually deny this? Similarly, in Indirect Questions, nescio ân introduces an alternative and more probable supposition; thus, “Nescio (utrum ventûrus sit) ân nôn ventûrus sit,” means, I do not know (whether he will come), or whether, as is more probable, he will not come, i.e., I rather think he will not come. Consequently, with nescio ân (as with vërëor) a negative must be inserted or omitted in Latin, in a manner exactly contrary to the English idiom.
I do not know whether he will come.
Nescio an non venturus sit, i.e.
I rather think he will not come.

I do not know whether he will not come.
Nescio an venturus sit, i.e.
I rather think he will come.

Exercise LXXXII.

303 Rule.—With a Comparative Adverb, purpose is expressed by quo, i.e. ut eò (Par. 277):

In order that he might swim Quo (i.e. ut eò) celerius náret. more quickly.

1. Mittamus legatos qui pacem petant. 2. Quotusquisque est qui tibi faveat! Sunt qui te oderint; nemo fere est qui tibi invideat. 3. Omnes laudabant victorem qui tot milia civium incolumes servasset, totiens hostem sub jugum misisset. 4. Quis est quin sibi consulat, alienis sua anteponat? 5. Dies fere nullus erat quin (i.e. quo non) rus tecum irem. 6. Fossam castris circumdedimus quo (i.e. ut eò) facilius hostibus resistéremus. 7. Vereor ne optimus quisque civium nos deserat. 8. Nescio an res mihi non bene successurá sit; sed id agam ut tibi subveniam. 9. Nescio an mulieres venturae sint; sed, si aberunt, equidem tibi subveniam. 10. Pavor ceperat milites ne præda sibi eriperetur. 11. Lege quædam cavebatur ne quis, ob causam orandam, pecuniam donumve (see -ve) acciperet. 12. Cave ne aeger neve hieme naviges. 13. Non tu is (see Vocab. 'is') es qui mentiaris.2

1. They sent ambassadors to (qui) ask for peace. 2. I am not the man (is qui) to use this opportunity, 3. There was no one but wished to help him. 4. I feared that all the best of the citizens would set out for the country. 5. All praise you for (298, 3) (qui) having conquered so many thousands of the enemy. 6. Even if it were possible, I should not wish to do this. 7. I fear that the enemy, having now crossed the river, will not make (férico) peace. 8. There were some who answered that not even an assassin must be delivered-over against the laws. 9. How-few (quòtus-quisque with sing.) are there

---

1 These differences between the English and Latin idioms are sometimes expressed in the lines:—

With vereor and nescio
For English yes, put Latin no.

303a Note that, after "nón ego is sum, tū is ès, ès est, qui," the Relative agrees, in Person, with the Subject of the Verb to be, not with Is.

304 It is possible, i.e. it is able to be done, "Hieri pòtest," not pòtest alone, except in the phrases "ut pòtest," "si pòtest," and these mostly in colloquial Latin. The pupil should use pòtest to mean it is able, not it is possible. See Vocab. "even."
who are unwilling to use an opportunity of obtaining wealth!

10. There is no one in this city who will not prefer his-interests (i.e. his-things, 34) to mine.

Sē, ipsē, &c.

It has been said above (Par. 218, and see page 328) that sē, suus, &c. (and not eum, eius) are used when they refer (in a Subordinate Clause) to the Subject of the Principal Verb. But there are exceptions to this Rule.

I. Sometimes an apparently Subordinate Sentence (e.g. one introduced by because) is really equivalent to a Co-ordinate Sentence introduced by for.

Marcius returned safe because I had spared him.

This is really equivalent to the two Co-ordinate Sentences, Marcius returned safe: for I had spared him, “Marcius salvus rēdiit; nam ei pēpercēram.” and ei is therefore used, because rēdiit is regarded, not as a Principal, but as a Co-ordinate Verb.

But if the because-clause be more closely connected with what precedes, and if some notion of thought he, said he, be introduced, so as to make the latter part appear, not a historical fact, but rather dependent upon what Marcius thought, said, &c.—then sībī must be used.

Marcius returned me thanks because (said he) I had spared him.

II. Occasionally suus is used of different persons in the same sentence. In such cases the sense must determine the translation.

The Veneti sent an ambassador to Caesar (commanding that) if he wished to receive back his own men, he should send their hostages back for them.

Vēnēti légātum ad Caesārem misērunt: “Si vellet suos rēcipere, obsīdes sībī rē-mittēret.”

1 Note also that the Indicative pēpercēram is changed into the Subjunctive pēpercissem (293a).

2 The construction of rēmittēret is explained more fully in the rules on Exercise XCIII.: here, rēmitterēt may be parsed as Subjunctive after impērāvērunt ut, which is implied in misērunt, they sent (with orders that).
III. Ambiguity in English is sometimes avoided by the distinction between *him* and *himself*: but in Latin both these pronouns are sometimes rendered by *se*, so that the meaning of *se* has to be determined by *the sense of the whole passage*:

- *The captive besought the conqueror to spare him.*
- *The father commanded the son to restrain himself.*

IV. Ambiguity is sometimes removed in Latin (1) by adding *ipse* to the Subject of the Subordinate Verb, to which *se* refers:

1. *Nature impels a child to love itself.*

2. by placing *ipse* in antithesis with *se*, using *ipse* to refer to the Principal Subject and *se* to refer to the Subordinate Subject:

- *Caesar asked (his soldiers) why they distrusted their own valour or his diligence.*
- *Caesar quaesivit (ex militibus) cur de suā virtūte aut de ipsius diligentia desperāret.*

**Exercise LXXXIII.**

RULE.—*Quisquam*, and *ullus*, *any*, are used in negative and comparative sentences, and in interrogative sentences that expect the answer *No*.

*Quisquam* is used for the English *no one* and *nothing* when *and* precedes: and *no one nēc quisquam*; and *nothing, nēc quidquam*. Similarly, *and never, neque unquam*, &c.

Distinguish between *quisquam* and *quisquē, each one; quisquis, whoever; quīlibet and quīvīs, any one you like; quīdam, a certain (person); āliquis, some one.*

*Quidam* means *a certain person* (whom I could mention by name, if I desired), *āliquis* some one (who exists, but it matters not who precisely it is). Note that *quisquis* is the only one of these words that has a Relative force.
1. Venator orabat comites ne se ante oculos suos perire sinister.
2. Pertinuerunt ne ab ipsis descisceret et cum suis in gratiam rediret. 3. Quaesivit imperator cur milites sibi totiens antea obtemperasset, jam obtemperare nollent. 4. Tum vero rex circumstantes obsecrat ut suae quisque salutum consulat, ipsum morientem neglegat. 5. Quodam tempore natus sum; aliquo tempore mihi moriendum erit. 6. Non cuivis contingit optimo cuique suorum civium placere. 7. Si quis in scena saltat, ei non quivis motus sed certus quidam (motus) datur. 8. Inest etiam superbus falsa quaedam mode8tiae species. 9. Interrogavi nonne major natu esset quam quisquam ex fratribus suis. 10. Dixerit aliquis (some one may be inclined to say) inutilem fuisse hanc victoriam; sed eiusmodi dicta (quae cuilibet prompta sunt), flocci non facio. 11. Neapoli prefectura subito obiit (265a).

**EXERCISES ON THE GENDERS OF THE NOUNS AND IRREGULAR VERBS.**

311 Dea, -ae, f. goddess, makes Dat. Pl. déábús in classical authors: and filiábús is found in inscriptions and legal forms.

Bós, c. ox or cow, Gen. bŏvis, has Dat. and Abl. Pl. bŏbus and búbus.

Vis, f. sing. force, violence, has Gen. and Dat. Sing. wanting, and is declined Nom. víṣ, Acc. víṃ, Abl. ví.

Vires, f. pl. strength (Pl. of víṣ, but not meaning violence), is formed regularly, vířīum, vířibus, vířes.

---

1 What case is quisquē? See the word in the Vocabulary.
2 Trans. a certain one; not ēnus, which would mean one only.
Juppiter makes Jovem, Jovis, Jovi, Jove.

Domus is formed partly from the Second and partly from the Fourth Declension. The Gen. and Dat., Sing. and Pl., are of the Fourth, dōmūs, dōmuī, domūum, domībus, and also the Abl. Pl. domībus; the rest are of the Second.¹

Jūs-jūrandum, oath (which has no Plural), and rēspublīca, state, are not irregular, but simply words compounded of Nouns and Adjectives agreeing with them, Gen. jūris-jūrandī, rēspublīcae, &c.

Exercise LXXXIV.

312  Rule.—Cēlo, dōceo, and some other Verbs take two Accusatives in the Active, and one in the Passive:

Mercury taught Cupid letters.  Mercūrius Cūpīdīnem littēras dōcuit.

My son must be taught letters.  Filius meus littēras est dōcendus.

313  Rule.—Antē, post (placed Adverbially between the Noun and Adj. of time), and sometimes (216) ābhinc, ago, are used with the Abl. of Measure (274), to denote an interval before or after.

He died a very few days before.  Hōmo perpaucīs antē diēbus ōbit.

Many years afterwards, he returned home.  Multīs post annīs, dōmum ōdiit.

They perished two years ago.  Abhinc biennio pēriērunt.

1. Non dubium est quin sōlverit quod pro fratre spopondit.  2. Rogavi imperatorem utrum civitatem omnem an paucos procerum jūre-jurando obstrinxisset.  3. Quibus domibus milites pepercerant eas cives ipsi incenderunt.  4. Quod frater tuus me non celavit, id eur tu occuluiisti?  5. Num, te jubente, consul secures sumpsit posuitque?  6. Nolo exorsa (see exordior) vel potius fere detexta, postea, jam senex, retexere.  7. Tullius, primis annis, puer, equis bubusque

313a ¹ The Gen. and Acc. Pl. dōmōrum and dōmūs are sometimes found. The forms are sometimes remembered by the lines:

Si dēclīnāre dōmūs vis
Tolle (i.e. take away) -mē, -mū, -mī, et -mīs.

The form dōmī, at home, is the Locative Case, see Par. 265.
alendis; mihi humanitus (ad.e.) accidisset, liberi mei defensor
criussent (295, 1a). 9. Quotusquisque didicit quomodo vi-
vementum sit! 10. Filiorum eius alteri Tullia nupsit; alteri
soror eius, perpaucis post mensibus. 11. Fertur Venus fili
suum Mercurio litteras docendis tradidisse. 12. Homo
stultissimus filio, qui natu maximus est, grandem pecuniam
testamento (abl. instr.) legat; filiabus nihil legat.

1. The worthless Balbus was-uncwiling to support the parents who
had supported him from boyhood. 2. I asked the husbandman
when (i.e. at what time) he had sown (his) corn (pl.). 3. There
is no doubt that the soldiers distrusted the general. 4. I asked
Tullius why he was going-to-leave so-large a sum-of-money to
his three daughters. 5. Did you, a few days afterwards, pro-
mise your daughter (in-marriage) to that-fellow? 6. Do you,
who elected me consul, now hope, O citizens, to wrest the
consulate from-me (mihi) by violence (152a)? 7. At-first our
men were driven-back; (but) soon a-second-time advancing they
drove the enemy down from the hill. 8. Why have you
pledged-yourself to pay so large a sum-of-money? 9. Be-
cause you are bankrupt, do not (ne) on that account make
false promises. 10. Are-you-ignorant of the way in which
(i.e. in-what-way) Brutus drove-out Tarquin?

Exercise LXXXV.

1. The Distributive Numerals (for which see Par. 77)
are used, (1) where the same number applies to each of a
class; (2) where the Noun with which the Numeral agrees
is Singular in meaning, though Plural in form, e.g.
litterae, castra (so that the Noun implies a group, e.g.
litterae, a group of alphabetical letters); (3) in poetry.¹

(1) The men will be contented Hōnīnes bīnis, aut certo ternīs
dēnāriis a-piece.

¹ Dat governs eōquis as well as rei-publicae.
² Note the Latin idiom. It is reported that Venus did, &c., is never
to be rendered "fertur Vēnērem fecisse," &c., but always Venus is
reported to have done, &c., "fertur Vēnus fecisse," &c. A similar con-
struction is used with dictur, see Par. 177.
³ Because, in poetry, number is regarded not as a precise collection
of units, but as a group, a "brace," "dozen," "score," "hundred," &c.,
which may belong to any number of persons a-piece, so that a kind of
distribution is implied. Thus any hero may carry his "couple" of darts,
and any giant may have his "hundred hands"; and hence Virgil speaks
of "bīna hastīlia," in the hand of Æneas, and "centēnae mānūs" be-
longing to a giant.
(2) At that time I used to write one, two, three, four, sometimes five letters a day.

\[317\]

2. Cum ... tum, used like ēt ... ēt, sometimes mean not only, but also: see sentence 7 below.

((Look out allīcio, diffindo,īnūro, oblīno.)

1. Quam messem senex severat filius eius messuit. 2. Hostes furos fugatosque tanta vi nostri colle depulerunt ut ne equites quidem in arcem se recipere possent. 3. Vita eius tot tantisque flagitiis obligata fuerat ut turpitudinis nobis notam non sibi soli sed toti generi et nomini suo inussisset. 4. Nonne apud Plinium, in Naturali Historia, legistis piscibus non supra quaternas piunas esse, quibusdam binas, aliquidus nullas? 5. Hujus urbis portas aurore vestrum, non virtus, diffudit. 6. Inter occulta et sepulta non multum interest. 7. Allexerunt audientium animos, cum oratoris eloquentia, tum jurisjurandi commemoratio, et hostium jam accedentium minae. 8. Incertum est utrum militibus singulos an binos denarios dederit, an denique alios pecunia alios promissis ad seditionem impulerit. 9. Qui cum (i.e. Now when he) de-cemvir legibus scribendis delectus esset, statim intellexit Licinius rem non jam negligendam esse. 10. Tanta erat hostium multitudo ut ne trina quidem castra eis sufficerent.

1. To (his) two daughters, whom he loved to a remarkable-degree (unice), he left ten thousand denarii a-piece. 2. (His) sons he entirely neglected, except one, the youngest, to whom he left all-the-money-that (quantum pecuniae) he had collected. 3. The soldiers he allured, by promising to some six, to others seven, denarii a-piece. 4. The daughter did not marry that (man) to whom her father had promised-her-in-marriage. 5. Having drawn the water, the girl returned to the well to draw (some) again. 6. At the command of the emperor the consul laid-aside the fasces, which he had assumed a very-few days before. 7. I

---

1 Note that, with Pl. Nouns of Sing. meaning, the forms āni, trīni are used, instead of the ordinary distributives singūli, terni.

2 For a list of the distributive numerals, see Par. 77.

3 It was a proverb of Philip of Macedon that any city could be taken, to the gates of which a mule laden with gold, i.e. a bribe, could make its way.

4 This dative (for "ad leges scribendas") is rare, except in official appellations; and it is not to be imitated.

5 Remember that the Eng. Infinitive is never to be rendered by the Latin Inf. unless it is the Subject or Object of a Verb: see Par. 247.
fear that something (301) amiss has befallen the excellent Tullius. 8. My son, what you have sown, that you will reap.

**Exercise LXXXVI.**

He is too cruel to be loved by any one.  
Crūdēlior est quam qui (or ut) a quoquam amētur.  
Idem est ac (or qui) semper fuit.

(Look out accumbō, cógo, comprehendo, dēposco, nanciscor, rēgēro, pārio, excūtio.)

2. Crudelior erat rex quam ut cuiquam indulgeret vel ignosceret.  
3. Sperasne ceteros poenas daturos, tibi uni indultum iri?  
4. Centurioni milites increpanti vox haesit; nam minerat et sibi uxorem liberosque domi manere.  
5. Praetor eadem, quae antea, respondit, legē sanctum fuisse ne quis mortuum intra urbem sepeliret.  
6. Homo cum inter cenandum obdormisset, subito tanto strepitu stertuit ut qui una (adv.) accubuerant omnes risum tollerent.  
7. Mulier cum tres liberos uno partu peperisset, solitum praemium a regina depopiscit.  
8. Exuta veste piscator se in undam mersit; mox anulum nactus regent.  
9. Turn Balbus, quern facinorum quae coactus commiserat jam poenituerat, rem omnem consuli pandit.  
10. Continuo, excusso sopore, pater latronem comprosursus exsiluit foras.

1. When (she) had approached the meadow the flowers attracted the maiden's eyes. 2. (His) voice failed (desum) him when he attempted (i.e. attempting) to ask the tyrant what he wished to do. 3. Having shaken off sleep, our men leaped out of their beds. 4. We went yesterday to Rome to see a picture painted by the celebrated painter Tullius. 5. If he had revealed the (295. 1a) matter of his own accord he would have been spared (167) by the conquerors. 6. It had been enacted that no one should possess more than two hundred acres, but the sons of Tullius possessed three hundred acres a-piece. 7. There is no doubt that you compelled the man to bind himself by an oath. 8. Those who remained in Corinth were all taken and slain. 9. When will you go from Rome (265a)?

---

1 Inquit always comes after the first emphatic word of a speech, see page 215. For ut with the Indicative, see the Latin Vocabulary.
2 Esse is omitted after dātūros, a very common omission (211).
3 Centūriōni is Dat. of Disadvantage; sibī, Dat. of Advantage; for ēt see Par. 146.
Exercise LXXXVII.

321  The Historical Infinitive is used for the Indicative (always in the Present, and more commonly Active than Passive), when a writer is describing a number of actions so confused together that the times and persons are not easily defined; so that the Infinitive, i.e. the Infinite or Indefinite form of the Verb is naturally preferred. The consequent indefiniteness is somewhat similar to that which arises from the omission of sum; and this Infinitive is often found in a sentence in which sum is actually omitted.

Horses and men, friends and foes were mingled together; all was chance, lit. chance ruled all things.

322  A Dative of Purpose (besides the Dat. of Possession or Reception) is used after sum and do (268):

He gave me the book (to serve) for a gift. Librum mihi dôno dedit.
This will be (for) a help to me. Hoc ērit mihi adjûmento.

A similar Dat. is sometimes used after dúco, hâbēo, &c., meaning consider:

This was considered (for) a Hoc magnae contūmēliae habītum est.

(Look out allicio, anquiro, excōlo, torreo.)

1. Foeda inde colluvies; pars cedere, alii inequi; hi fugere, illi resistere ac propulsare; nihil consilio agi. 2. Campus, frumentis optime excultus, decem milia passuum in latitudinem, tria in longitudinem patebat. 3. Consenserant Patres; uni Catoni aliter visum est. 4. Virgines alias (88) alii flores allexere; huic rosae, illi violae curae erant: una Proserpina liliis sinum replebat. 5. Fertur Ceres famem longam papavere imprudens solvisse, quod, intratura senis doraura, forte collegerat. 6. Nostri per apertas portas irruere; ibi clamorem tollere, caede atque incendio omnia miscere. 7. Our non ante confessus es te peccavisse quam res ipsa anquisita est? 8. Credo fore ut mox judices timeas, quamquam nunc

1 Cūrae is Dative; rōsae and viōlae Nominative.
quidem negas quidquam de te compertum esse. 9. Quid? Errorem tuum, nisi tibi ipsi nocuerit, nonne vis corrigere? 10. Ulmos vitibus amictas quis non rubetis (not from rubeo), sole tostis anteponti?

1. The false witnesses had not deceived (fallo) the judge, who favoured neither of us. 2. The fields, scorched by the sun, have not produced (their) usual fruits. 3. The maiden whom your brother has demanded in (in with acc.) marriage, her father has not promised-in-marriage. 4. The two armies, which consisted of four legions (each), filled the whole (of the) valley. 5. There is no doubt that he collected a great sum-of-money. 6. When he had plunged into the sea, he saw nothing but stones. 7. When all had agreed, Balbus alone resisted the proposal (i.e. plan). 8. She did not confess her fault until (ante ... quam) the king bound her by an oath.

Exercise LXXXVIII.

323 (1) Quamquam, although, mostly takes the Indicative; (2) quamvis, however much, always the Subjunctive (in Prose). (3) But quamvis is sometimes used as an Adverb: "élige quamvis multa," 1 choose however many, i.e. as many as you please.

(Look out pando, prēgigno, reor, sarcio, scindo.)

1 Scissa veste, crine passo, virgo ad caelum supplices manus protendebat. 2. Hie, quamvis male sevisset, sperabat se bene messurum esse. 3. Romani, quamquam hostem fuderant, tamen insequi fugientes nequibant. 4. Vestem sartam quidem, si necesse erit, patiar; turpem vero et maculis foedatam non patiar. 5. Legimus, apud Vergiliun, Famam extremam prolem a Tellure progenitam. 6. Difficile est dictu cur hic tantus imperator tam imbellem gentem non facile perdomuerit. 7. His minis perterritus, saepsit se tyrannus militibus; tremere et exalbescere vel amiciis adeuntibus; adeo (adv.) ut, ob metum tonsoris, se ipsum radere, coactus formidme, disceret. 8. Hanc occasionem delendae urbis minime spernendam esse ratus, Balbus regem ad necandos fame captivos

323a 1 Quamvis is used once with the Indicative by Cicero, but this use is not to be imitated. Quamquam is used with the Subjunctive (1) in general statements, mostly in the Second Person (called the Gnomic Subjunctive), "Although you may forgive a man, it is difficult to improve him." "Quamquam ignoscas, difficile est emendare," (2) in statements expressing, not fact, but the thought of the writer.

1. It is one-thing (34) to dine, another-thing to stuff one's stomach with food. 2. Did you envy that-vile (iste) tyrant, hedged-round with soldiers, who measured dangers by his own fear? 3. There is no doubt that, as-boys, we learned many-things which as-old men we shall forget. 4. Having routed the enemy, why did you not pursue the fugitives (i.e. those fleeing)? 5. Thinking that this opportunity was not to be neglected, the general ordered his-soldiers to charge. 6. After you had bound yourself by an oath to spare us, did you then impel the Icing to (ad) slay us? 7. The disciples of Epicurus, measuring (i.e. having-measured) all things by pleasure, were unable to estimate virtue at a sufficiently high value (283). 8. You who spurned her while-she-lived (i.e. living), will you spurn (her) (now-that-she-is-) about-to-die?

Exercise LXXXIX.

324 Jampridem and jamdūdum change the Latin Present into the English Complete Present (Perfect with have), and the Latin Imperfect into the English Pluperfect: “Jamdūdum opto, or optābam,” I have been, or had been, long desiring.

(Look out digēro, expersgiscor, lābor, quēror.)

1. Ceres, diu secum questa, tandem his verbis Tonantem allocuta est. 2. Aut non erat paciscendum, aut, si pactus es, standum est promissis. 3. Nec fefellit opinionem eventus; tanta enim vi milites in castra irruperunt ut ducem ipsum in lecto nondum exerrectum caperent. 4. Jampridem colonum admonebam ut pirum fructu gravatam et jam lapsuram fulciret. 5. Circa annem, piscium (278) omnis generis plenum, armenta pinguaia pasebantur. 6. Quamvis multa dedecora in se admisisset, non dubium erat quin semper promissis stetisset. 7. Flores inter se dissimillimi, arte quadam in serto digesti, quis nescit quantum oblectionis afferant? 8. Num imperatorem incusas quod unius et alterius (see ‘alter’) salutem ob incolumitatem totius exercitus neglexerit?
1. Awake at last, or sleep for ever (in aeternum) slaves. 2. If you had not made this bargain, citizens, the city would not have been delivered over by the enemy. 3. It is reported that (315) Paris fed sheep round Mount Ida (i.e. Ida the mountain). 1 4. Our men, shut (in) on one side by the enemy, on the other by a river and by mountains, were cut off from (their) supplies. 5. It is (the part) of an orator not only (317) to arrange (his) facts, but also to explain (them) clearly (when) arranged. 2 6. You have caused me as much sorrow as (you caused) yourself joy. 7. When I asked (i.e. to me asking) why she had complained she replied that her daughter had been torn away from (de) her embrace. 8. This great man, whom neither threats had terrified nor gifts had tamed, succumbed at last to Fortune.

**Exercise XC.**


1. Seest thou not, O Brutus, thine axes polluted and thy fasces dyed with the blood of thy sons? 2. Having broken the two hinges, the robbers tore away the gate. 3. Contented with a little (exiguus) bread, this great philosopher demanded no more (i.e. did not demand more things). 4. Your sheep were lying under a beech tree, which (was) struck with lightning (and) fell. 5. By his pleasant discourse this witty poet delighted both old men and young. 6. Near a very high hill was a narrow valley.

---

1 In Latin the name of the individual precedes the name of the class. 2 Avoid the repetition of Pronouns in Latin: trans. facts not only to arrange, but also, (when) arranged, to explain; making (facts) the Obj. both of arrange and of explain.
watered by a small stream (amnis). 7. (Fair)-shone the ground (hûmûs) painted with many kinds of beautiful flowers. 8. I have been long hoping that the city will be taken in two months.

**Exercise XCI.**

327 Quam, as far as, is sometimes put briefly for “quam pôtuit, pôtëris,” &c.: he prepared as sumptuous a dinner as he could, “cênam quam (pôtuit) òpînam pârâvit.” This construction, with the Positive degree, is rare, and not to be imitated: but with the Superlative it is common:

*He hastened with as long marches as possible.* Quam (pôtuit) maxîmis ëtîn-ëribus contendit.

*Take care to come as often as you can.* (Lat. shall be able.) Cûrâ ùt quam (pôtëris) saepissîmë vëniæs.


1. The open-sea (pëlagus) is not to-be-tried by us in this small ship. 2. Let us hope that the harvest will be as great as possible. 3. The general surrounded the town with a mound thirty feet high. 4. We have four fingers and one thumb (314). 5. Did you see the snake which the eagle had carried off?

---

1 Trans. to think that they should perish! and parse as Exclamatory Infinitive.

2 Compêdes is Acc. governed by aestimâret understood: “tam quam (aestimâret)” as much as (he would value) the fetters, &c. The meaning is that certain fortresses in Greece enabled their owner to keep the whole country in subjection, as fetters enable a jailer to keep a prisoner.
6. Horace says that (nego) he cannot free himself from the pleasing fetter of love. 7. There is no doubt that the goat injured that beautiful tree as much as possible with (his) destructive tooth. 8. Are you not ashamed (see Vocab. 'ashamed'), soldiers, of having yielded to enemies so few (in-numbers)? 9. As long as you are (125) in debt, you will never be able to be contented with your lot.

**Exercise XCII.**

With *interest* and *réfert*, to express *it concerns you, me, himself* (not *him*), the forms *meā, tuā, nostrā, suā*, &c., are used.

These Verbs are qualified by the Adverbs *nihil, multum, tantum, quantum, quid*, and also by *magni, parvi, plūris, mīnōris, tanti*, as well as by ordinary Adverbs such as *maxīmē*.

*What does it matter to me in what manner you compel me?* *Quīd meā réfert quā rātiōne mé (240) cógātīs?*

*Interest, it concerns*, is used with the Gen. of the person or thing concerned; (but *réfert* is rarely thus used). Both are followed by the Acc. and Inf., or by *ūt* (or *nē*) with the Subjunctive.

*It concerns the State and us that you should be well.* *Ét rei-publicae ét nostrā intérest té vālēre.*

*It is important for you to come.* *Tuā intérest út vēniās.*

**329**

**Étūnām, would that! or O that!** is used to signify a wish, (1) with the 'Pres. Subjunctive for a possible, (2) the Imperf. or Pluperf. Subjunctive for an impossible wish.

*O that the past might return!* *Utīnām praetērīta rēdirent!*

*O that he might arrive to-day!* *Utīnām hōdiē advēniat!*

1. A recta conscientia ne transversum quidem unguem discesseris. 2. Interrogavi colonum num domi sedens murmur maris exaudire posset. 3. Respondit fulmen ibi decem ante annis de caelo cecidisse. 4. Non nostri moris est ebur et aurum ad Deum colendum adhibere. 5. Quis tumidum guttur

---

1 Why is *unguēm* the Acc. (262)? *Nē* affects (129) the translation of *discessēris*.
2 Parse *annis*: Par. 313.
3 Parse *mōrīs*: Par. 289.

1. The fellow had not-yet vomited-forth against me the venom of his envy. 2. He who had not feared even lashes and tortures, now hearing (abl. abs.) the words of the judge, trembled from-head to-foot (toto corpore). 3. It is reported that the raven, whereas (cum, with subjunct.) he ought to have brought (223) a golden cup to Apollo, lied, feigning that a long snake had caused him delay. 4. The centurion, his eye having been struck out (eft'odio), was no longer fit for performing military service (stipendia merere, lit. to earn pay). 5. They spoke with-every-appearance-of-truth (trans. with a most true forehead); but, in my judgment, they were lying. 6. There is no doubt that from this source many evils flowed into our country. 7. There was no doubt that he had been scourged before he was sent (i.e. had been sent) into exile (145b). 8. O-that you would not depart even a hair's breadth from the precepts of your father! 9. He thought to himself (i.e., with himself) how important it was for Balbus that he himself should return home (Acc. and Pres. Inf.). 10. What does it matter whether these birds are fed or not?

**ELEMENTARY RULES FOR ORATIO OBLIQUA.**

331 Speech reported in the First Person ("I fear," said Balbus, "I am mistaken") is called Oratio Recta, or, Direct Speech; speech reported in the Third Person (Balbus said that "He feared he was mistaken") is called Oratio Obliqua, or Indirect Speech.

In passing from English O. R. to O. O. almost the only change is in the Personal Pronouns and Tenses, as above, I into he, am into was:
Speech in First Person.

"I know," said Balbus, "that you will help me. What is lost can be regained. The cities that have been taken before we came here, can be recovered. Take courage therefore. Why do you delay? Is not the enemy now but a little way off? Are we not prepared to fight? Do not desert me. Trust in your own right-hands and in my diligence."

Speech in Third Person.

Balbus said that "He knew that they would help him. What had been lost could be regained. The cities that had been taken before they came there, could be recovered. They should therefore take courage. Why did they delay? Was not the enemy now but a little way off? Were they not prepared to fight? They should (or let them) not desert him. They should trust in their own right hands and in his diligence."

But in Latin there are changes in the Moods, besides other changes, as follows:

1. (a) Principal Verbs in the Indicative are changed into Infinitives, and their Subjects into Accusatives. (b) Inquit is changed into dixit or some other Verb.

**Oratio Recta.**

"I know," said Balbus, Tum Balbus "scio" inquit (320)

**Oratio Obliqua.**

Balbus said that "He knew"

Balbus dixit "Se scire"

2. Ēgo and nōs are changed into sē; vōs into eōs.

vōs mīhi adfuturos.

2. (a) Principal Verbs in the Indicative are changed into Infinitives, and their Subjects into Accusatives. (b) Inquit is changed into dixit or some other Verb.

**Oratio Recta.**

"I know," said Balbus, Tum Balbus "scio" inquit (320)

**Oratio Obliqua.**

Balbus said that "He knew"

Balbus dixit "Se scire"

2. Ēgo and nōs are changed into sē; vōs into eōs.

vōs mīhi adfuturos.

3. Indicatives after Relatives and after Non-co-ordinate Conjunctions, are changed into Subjunctives.

The cities that have been taken before we came here, can be recovered.

Quae urbes captae sunt, antequam hac vēnīmus, rēcūpērāri possunt.

The cities that had been taken before they came there, could be recovered.

Quae urbes captae fūissent, antēquam illūc vēnissent, posse rēcūpērāri.

---

1 Before the pupil writes Latin he should practise turning English speech of the First Person into speech of the Third Person.

2 (1) Co-ordinate Conjunctions are sēd, autem, tāmen, et, -que, nam, enim, itaque, īgitur, &c. (2) Non-co-ordinate or Subordinate Conj. are āt, quōd, quia, cum, dōnēc, antēquam, postquam, si, quamquam, &c.

When the Relative, e.g. quōs, can be replaced by a Demonstrative and a Coordinate Conjunction, (et eōs), it is sometimes followed by an Infinitive. But for the beginner this construction will not be necessary.
4. Imperatives are changed into Subjunctives.

Take courage therefore. | (He begged that) They should therefore take courage.
Èrigite igitur ânîmos. | Èrigèrent igitur ânîmos.

5. Questions asked in the Second Person are rendered by the Subjunctive in the Third Person (being really Indirect Questions).

Why do you delay? | (He asked) Why did they delay?
Cûr mûrâmîni? | Cûr mûrârentur?

6. Questions asked in the First and Third Person are rendered by the Accusative and Infinitive.

Is not the enemy now but a little way off? Are we not prepared to fight? | Was not the enemy now but a little way off? Were they not prepared to fight?
Nonne hostis roprij jam äbest? Nonne ad pugnandum pàrâti sùmus? | Nonne hostem roprij jam âbesse? Nonne sè ad pugnandum pàratos esse?

7. (a) Sè, sibi, &c., are used for the Person speaking; (b) but where sè, suus, &c., are needed to express the Person addressed, ipse is used for the Person speaking.

(a) Do not desert me.
Nólite me désérerêre. | (a) They should not desert him.
Nollent sè désérerêre.
(b) Trust in your own right hands and in my diligence."
Spem in vestris dextris et in mea diligentia pônîte."
(b) They should trust in their own right hands and in his diligence."
Spem in suis dextris et in ipsius diligentia pônêrent."

Exercise XCIII.

To be turned into Latin Oratio Obliqua.

A. His anditis, Tullius, ad amicos conversus, "Cûr" inquit (332 b) "moramini? Neque enim ego volo amicis exitium ferre neque vos jam potestis morituro prodesse. Hostes jam

1 These questions are really partly questions, partly passionate statements: The enemy is but a little way off, is he not? We are prepared to fight, are we not? Hence, they are expressed by the Accusative and Infinitive.

(B. is already in O. O.; C. must be turned into O. O.)

B. Balbus having now departed from the senate-house, the consul addressed the senators (i.e. the fathers) to this effect: "Why did they (336) hesitate? Let them choose, if it was necessary, between a glorious death and an inglorious servitude. But he was persuaded that this was not necessary. Victory, not death, awaited them, if, without fear, they consulted-the-interest-of the country. Not even the lowest of the citizens nor favoured the conspirators. Already they were praised by all the best of the citizens, soon they would be praised by all. Why therefore did they sit there hesitating, since both Fortune and Necessity taught them that they ought not now to deliberate but to act? When they had made a beginning, the citizens would to a man (ad unum) approve their plans. He would say no more, for there was need not of words but of deeds."

C. Tullius now turned to the soldiers of the tenth legion. "Why," said he (332b), "do you fear the multitude of the enemy?" We indeed have only three thousand, the enemy ten thousand; but three free citizens can easily resist ten slaves. The victories that the enemy has lately gained have been gained by treachery and guile; but in this plain, treachery will avail nothing (nullo modo). Be of good cheer therefore, since Mars will give the palm to the more worthy army. If only you can repel the first assault of (their) cavalry, the infantry will speedily turn their backs. Trust in your own valour and in my skill (i.e. plans). What avail ten thousand sheep against one wolf? But why do I waste time in speaking? The enemy is at-hand, the contest-is-to-be-waged (i.e. it-is-to-be-striven) not with tongues but with swords."

---

1 Equidem being (139) almost always used with the first person, should be changed into quidem when attached to se.
2 In turning this into O. O., inquit must not be used. You may either translate Tullius having turned to . . . spoke to this effect, 'Why did they fear,' &c., or omit the Verb of speaking and leave it to be understood: Tullius now turned . . . legion, 'Why did they fear?' &c.
EASY AND RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

I.—ON THE NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND PRONOUNS.¹

(The only Verbs required are those given in paragraphs 1—112.)

EXERCISE I.


EXERCISE II.


¹ These exercises may be heard vivâ voce, and the sentences are numbered that the pupil may be rapidly called to translate any sentence at the teacher's discretion.
1. To this very wise girl. 2. The two brothers of the same woman. 3. The largest part of the outer wall. 4. Of very slender legs. 5. The girl loves his two brothers; which-of-the two do you love most (maxime)? 6. The very-old soldier loves older wine. 7. The very contemptible (superl. of humilis) memory of that most unhappy day. 8. With which of these two cities? 9. To the same woman he gives three apples. 10. To Tullia alone he gives three hundred cherries. 11. To the other sea. 12. Of the same camp. 13. To one-man’s spurs, to another-man’s sword. 14. Of the younger soldiers. 15. By this most troublesome thirst. 16. By the older (61) soldier.

Exercise III.


1. Which of these two journeys do you praise? 2. To this very-tender maiden alone he gives a hundred oxen. 3. The boy is smaller than the largest of the men. 4. Wisdom frees him from anger. 5. To you he gives more gifts than to himself. 6. The memory of that very keen contest was more bitter to you than to him. 7. This was more agreeable to you than to any of his companions. 8. By patience he delivers himself from fever. 9. What poet is wiser than Homer? what poem better than his poems? 10. The former is wiser than the latter.

II.—On the Regular Verbs.

Exercise IV.—First Conjugation.


1 On the position of the Pronoun Adjective between an ordinary Adjective and Noun, see Vocabulary, this.
1. You will sing. 2. He will have been wounded. 3. Ye must build (imper.). 4. The city had been built. 5. Let us praise them. 6. The fields have been laid waste. 7. You will be chastised. 8. That he might be wounded. 9. That we might sing. 10. Do not doubt, O friend. 11. We shall have preserved the city. 12. I should have carried. 13. They would have been blamed. 14. Ye will not be loved. 15. That ye may take care. 16. We shall have preserved. 17. You had sung, O daughter. 18. Sing, O daughter. 19. Ye were being preserved. 20. Ye will be wounded.

Exercise V.—Second Conjugation.


Exercise VI.—Third Conjugation.


1. That they might rule. 2. You will be led. 3. He would have said these things. 4. You have piled up a mound, soldiers. 5. She has been led. 6. The mound has been piled up. 7. Be ye drawn-up, soldiers. 8. He had drawn together-foot-
soldiers. 9. What will you say, friends? 10. His glory has been diminished. 11. That we may bridge the river. 12. The river would have been bridged. 13. You were being drawn up, soldiers. 14. Do not say this. 15. Let us pile up a mound. 16. You had written a letter, my brother. 17. Do not write these letters, friends. 18. I shall be led. 19. They are being drawn up. 20. They would have been led. 21. Our hopes were diminished. 22. They will write.

Exercise VII.—Fourth Conjugation.


1. We had slept. 2. You will sleep. 3. That you may be punished, O citizens. 4. The girl had been clothed. 5. The boy will be guarded. 6. The camp would have been fortified. 7. That the boy might be instructed. 8. Let us guard the leader. 9. We shall clothe the boy. 10. The boy was being instructed. 11. That the tasks may be ended. 12. The boys must be instructed (imper.). 13. Nourish the boys. 14. We shall fortify the city. 15. That you may fortify the city, soldiers. 16. That you might sleep. 17. You were being instructed, boys. 18. You will have instructed the boys, most learned master. 19. The boys will have been instructed. 20. The boys will sleep. 22. They used-to-sleep (115). 23. You slept, boys.

III.—General Exercises.

Exercise VIII.

(Exercises VIII. to XI. refer to Par. 1—129; see also page 186.)

1. I will give a book to one of you. 2. Many of the children gave us flowers. 3. You and I have erred. 4. The girl is more like her father than her mother. 5. Let us hasten by night. 6. The soldiers are most worthy of punishment. 7. We led the army into the nearest city. 8. This work is not very easy. 9. The words of the unjust sailor are very base. 10. A hundred brave (men) are better than two hundred cowardly (men). 11. He was more worthy of punishment than you.

**Exercise IX.**

1. What have you done worthy of praise? 2. He is worse than his brother. 3. The keenest soldiers fought most bravely. 4. You journeyed for (i.e. made a journey of) two-days in a very rough country. 5. Neither of the fountains had very sweet water. 6. Which of the two girls loves her father more? 7. He is more like you than me. 8. Where is the book you gave me? 9. Do not say many-things. 10. All love themselves. 11. Do you say this?

**Exercise X.**

1. Very many say this. 2. You say the same. 3. He wounded me with a spear. 4. Let us walk six days. 5. His words are more pleasant to you than to any of your brothers. 6. The brave Balbus was leader of the whole (totus) army. 7. Both to you and to me he gave the same gifts. 8. No poet blames his own poems. 9. If he comes by night, we will depart in three hours. 10. To one of his two sons he gave a thousand oxen, to the other two thousand sheep. 11. Do not sleep, boy.
GENERAL EXERCISES.

Exercise XI.

(Exercises XI. to XIX. refer to Par. 1—295.)


Exercise XII.

1. There is no doubt that he pardoned the accused (man). 2. Cultivate learning that you may not be unlearned. 3. Not even Tullius will spare this city. 4. Let us ask her on what day she will come. 5. What prevented you from pleasing his father? 6. I will do my best to pardon him. 7. They took and burned the city (Par. 159). 8. The leaders gave orders to their men not to resist the enemy. 9. There was no doubt that the city had been taken by the tenth legion. 10. She was killed by poison, without-the-knowledge-of the king.

1. Extra urbem decem horas pugnatum est. 2. In eo eram ut Balbum vincerem. 3. Saepe me interrogaviisti utrum Romanus sim an Atheniensis. 4. Civibus pro patria fortiter pugnandum est. 5. Aut vincendum est aut servendum. 6. Oravi ducem ut captis parceret. 7. Interrogate hominem num coram iudice hoc dixerit. 8. Reo, haec neganti, mendacium graviter nocuit. 9. Dux suis imperavit ne acie cederent. 10. Ne tibi quidem rex ignoscet, si a Tullio stabis. 11. Quis nescit urbem incendi?
Exercise XIII.

1. What is pleasant to some is troublesome to others. 2. He built a house twenty feet high. 3. I asked him, O citizens, to come by night. 4. I asked which of you two said these things. 5. Did you say this to deceive us? 6. It is very difficult to make very long marches in winter. 7. The excellent physician Balbus gave you medicine to cure you. 8. The girl is even now more beautiful than her sister. 9. There is no doubt that he gave you more gifts than me. 10. By the fruitful harvest the hearts of the husbandmen were delighted. 11. He asked why the goats were larger than most of the sheep.

Exercise XIV.

1. Come here in haste, my son. 2. Is he very poor? 3. When were the Gauls conquered by Caesar? 4. Do you call me a citizen? 5. There is no doubt that he was created consul by the citizens. 6. At last the enemy, overcome by our men, fled to the camp. 7. Each of the two brothers pleased (placeo) himself alone. 8. Do not set-out from the city by night. 9. She is about-to-return to Asia. 10. The head of Hasdrubal was thrown into the camp. 11. You slept the whole night.

Exercise XV.

1. He sent a letter to his friend. 2. Give that woman the same book you gave me. 3. Do not declare war, O king. 4. When will you quench your thirst? 5. Have you ever used a golden axe? 6. I shall have given you, my son, three hundred denarii. 7. What you say, is true. 8. What is more faithful than a faithful dog? 9. There is no doubt that every good man resisted this law. 10. You will be no longer foolish but base, if, even now, you please yourself alone. 11. Do not stay.

Exercise XVI.

1. Some stood here, others there. 2. The disease did not hurt even one of the sheep. 3. On the fifth day you came to Egypt. 4. Being-about-to-set-out for Europe we shall send two messengers to Alexander. 5. You and I will pay attention to philosophy. 6. Who took the city (of) Corinth? 7. Mummius, who took Corinth, was very poor. 8. He came a-second-time into the forum. 9. What prevented him from walking in his brother's garden? 10. Ajax slew himself with the sword which he had received from Hector. 11. He is free from cares.
Exercise XVII.

1. This work is finished. 2. My son and I sent messengers to you. 3. My brother and sister are very happy. 4. There is no doubt that it is pleasant to conquer. 5. We ought to command (164); you ought to obey. 6. The city is being built; a great part of it is built already. 7. The small town (of) Corioli was taken (agrees with 'town') by Marcius, who was thence called Coriolanus. 8. Balbus and Tullius besought me to pardon both (of) them. 9. You praised both, you pleased neither. 10. Nothing prevents you from building a new bridge.

Exercise XVIII.


Exercise XIX.

1. Are you not weary of idleness? 2. He built walls twenty-five feet high. 3. Dionysius, driven from Syracuse, taught boys. 4. Why do you not confess that you repent of your wickedness? 5. He says that this ditch is twenty feet deep. 6. When will you come to see me? 7. No one pities the conquered. 8. He could have helped me, but he would not. 9. I can no longer bear these great insults. 10. I hear that he is becoming weaker. 11. Will you go to Rome or remain in Corinth? 12. Operam dabat libris scribendis.
180 EASY AND RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

1. To live in Rome seemed to me more pleasant than to live at Gabii. 2. Have you already, O foolish girls, forgotten these most easy verses? 3. Who ordered the fourth tribe to be present? 4. Having suffered so many evils, you ought to pity others. 5. The two boys, horrible to relate! attempted to murder their own father. 6. In three days you will become richer than his brother if your ship returns to Corinth. 7. You might have dined with your kind host; but you would dine at home. 8. I have come here to see-to the building of a bridge. 9. Who does not know that water, by often falling, hollows even the hardest stone?

EXERCISE XX.

(Exercises XX. to XXIX. refer to the whole of the book.)

1. Barbari erant proceris corporibus, promisso capillo. 2. Non opus est mihi tanta pecunia. 3. Virtutem maximi aestimate. 4. Die quarto aggerem jam decem pedes altum extruxerant. 5. His condicionibus pax ab utroqueduce facta est. 6. Respondit se non assis me facere. 7. Certum erat fundum grandis pecunia emptum fuisse. 8. Patriae amantissimus erat, patientissimus periculorum, suis contentus, alienarum divitiarum nunquam cupidus. 9. Respondit se nolle sua pretio emere. 10. Tu, cuius (299a) es sapientiae, intelliges quid his respondere oporteat. 11. Non est moris nostri quos praesentes landavimus eos absentes condemnare.

1. He was acquitted of bribery. 2. Why did you, O judges, condem the innocent Balbus to death? 3. He was endowed with a (see ‘a’) wonderful art of persuading. 4. By this road you will never come to Athens. 5. He sent a messenger to ask which of his two brothers lived at Gabii. 6. The girl replied that she was descended from royal parents. 7. Do you think that it is the mark of a philosopher to envy the wealth of others? 8. He was learned in the law, and very brave, but greedy of wealth. 9. Are you certain of this thing? 10. My barns are full of corn; I have much money at home.

EXERCISE XXI.

1. If any one had given me the book I would have read (it). 2. I feared he would be weary of the journey. 3. My father advises Balbus to consult his own interests. 4. It makes a great difference whether you live at Rome or at Carthage. 5. Whatever he had, he gave to all the poorest of the citizens. 6. Whatever you wish to say must be said at once. 2. It matters little whether we die to-day or to-morrow. 3. There is a certain pleasure in recollecting calamities. 4. What would you have replied if he had promised to give you money? 5. He is too deceitful for you to converse with. 6. He hastened to Athens by the most rapid marches possible. 7. He was on the point of dying on the fourth day before the taking of the city. 8. He is better than any of his brothers. 9. Two-days ago, we sent messengers to ascertain what prevented Balbus from coming to Corinth. 10. Ask him to come to see me as quickly as possible.

In this and the following Exercises, some idioms are introduced that are not given in the previous part of the book: but they will be found explained in the Vocabularies.
**Exercise XXIII.**


**Exercise XXIV.**

1. It is said that you burned this temple, Tullius. 2. Do not pardon that wicked soldier. 3. The brave general Balbus opposed four thousand Scythians. 4. Having gained possession of our gold, O Persians, do you now wish to despoil us of our liberty? 5. In the battle of Cannae there fell many thousand Roman knights. 6. Ariovistus was answered in these words by Caesar. 7. Our men, under Labienus, laid waste the greatest part of the province, as far as the Alps. 8. Who was there that did not hate you, a man devoid of all kindness and courtesy? 9. Not even the older men were spared by the conquerors. 10. They threatened the man with death that they might the more easily ascertain the truth.

1. Who founded the city of Carthage? 2. He was asked his opinion by Tullius, but answered nothing. 3. By this time the wall (murus) and the citadel had been taken by our men. 4. Do you suppose that two hundred can resist two
thousand? 5. I do not know whether she will agree with you. 6. The consul was the first who was asked his opinion. 7. There is no doubt that he bought the horse at a very high price. 8. I was informed of his arrival the-day-before he came to Corioli. 9. Will any one promise to go with him? 10. I fear that we shall arrive at Athens (too) late unless we hasten by forced marches.

**Exercise XXV.**


1. The boy had concealed (celo) the fact from his father by a falsehood. 2. Haring burnt the village, the cohort set out for the nearest river (amnis). 3. You ought to have consulted the interests of each of your two sisters. 4. After he had conquered the Scythians, the general sent ambassadors to offer peace. 5. I am very desirous of hearing this story, if it is not troublesome to you. 6. Haring accused others of bribery, he was himself condemned on the same charge. 7. If you ever come to Gabii, I hope you will stay with me for a few days. 8. There were some who said that it mattered little what Tullius decided. 9. There is no doubt that all the best of the citizens resisted this law. 10. This field was valued at a high rate, but bought by me for a small price.

**Exercise XXVI.**

1. Nunc quod agitur agamus; agitur autem liberine vivamus² an obeamus. 2. Quis negat Socratem parentem philosophiae jure dici posse? 3. Vir ille maximus cum a ceteris scriptoribus

¹ The redundant illē (sometimes is) is commonly found before quidem when a concession is made, but immediately qualified, 'Tuus dolor humanus is quidem, sed tamen moderandus; Yours is a grief natural to man, I admit, but one which should be modified.'

² Not here whether we live, but whether we are to live.
In Xenophon we read a good deal (i.e. many things) about the illustrious general Agesilaus. 2. It concerns the whole country that Catiline should perish. 3. Having bound yourselves by an oath, do you now say that you did not promise to help him? 4. It is said that Labienus was at that time in command of thirty thousand soldiers. 5. It is said that Venus, the most beautiful of the goddesses, married Vulcan. 6. In the reign of Tullius the learned poet Balbus wrote very good poems. 7. I asked him why he did not do his duty to (trans. satisfy) his country. 8. Do not teach young boys philosophy. 9. I do not care a farthing for any of you. 10. Ask the boy whether Cyrus conquered the Scythians.

EXERCISE XXVII.


1. He was answered by Tullius, but not even Tullius could excuse the deed. 2. Before he bound the captives he compelled them to swear not to escape. 3. Do you doubt, O citizens, what is

---

1 For "young" write "younger," and remember never to use "juvenis" as an Adjective.
2 Supply "contigėrit." The antecedent of "quod" is "id," nom. to "contigit."
to be done? 4. Tell me, (my) boy, for how much he sold this farm. 5. For the same price as Tullius sold it to me. 6. We should have written much better verses if time had not failed us. 7. Have you not sworn to obey this law? 8. Homer and Virgil are read by all; the latter imitated the former. 9. The work, I say (see say), is quite finished. 10. The boys used no longer to be taught music by their father.

**Exercise XXVIII.**


1. After he had remained two months in the country he set out for the city. 2. Two cohorts came as a reinforcement for the besieged citizens. 3. You ought not to have promised to come before the third day. 4. She replied that she was born of noble but very poor parents. 5. This field cost me more than that meadow. 6. In the middle of the night we rose up terrified by the sound of robbers. 7. Having taken the city the enemy slew the citizens, and no one was spared. 8. You ought to have sent messengers three or four times to the city. 9. I have no need of excuse, for I am worthy of praise. 10. It is said that the Cyclopes had only one eye in the middle of their forehead.

**Exercise XXIX.**

1. Auctore Balbo, carissimo amicorum, juvenis ex Italia cessit. 2. Puella multo, quam frater peritior erat canendi. 3. Responderunt homines pauperrimi non jam pares se esse solvendo. 4. Admonendus es foederis; cuius tu jam fere oblitus es. 5. Dic mihi Tulliaeae an sorori eius promiseris te anulum daturum esse. 6. Nisi te itineris taeduisset, jampridem domum perventum fuisset. 7. Olim lupus, cuius in faucibus os inhaeserat, mercede conduxit gruem qui id
186 EASY AND RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.


1. Pallas was worshipped by the Athenians with the highest honours. 2. It is reported that the girl died of grief (trans. on account of grief). 3. By my advice you will set out for Corinth in the spring. 4. Who says that Jupiter did not marry Juno? 5. Can any one deny that you poured poison into my cup? 6. In my judgment, it is less disgraceful to dance in the middle of the forum than to lie. 7. The speech was too long for you to learn in three days. 8. It is said that the Druids were in great honour among the Britons. 9. Did you come here hoping to see her? 10. The foolish Balbus replied that he had once been more learned than any of his brothers.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES ON THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

(Following Exercise XXXII., p. 53.)

EXERCISE XXXII. A.

1. Do you blame him who is praised by your brother? 2. Many-things are troublesome to him who loves pleasure very greatly. 3. No one loves Tullia, who was always unmindful of others and ignorant of pity. 4. Do you who chastise the unjust, praise unjust-things? 5. The Belgians, who were bordering on our land, were very troublesome to us. 6. He is always mindful of his sister, who is both very good and very beautiful. 7. We do not always love most-of-all those to whom we give the largest gifts. 8. The fruits you give me are not good. 9. The queen is overcome by pity, of which (trans. of which thing) they are ignorant. 10. His son takes-care-of the pigs, of which he has very-many (trans. which he has very-many).

EXERCISE XXXII. B.

1. Who is that-fellow whose threats terrify you? 2. For-the-whole-of that winter (31), which was very cold, the husbandmen were ignorant of the cause of the disease. 3. To us, who give many gifts to the poor, your words are disagreeable. 4. To the butterfly, who lives (only) a few hours, life is very pleasant. 5. Our line of battle, which was very long, is-being-overcome by the enemy. 6. Those whom virtue delights, vices do not

Exercise XXXII. C.

1. Do you, O sisters, who blame Tullius, praise his brother? 2. To what woman are you giving this? 3. These fountains, which were in his garden, were very agreeable to us during that whole summer. 4. The frost, which was destructive to the tall tree, was more pleasing than heat to the strong soldier. 5. This delay, which is unworthy of you and your brother, is destructive to the army. 6. Whose threats terrify you? 7. During-the-whole-of this year, you, who blame the vices of Tullius, are praising the same-things in Balbus. 8. I praise the same-things as (i.e. which) you (praise). 9. The same woman who praises herself blames her friends. 10. Of those (34) who were in the garden ten (were) boys, four were old-men.
APPENDIX I.

IRREGULAR VERBS IN THE ORDER OF THEIR FORMATION.¹

When a Compound Verb is formed from a Simple Verb and a Preposition or other Prefix, the a or e of the Simple Verb is changed, in the Compound Verb, into:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>PRESENT.</th>
<th>PERFECT.</th>
<th>SUPINE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Āgo</td>
<td>rēdígo</td>
<td>rēdēgi</td>
<td>rēdactum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cādo</td>
<td>occīdo</td>
<td>occīdi</td>
<td>occāsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rāpio</td>
<td>ērípio</td>
<td>ērípui</td>
<td>ēreptum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fācio</td>
<td>conficiō</td>
<td>confecī</td>
<td>confessum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sālio</td>
<td>prōstlīo</td>
<td>prōstlīui</td>
<td>prōslūtim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fāteor</td>
<td>confīteor</td>
<td>sustīneoi</td>
<td>sustentum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tēneo</td>
<td>sustīne</td>
<td>sustīnui</td>
<td>elect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lēgo</td>
<td>ēlīgo</td>
<td>ēlēgi</td>
<td>ēlect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ėgeo</td>
<td>indīgeo</td>
<td>indīgui</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

reduce  
die  
snatch  
finish  
spring forth  
confess  
sustain  
select ²  
need

In the following lists all the Compounds of the above Simple Verbs, and of scando, [pleo], tango, [specio], cedo, caedo, jacio, emo, &c., will not be given, as they follow the forms of the Simple Verbs.

Note that when the Simple Verb has a reduplicated Perfect of three syllables, pēpūli, cēcīdi, tētīgi, cēcīni, the Perfect of the Compound Verb often rejects a syllable, ex-pūli, con-cīdi, con-tīgi, con-cīnui, &c.: but there are exceptions to this rule, viz. the compounds of disco, posco, -dēre, and sometimes of curro.

¹ The order of the Public School Grammar is adopted in this list.
² But note that three compounds of lēgo, viz., nēglēgo, intellēgo, and diligo, make the perfects neglexi, intellexi, dilexi.
IRREGULAR VERBS

FIRST CONJUGATION.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dare</td>
<td>dēdi</td>
<td>dātum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stare</td>
<td>stēti</td>
<td>[stātum]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Īvāre</td>
<td>īvi</td>
<td>ītum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lāvāre</td>
<td>lāvi</td>
<td>lōtum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frīcāre</td>
<td>frīcui</td>
<td>frictum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sečāre</td>
<td>sēcui</td>
<td>sectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crepāre</td>
<td>crēpui</td>
<td>crēptum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cubāre</td>
<td>cubui</td>
<td>cubītum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dōmāre</td>
<td>dōmui</td>
<td>dōmitum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sōnāre</td>
<td>sōnui</td>
<td>sōnitum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tōnāre</td>
<td>tōnui</td>
<td>tōnitum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vētāre</td>
<td>vētui</td>
<td>vēttum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plīcāre</td>
<td>plīcāvi (-ui)</td>
<td>plīcitum (-ātum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mīcāre</td>
<td>mīcui (-āvi)</td>
<td>[-mīcātum]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SECOND CONJUGATION.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mord-ere</td>
<td>mōmordi</td>
<td>inorsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pend-ere</td>
<td>pēpendi</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spond-ere</td>
<td>spōpondi</td>
<td>sponsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tond-ere</td>
<td>tōtondi</td>
<td>tonsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Čāv-ere</td>
<td>căvi</td>
<td>cantum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fāv-ere</td>
<td>fāvi</td>
<td>fautum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fōv-ere</td>
<td>fōvi</td>
<td>fōtum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mōv-ere</td>
<td>mōvi</td>
<td>mōtum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Verbs that may be omitted by beginners are marked thus *.  
2 A bracket denotes that the form, although correct according to the rules of the language, seldom or never occurs in Latin literature. This is the case with many Supines commonly given in Latin Grammars. In many cases, a Participle is found where there is no Supine. Thus haesum is not found, but haesūrās is; there is no căritum, but there is căritūrūs; no quitum, but quītus; no fūgitum, but fūgitūrūs. The Supine is in fact a comparatively rare form in all verbs, and it is to be regretted that usage has selected it as a typical part of a Latin Verb to be committed to memory. The Perf. Passive Participle would be preferable.  
Note also that the Fut. Participle often does not follow the Supine, e.g. sectum but sēcātūrūs, sōnitum but sōnātūrūs, &c.  
3 In classical prose, *sup. lāvātum*, *perf. part. lāutus*.  


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>1st Conjugation</th>
<th>2nd Conjugation</th>
<th>3rd Conjugation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vōv-ēre</td>
<td>vövi</td>
<td>voitum</td>
<td>vow</td>
<td>quake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pāv-ēre</td>
<td>pāvi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sēd-ēre</td>
<td>sēdi</td>
<td>sessum</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vīd-ēre</td>
<td>vīdi</td>
<td>visum</td>
<td>see</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prand-ēre</td>
<td>prandi</td>
<td>pransum</td>
<td>dine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cônv-ēre</td>
<td>[cōnivi or -nixi]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>blink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strīd-ēre</td>
<td>strīdi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>creak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ferv-ēre</td>
<td>ferbui or servi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>boil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dēl-ēre</td>
<td>dēlesi</td>
<td>dēluentum</td>
<td>blot out</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fl-ēre</td>
<td>flēvi</td>
<td>flētum</td>
<td>weep</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N-ēre</td>
<td>nēvi</td>
<td>nētum</td>
<td>spin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[-Plēre]</td>
<td>[-plēvi]</td>
<td>[-plētum]</td>
<td>fill</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Vi-ēre</td>
<td>[viēvi]</td>
<td>viētum</td>
<td>bind with twigs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ci-ēre</td>
<td>cīvi</td>
<td>cītum</td>
<td>stir up&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-Ōlēre</td>
<td>[-ōlēvi]</td>
<td>[ōlītum]</td>
<td>grow, &amp;c.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[Su-ēre]</td>
<td>suevi</td>
<td>suetum</td>
<td>be wont</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arc-ēre</td>
<td>arcui</td>
<td></td>
<td>ward off</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coerc-ēre</td>
<td>coercui</td>
<td>coercitum</td>
<td>restrain</td>
<td>exercise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exerc-ēre</td>
<td>exercui</td>
<td>exercitum</td>
<td>be without, be in want of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cār-ēre</td>
<td>cārui</td>
<td>[cārtum]</td>
<td></td>
<td>ove&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dēb-ēre</td>
<td>débui</td>
<td>débitum</td>
<td>gripe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dōl-ēre</td>
<td>dōlui</td>
<td>[dōlitum]</td>
<td>have</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hāb-ēre</td>
<td>hābui</td>
<td>hābitum</td>
<td>lie</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jāc-ēre</td>
<td>jācui</td>
<td>[jāctum]</td>
<td>be bid for</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lic-ēre</td>
<td>licui</td>
<td>licitum</td>
<td>deserve, earn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mēr-ēre</td>
<td>mērui</td>
<td>mēritum</td>
<td>advise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mōn-ēre</td>
<td>mōnui</td>
<td>mōnitum</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nōc-ēre</td>
<td>nōcui</td>
<td>nōcitum</td>
<td>appear, obey</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pār-ēre</td>
<td>pārui</td>
<td>[pāritum]</td>
<td>please</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plāc-ēre</td>
<td>plācui</td>
<td>plācitum</td>
<td>afford</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Praeb-ēre</td>
<td>praebui</td>
<td>praebitum</td>
<td>affright</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terr-ēre</td>
<td>terrui</td>
<td>territum</td>
<td>be silent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tāc-ēre</td>
<td>tācui</td>
<td>tācitum</td>
<td>be strong, be well</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vāl-ēre</td>
<td>vālui</td>
<td>[vāltum]</td>
<td>teach</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dōc-ēre</td>
<td>dōcui</td>
<td>dōctum</td>
<td>mingle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mise-ēre</td>
<td>miscui</td>
<td>{mistum}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>1</sup> The primitive form is cio, cire (found in the compounds accio, excio).
<sup>2</sup> This is properly a compound of hādeo; but some of the less obvious compounds of verbs are included in this list.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>First Conjugation</th>
<th>Second Conjugation</th>
<th>Third Conjugation</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tēn-ēre</td>
<td>tēnui</td>
<td>tentum</td>
<td>hold</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torr-ēre</td>
<td>torruui</td>
<td>tosum</td>
<td>scorche</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cens-ēre</td>
<td>censui</td>
<td>censum</td>
<td>value, vote</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ėg-ēre</td>
<td>ėgui</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>want</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>[Min-ēre]</em></td>
<td>[-mīnui]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>put</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ol-ēre</td>
<td>ālui</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>smell</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sorb-ēre</td>
<td>sorbui</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>suck up</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stūd-ēre</td>
<td>stūdui</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>study</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aug-ēre</td>
<td>auxi</td>
<td>auctum</td>
<td>increase (trans.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indulg-ēre</td>
<td>indulsi</td>
<td>indultum</td>
<td>indulge</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mulg-ēre</td>
<td>mulsi</td>
<td>[mulctum]</td>
<td>milk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torqu-ēre</td>
<td>torsi</td>
<td>tortum</td>
<td>twist</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lūg-ēre</td>
<td>luxi</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>mourn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mulcēre</td>
<td>mulsi</td>
<td>mulsum</td>
<td>soothe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tergēre</td>
<td>tersi</td>
<td>-tersum</td>
<td>wipe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ardēre</td>
<td>arsi</td>
<td>arsum</td>
<td>take fire</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rūdēre</td>
<td>risi</td>
<td>risum</td>
<td>laugh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suādēre</td>
<td>suāsi</td>
<td>suāsum</td>
<td>persuade</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lūbēre</td>
<td>iussi</td>
<td>iussum</td>
<td>command</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mānōre</td>
<td>mansi</td>
<td>mansum</td>
<td>remain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haerēre</td>
<td>haesi</td>
<td>[haesum]</td>
<td>stick</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Algēre</td>
<td>alsi</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>be cold</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fulgēre</td>
<td>fulsi</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>glitter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Tuřg-ēre</em></td>
<td>tursi</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>swell</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urg-ēre</td>
<td>ursi</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>urge</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Frigēre</em></td>
<td>[-frīxi]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>be cold</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lucēre</td>
<td>luxi</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>shine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aud-ēre</td>
<td>ausus sum</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>dare</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gaud-ēre</td>
<td>gavisus sum</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>rejoice</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sōl-ēre</td>
<td>sōlītus sum</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>be wont</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Līc-ēri</td>
<td>līcītus</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>bid for</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mēr-ēri</td>
<td>mēritus</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>deserve</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mīser-ēri</td>
<td>mīserītus</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>pity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tu-ēri</td>
<td>tuītus</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>vice, protect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vēr-ēri</td>
<td>vērtus</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>fear, respect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R-ēri</td>
<td>rātus</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>think</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fāt-ēri</td>
<td>fassus</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>confess</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mēd-ēri</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>heal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Several Verbs that have an Adjective in Idus reject the Supine, e.g. stūpeo, āveo, fōreo; and some that have no such Adjective, as lāteo.
### FOURTH CONJUGATION.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sépēl-ire</th>
<th>sēpēliv</th>
<th>sēpultum</th>
<th>bury</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Êre (eo)</td>
<td>ëvi</td>
<td>ëtum</td>
<td>go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quire (queo)</td>
<td>quiviv</td>
<td>quítum</td>
<td>be able</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sāl-ire</td>
<td>sālui</td>
<td>(saltum)</td>
<td>leap, dance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Àpēr-ire</td>
<td>ápērui</td>
<td>ápertura</td>
<td>open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Òpēr-ire</td>
<td>ópērui</td>
<td>ópertura</td>
<td>cover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compēr-ire</td>
<td>compēri</td>
<td>compertum</td>
<td>find</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repēr-ire</td>
<td>repēri</td>
<td>répertum</td>
<td>discover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vēn-ire</td>
<td>vēni</td>
<td>ventum</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Àmïc-ire</td>
<td>àmixi &amp; -ïcui</td>
<td>àmistum</td>
<td>clothe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farc-ire</td>
<td>farsi</td>
<td>fartum</td>
<td>stuff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fulc-ire</td>
<td>fulsi</td>
<td>fultum</td>
<td>prop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sanc-ire</td>
<td>sanxi</td>
<td>sanctum</td>
<td>consecrate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarc-ire</td>
<td>sarsi</td>
<td>sartum</td>
<td>mend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vinc-ire</td>
<td>vinci</td>
<td>vinctum</td>
<td>bind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saep-ire</td>
<td>saepsi</td>
<td>saepatum</td>
<td>hedge in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haur-ire</td>
<td>hausi</td>
<td>haustum</td>
<td>drain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Rauc-ire</em></td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>be hoarse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sent-ire</th>
<th>sensi</th>
<th>sensum</th>
<th>feel²</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Expēr-iri</td>
<td>expertus</td>
<td>experience</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oppēr-iri</td>
<td>oppertus</td>
<td>wait for</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Or-iri</td>
<td>ortus</td>
<td>arise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assent-iri</td>
<td>assensus</td>
<td>agree</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mët-iri</td>
<td>mensus</td>
<td>measure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ord-iri</td>
<td>orsus</td>
<td>begin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### THIRD CONJUGATION.

| Disc-ère³ | dīdūci | — | learn |
| Posc-ère  | pōposci | — | demand |
| Pa-n-g-ère⁴ | pēpīgī | pactum | fasten, covenant |

---

¹ There are also found rausūrus and ir-rausērit; *denotes rare occurrence.

² Some Verbs, such as gestio, I am eager, and others which express only passions, e.g. singultio, I sob, have neither Perfect nor Supine.

³ Compounds of Verbs with Reduplicated Perfect drop Repduplication, except those of disco, posco, sisto, -dēre, and sometimes of curro.

⁴ The ñ in this and following Verbs is not a part of the root. The forms pēpīgī, pactum, are reserved for the metaph. meaning, covenant; for the lit. meaning, the forms in use are pēgī or pānxi, and pāntum.
### IRREGULAR VERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Root</th>
<th>Target</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pu-n-g-ére</td>
<td>pūpūgi</td>
<td>punctum</td>
<td>prick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ta-n-g-ére</td>
<td>tētīgi</td>
<td>factum</td>
<td>touch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sist-ére</td>
<td>-stīti</td>
<td>-stītum</td>
<td>stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[-d-ére]</td>
<td>[-dīdi]</td>
<td>[-dītum]</td>
<td>put, give</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tend-ére</td>
<td>tētendi</td>
<td>tentum</td>
<td>stretch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cān-ére</td>
<td>ĉēĉīni</td>
<td>cantum</td>
<td>sing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pār-ére</td>
<td>pēpēri</td>
<td>partum</td>
<td>bring forth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toll-ére</td>
<td>sustūli</td>
<td>sublātum</td>
<td>take up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parc-ére</td>
<td>pēperci</td>
<td>parsum</td>
<td>spare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ĉād-ére</td>
<td>ĉēĉīdi</td>
<td>câsum</td>
<td>fall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caed-ére</td>
<td>ĉēĉīdi</td>
<td>caesum</td>
<td>cut, beat, kill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pend-ére</td>
<td>pēpendi</td>
<td>pensum</td>
<td>weigh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tu-n-d-ére</td>
<td>(tūtūdi)</td>
<td>tūsum</td>
<td>thump, pound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curr-ére</td>
<td>ĉūcurri</td>
<td>cursum</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fall-ére</td>
<td>fēselli</td>
<td>falsum</td>
<td>deceive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pell-ére</td>
<td>pēpūli</td>
<td>pulsum</td>
<td>drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[-Cell-ére]</td>
<td>[ĉēĉūli]</td>
<td>[-culsum]</td>
<td>push</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Notes

1. Only found in Compounds.
2. The form -lexi is found only in di-līgo, neg-lēgo, intel-lēgo.
3. This form is non-classical.
| Fi-n-d-ēre  | fidi       | fissum      | cleave |
| Sci-n-d-ēre | scidī      | scissum     | cut    |
| Vert-ēre   | verti      | versum      | turn   |
| Ćūd-ēre    | cūdī       | ĉūsum       | hammer |
| [-Fend-ēre] | [-fendi]   | [-fensum]   | strike |
| Mand-ēre   | mandī       | mansum      | chew   |
| Pand-ēre   | pandī       | passum      | spread |
| Prehend-ēre | prehendi   | prehensum   | take, grasp |
| Scand-ēre  | -scandi    | -scansum    | climb |
| Sid-ēre    | sīdī¹      | —           | settle |
| Lamb-ēre   | [lambi]²    | [lambītum]  | lick   |
| Verr-ēre   | verri      | versum      | sweep  |
| Vell-ēre   | {velli}³    | vulsum      | rend, pluck |
| *Psall-ēre | psallī      | —           | play (chords) |
| Vis-ēre    | visī       | —           | visit  |
| Fidere     | fisus sum  | —           | trust  |
| Compsc-ēre | compescui  | —           | restrain |
| Rāp-ēre (i-o) | rapui      | raptum      | seize  |
| Al-ēre     | ālui       | altum       | nourish |
| Cōl-ēre    | cōlui      | cultum      | till   |
| Consūl-ēre | consūlui   | consultum   | consult |
| Occūl-ēre  | occūlui    | occultum    | hide   |
| Sēr-ēre    | sērui      | sērtum      | join together |
| *Pins-ēre  | pinsui     | pistum⁴     | pound  |
| Tex-ēre    | texui      | textum      | weave  |
| *Deps-ēre  | depsui     | —           | knead, tan |

1 More commonly, sēdī, from sēdeo.
2 The Perf. and Sup. are only found in Priscian.
3 Vulsi is the rarer of the two forms.
4 There are also pinsi, pinsum, and pinsītum.
5 These forms are found in Priscian only, who does not assign them to any authors.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IRREGULAR VERBS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Velle (vōlo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nole (nōlo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malle (mālo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mēt-ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Frend-ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Līn-ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sīn-ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cern-ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spern-ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stern-ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sēr-ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cresc-ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quiesc-ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sueesc-ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(G)nosc-ēre²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pasc-ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cūp-ēre (i-o)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pēt-ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quaer-ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Rūd-ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sāp-ēre (i-o)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tēr-ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arcess-ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incess-ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cāpess-ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fācess-ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lācess-ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dic-ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dūc-ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[-Lāc-ēre (i-o)⁵</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[-Spēc-ēre (i-o)⁶</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coqu-ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cing-ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fing-ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Flig-ēre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Frendui is not found; frendēre is found.
² Nosco has dropped g which reappears in agnosco, agnōvi, agnītum; cognosco, cognōvi, cognītum; ignosco, ignōvi: Adj. ignūtus.
³ Rūdivi is only in Apuleius; rūditum, nowhere.
⁴ But dēspio, dēspui. Augustinian has sāpui.
⁵ Compare al-līcio, il-līcio, pel-līcio, pro-līcio, which make -lexi, -lectum. But ĕfficio makes ēlicui, ēlicitum.
⁶ Compare (circum- con- de- di- in- per- pro- re-)-spicio -spexi -spectum. So aspicio, suspicio.
| Frig-ëre | frixi | frictum | roast, fry |
| Jung-ëre | junxi | junctum | join |
| *Ling-ëre | [-linxi] | [-lnctum] | lick |
| *Mung-ëre | [-munxi] | [-munctum] | wipe |
| Ping-ëre | pinxi | pictum | paint |
| Plang-ëre | planxi | planctum | beat |
| Rëg-ëre | rexi | rectum | rule |
| String-ëre | strixii | strictum | bind |
| Sûg-ëre | suxi | suctum | suck |
| Tég-ëre | texi | tectum | cover |
| *Stingu-ëre | [-stinxi] | [-stinctum] | — |
| Tingu-ëre | tinxi | tinctum | stain |
| Ungu-ëre | unxi | unctum | anoint |
| Ningu-ëre | nixi | — | snow |
| Ang-ëre | [anxi] | [anctum] | squeeze |
| *[Clang-ëre] | — | tractum | rattle |
| Trâh-ëre | traxi | vectum | draw |
| Vêh-ëre | vexi | victum | carry |
| Vîv-ëre | vixi | structum | live |
| Stru-ëre | struxi | fixum | pile |
| Fig-ëre | fixi | fluxum | fix |
| Flu-ëre | fluxi | mersum | flow |
| Merg-ëre | mersi | sparsum | drown |
| Sparg-ëre | sparsi | tersum | sprinkle |
| Terg-ëre | tersi | — | wipe |
| Flect-ëre | flexi | flexum | bend |
| Nect-ëre | {nexi} | nexum | twine |
| Pect-ëre | {nexu} | pexum | comb |
| Plect-ëre | — | [-plexum] | {plait} |
| Mitt-ëre | misi | missum | send |
| Quât-ëre (i-o) | — | quassum | shake |
| Cêd-ëre | cessi | cessum | yield |
| Claud-ëre | clausi | clausum | shut |
| Divid-ëre | divisi | divisum | divide |
| Laed-ëre | laesi | laesum | hurt |
| Lâd-ëre | lüsi | lûsum | play |

1 Compare arrîgo, corrîgo, dirîgo; (e- per- )-rigo -rexî -rectum. Also pergo, perrexî, perrectum; surgo, rîse, surrexî, surrectum, with its compounds; (as con- ex- in- re-)-surg -surrexî -surrectum.
2 Priscian mentions these forms, but no authorities for them.
3 Compare conspergo, dispergo; (ad- in- re-)-spergo -spersî -spersum.
4 Compare (con- dis- ex- in- per-)-cûtio -cussî -cussum. So réper- cûtio.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plaud-ĕre</td>
<td>plausi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Râd-ĕre</td>
<td>râsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rôd-ĕre</td>
<td>rôsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trâd-ĕre</td>
<td>trüsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vâd-ĕre</td>
<td>[-vâsi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carp-ĕre</td>
<td>carpsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Clép-ĕre</td>
<td>clepsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{ Rép-ĕre</td>
<td>repsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{ Serp-ĕre</td>
<td>serpsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{ Scalp-ĕre</td>
<td>scalpsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{ Sculp-ĕre</td>
<td>sculpsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Glâb-ĕre</td>
<td>[glâpsi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nûb-ĕre</td>
<td>nupsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scrib-ĕre</td>
<td>scripsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cóm-ĕre</td>
<td>compsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dêm-ĕre</td>
<td>dempsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prôm-ĕre</td>
<td>prompsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sûm-ĕre</td>
<td>sumpsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temn-ĕre</td>
<td>tempsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prêm-ĕre(^1)</td>
<td>pressi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gôr-ĕre</td>
<td>gessi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ûr-ĕre</td>
<td>ussi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ācu-ĕre</td>
<td>ācu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Argu-ĕre</td>
<td>argui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exu-ĕre</td>
<td>exui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indu-ĕre</td>
<td>indui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imbu-ĕre</td>
<td>imbu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lu-ĕre</td>
<td>lui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mîn-ĕre</td>
<td>mînui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nu-ĕre</td>
<td>nui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spu-ĕre</td>
<td>spui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stâtu-ĕre</td>
<td>stâtu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sternu-ĕre</td>
<td>sternui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Su-ĕre</td>
<td>sui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trîbu-ĕre</td>
<td>tribui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solv-ĕre</td>
<td>solvi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volv-ĕre</td>
<td>volvi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) Compare imprîmo, supprîmo; (com- de- ex- op- re-)prîmo -pressi -pressum.

\(^2\) No Supine is found; but the fut. part. luîtûrûs points to luîtûm as Supine; and abnuitûrûs to nuîtûm for nuo.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ru-ěre</th>
<th>rui</th>
<th>rūtum (rūtum)</th>
<th>rush</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*Batu-ěre</td>
<td>batui</td>
<td></td>
<td>beat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*-Gru-ěre</td>
<td>-grui</td>
<td></td>
<td>cry like a crane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mětu-ěre</td>
<td>mětui</td>
<td></td>
<td>fear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plu-ěre</td>
<td>plui or plůvi</td>
<td></td>
<td>rain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fung-i</strong></td>
<td>functus</td>
<td></td>
<td>perform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nit-i</strong></td>
<td>nisus (nixus)</td>
<td></td>
<td>strive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plect-i</strong></td>
<td>[-plexus]</td>
<td></td>
<td>twine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pāt-i (i-or)</strong></td>
<td>passus</td>
<td></td>
<td>suffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Úti</strong></td>
<td>āsus</td>
<td></td>
<td>use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Grād-i (i-or)</strong></td>
<td>gressus</td>
<td></td>
<td>step</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lāb-i</strong></td>
<td>lapsus</td>
<td></td>
<td>glide, fall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mör-i (i-or)</strong></td>
<td>mortuus</td>
<td></td>
<td>die</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Quēr-i</strong></td>
<td>questus</td>
<td></td>
<td>complain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fru-i</strong></td>
<td>fruītus</td>
<td></td>
<td>enjoy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lōqu-i</strong></td>
<td>locūtus</td>
<td></td>
<td>speak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sēqu-i</strong></td>
<td>secūtus</td>
<td></td>
<td>follow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apisc-i</strong></td>
<td>aptus</td>
<td></td>
<td>obtain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[-Mēnisc-i]²</td>
<td>[-mentus]</td>
<td></td>
<td>have in mind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Expergisc-i</strong></td>
<td>experrectus</td>
<td></td>
<td>wake up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fātisc-i</strong></td>
<td>fessus</td>
<td></td>
<td>be weary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>(g)nasc-i</strong></td>
<td>(g)nātus</td>
<td></td>
<td>be born</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Irasc-i</strong></td>
<td>irātus</td>
<td></td>
<td>be angry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nancisc-i</strong></td>
<td>nactus or nanctus</td>
<td></td>
<td>find</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Oblivisc-i</strong></td>
<td>oblitus</td>
<td></td>
<td>forget</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pācisc-i</strong></td>
<td>pactus</td>
<td></td>
<td>bargain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Prōficisc-i</strong></td>
<td>prōfectus</td>
<td></td>
<td>set out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ulcisc-i</strong></td>
<td>ultus</td>
<td></td>
<td>avenge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vesc-i</strong></td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
<td>feed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Līqu-i</strong></td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
<td>melt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ring-i</strong></td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
<td>grin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Compare com-mǐniscor, -mentus, 3; ré-mǐniscor, 3.
## APPENDIX II.

**IRREGULAR VERBS,**

**WITH MANY OF THEIR MORE IMPORTANT COMPOUNDS.**

*(Alphabetically arranged.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Supplementary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abdo -ère</td>
<td>abdīdi</td>
<td>abdītum</td>
<td>hide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ābigo -ère</td>
<td>ābēgi</td>
<td>ābactum</td>
<td>drive away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ā bóleo -ère</td>
<td>ābōlēvi</td>
<td>ābōlītum</td>
<td>destroy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A brīpīo -ère</td>
<td>abrīpūi</td>
<td>abreptum</td>
<td>snatch away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accendo -ère</td>
<td>accendi</td>
<td>accensum</td>
<td>set on fire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accumbo -ère</td>
<td>accūbui</td>
<td>accūbitum</td>
<td>recline at table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accurro -ère</td>
<td>accūcurri and accursum</td>
<td></td>
<td>run up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acquīro -ère</td>
<td>acquisīvi</td>
<td>acquisītum</td>
<td>acquire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Addo -ère</td>
<td>addīdi</td>
<td>addītum</td>
<td>add</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ādeo -ître</td>
<td>ādīi</td>
<td>ādītum</td>
<td>go to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adīmo -ère</td>
<td>āđēmī</td>
<td>āđemptum</td>
<td>take away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjūvo -āre</td>
<td>adjūvi</td>
<td>adjūtum</td>
<td>help</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Āđōleo -ère</td>
<td>ādōlūi</td>
<td>ādultum</td>
<td>to honour in worship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Āđōlesco -ère</td>
<td>ādōlēvi</td>
<td>ādultum</td>
<td>grow up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agnosco -ère</td>
<td>agnōvi</td>
<td>agrītum</td>
<td>recognize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ago -ère</td>
<td>ēgi</td>
<td>actum</td>
<td>do, act, drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Algeo -ère</td>
<td>āsi</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>be cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allēcio -ère</td>
<td>allexi</td>
<td>allectum</td>
<td>entice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ālo -ère</td>
<td>ālui</td>
<td>altum²</td>
<td>feed, nourish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amīcio -ître</td>
<td>[āmīcui &amp; -ixi]</td>
<td>āmīctum</td>
<td>clothe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Āmitto -ère</td>
<td>āmīsi</td>
<td>āmissum</td>
<td>lose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amplector -i</td>
<td>amplexus (sum)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>embrace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angeo -ère</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>squeeze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anquīro -ère</td>
<td>anquīsīvi</td>
<td>anquīsītum</td>
<td>examine into</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antecello -ère</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>surpass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Āpērio -ère</td>
<td>āpērūi</td>
<td>āpertum</td>
<td>open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appello ³ -ère</td>
<td>appūli</td>
<td>appulsūm</td>
<td>put into shore</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

1. The object of this list is to test the memory of the pupil. Looking at the first column, and covering the other columns with his hand, he can repeat the Perfects and Supines without having the guidance which is necessarily furnished by the grouping in List I.

2. Altum was introduced in the post-Augustan age, possibly to distinguish it from the adj. altus high.

3. Distinguish this word from appello, appellāre, -āvi, -ātum, call.
IRREGULAR VERBS, WITH COMPOUNDS.

Applico -āre aplicui and aplicētum and
  applicāvi applicātum apply
  applicāvī applicātām send for
  Arcesso -ēre arcessivi arcessitum arcessūm (neut.)
  Ardeo -ēre arsi arsum (neut.)
  Arguo -ēre arguī argūtum take fire
  Ascendo -ēre ascendī ascendēm
  Attendō -ēre attendi attentūm ascendē
  Audeo -ēre ausus sum dare
  Aufūgiō -ēre aufūgi fēe away
  Aufūrō -ēre absūlī ablātūm carry away
  Augeo -ēre auxī auctum increase
  Bibō -ēre bībī drink
  Cādō -ēre cēcīdi cāsum fall
  Caedo -ēre cēcīdi caesium cut, beat, kill
  Cāno -ēre cēcīni cantum sing
  Cāpessō -ēre cāpessivi captūm seize, take hold of
  Cāpio -ēre cēpī captōn take
  Carpo -ēre carpsi captūm pluck
  Cāveo -ēre cāvī cautum beware
  Cēdo -ēre cessi cessūm yield
  Censeo -ēre censui = censor vote
  Cerno 1 -ēre discrimēn stir up
  Cieo -ēre [cīvi] cītum] stir up
  Cio -ēre [cīvi] cītum surround
  Cingo -ēre cinxi cinctām clip
  Circumcidō -ēre circumcidī circumcisum resound
  Clango -ēre clausi clausūm shut
  Claudio 2 -ēre clausūm clausūm
  Cō-ēmo -ēre cō-ēmi cō-emptūm buy up
  [Coepio] -isse coepetus (sum) used with Pass. Inf. begin
  Cognosco -ēre cognōvi cognōtum find out, know
  Cōgro -ēre cōgēm cōactūm compel
  Colligo -ēre collēgi collectum collect
  Cōlo -ēre cōlūm cultum till
  Cōmo -ēre compsi comptum adorn
  Compello 3 -ēre compūlī compulsām drive together
  Compērio -ēre compēri compulsūm ascertain
  Compesceo -ēre compescui compulsūm restrain
  Compleo -ēre complēvi complētūm fill
  Comprehendo -ēre comprehendi comprehensūm seize

Comprendo-ēre comprehendi comprehensum seize

1 The Perfect and Supine crēvi and crētum are rarely used in this sense.
2 The compounds of claudio are similar, except that they change an into u, e.g. circumcludo, conclūdo, &c.
3 Distinguish this from compellāre, accost.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Participle</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Concído -ére</td>
<td>concídi</td>
<td>concísum</td>
<td>cut in pieces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concído -ére</td>
<td>concídi</td>
<td></td>
<td>fall in a heap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coníno -ére</td>
<td>concínui</td>
<td></td>
<td>play together, harmonize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concurro -ére</td>
<td>concurri</td>
<td>concursum</td>
<td>run together</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concútio -ére</td>
<td>concussi</td>
<td>concussum</td>
<td>shake together</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condo -ére</td>
<td>condídi</td>
<td>condíttum</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confido -ére</td>
<td>confíssus (sum)</td>
<td></td>
<td>confide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conjúcio -ére</td>
<td>conjéci</td>
<td>conjéctum</td>
<td>throw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cônéveo -ére</td>
<td>[cónivi &amp; -ixi]</td>
<td></td>
<td>wink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conscendo -ére</td>
<td>conscéndi</td>
<td>conscensurum</td>
<td>go up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consentio -ére</td>
<td>consensí</td>
<td>consensum</td>
<td>agree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consério -ére</td>
<td>consévi</td>
<td>consíttum</td>
<td>sow, plant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consério -ére</td>
<td>consérví</td>
<td>consortum</td>
<td>put close together</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consido -ére</td>
<td>consédi</td>
<td>consessum</td>
<td>sit down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conspergo -ére</td>
<td>conspersí</td>
<td>conspersum</td>
<td>sprinkle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consílo -ére</td>
<td>consúlhi</td>
<td>consultum</td>
<td>consult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contingó -ére</td>
<td>contígi</td>
<td>contactum</td>
<td>touch, happen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convello -ére</td>
<td>convelli</td>
<td>convulsum</td>
<td>tear up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Converto -ére</td>
<td>convertí</td>
<td>conversum</td>
<td>turn towards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Côquo -ére</td>
<td>coxi</td>
<td>coctum</td>
<td>cook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crédó -ére</td>
<td>crédídi</td>
<td>crédítum</td>
<td>believe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crúpo -ére</td>
<td>crúpuí</td>
<td>crúptum</td>
<td>creak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cresco -ére</td>
<td>crévi</td>
<td>[créum]</td>
<td>grow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cúbó -ére</td>
<td>cúbui</td>
<td>cúbítum</td>
<td>lie down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[cumbo] -cumbi</td>
<td>-cútum</td>
<td></td>
<td>lie down]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cóudo -ére</td>
<td>cúdi</td>
<td>cúsim</td>
<td>fashion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cúpio -ére</td>
<td>cupíri</td>
<td>cupítum</td>
<td>covet, desire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curro -ére</td>
<td>cúcurri</td>
<td>cursum</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[cútio] -ére</td>
<td>cussi</td>
<td>-cussum</td>
<td>shake]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Décerno -ére</td>
<td>décrévi</td>
<td>décretum</td>
<td>decree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Déctdo -ére</td>
<td>déctídi</td>
<td>décisum</td>
<td>fall down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Déctido -ére</td>
<td>déctídi</td>
<td>décursum</td>
<td>decide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Décurre -ére</td>
<td>décecurri</td>
<td>décurri</td>
<td>run a course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dédisco -ére</td>
<td>dédídici</td>
<td></td>
<td>unlearn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Défendo -ére</td>
<td>défendi</td>
<td>défensum</td>
<td>defend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dégó -ére</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>live</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Déléo -ére</td>
<td>delévi</td>
<td>delétum</td>
<td>blot out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Démo -ére</td>
<td>dempsi</td>
<td>demptum</td>
<td>take away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Délpello -ére</td>
<td>dépúli</td>
<td>dépulum</td>
<td>drive down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dépendeo -ére</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>hang down (intr.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dépendo -ére</td>
<td>dépendí</td>
<td>dépensum</td>
<td>pay down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Déposco -ére</td>
<td>dépoposci</td>
<td></td>
<td>demand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Descendo -ére</td>
<td>descendí</td>
<td>descensum</td>
<td>descend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Désnao -ére</td>
<td>désiti [-ivi]</td>
<td>[désitum]</td>
<td>cease</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 A form of quátio only found in the compounds concútio, percútio, &c.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Despondeo -ère</td>
<td>despondi [-spomondi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dëtergeo -ère</td>
<td>dëtersi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dëvuncio -ère</td>
<td>dëvinxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dico -ère</td>
<td>dixi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diffido -ère</td>
<td>diffisus (sum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diffindo -ère</td>
<td>diffidi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digëro -ère</td>
<td>digessi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dignosco -ère</td>
<td>dilexi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dilégo -ère</td>
<td>diléxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dilúcesco -ère</td>
<td>diluxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dimétior -iri</td>
<td>dimensus (sum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dimrico -äre</td>
<td>dimicāvi &amp; ui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dîrimo -ère</td>
<td>dirēmi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dîrício -ère</td>
<td>dirīpui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dirúmpo -ère</td>
<td>dirūpi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discción -ère</td>
<td>discessi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discindo -ère</td>
<td>disciōdi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disco -ère</td>
<td>didici</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discumbo -ère</td>
<td>discūbui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discurro -ère</td>
<td>discurri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discutio -ère</td>
<td>discussi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disiectio -ère</td>
<td>disiēci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dispergo -ère</td>
<td>dispersi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dissentio -äre</td>
<td>dissensi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dissēro -ère</td>
<td>dissērui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dissideo -ère</td>
<td>dissēdi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dissello -äre</td>
<td>dissellui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dissolvo -ère</td>
<td>dissolvī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dissuādeo -ère</td>
<td>dissuāsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distinguio -ère</td>
<td>distinxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disto -äre</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distrāho -ère</td>
<td>distraxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dīvello -ère</td>
<td>divelli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dīvido -ère</td>
<td>divisi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do -āre</td>
<td>dēdi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dōceo -ère</td>
<td>dōcui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dōmo -āre</td>
<td>dōmui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dūco -ère</td>
<td>duxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edisco -ère</td>
<td>edidici</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edo -ère</td>
<td>ēdī &amp; esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edo -ère</td>
<td>ēdidi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effervesco -ère</td>
<td>efferbui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latin Verb</td>
<td>Pronunciation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effulgeo</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effundo</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elficio</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elido</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eligo</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eminitor</td>
<td>-iri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emicôco</td>
<td>-are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emoco</td>
<td>-are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eneco</td>
<td>-are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enitoe</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enitor</td>
<td>-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exo</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evello</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evomo</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exceldo</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excello</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excerpo</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excido</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excido</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excûbo</td>
<td>-are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excûdo</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excurro</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excutio</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exedo</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exîno</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exôlesco</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expello</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expergis-cor</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expêrior</td>
<td>-iri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expêto</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expleo</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explîco</td>
<td>-are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explôdo</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expôno</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exposco</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exprîmo</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exquîro</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exscendo</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exsêco</td>
<td>-are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exséro</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 So in Virgil. Perhaps the verb should be effulgo, 3.
2 The forms in -âvi, -âtum, are less classical; but note that nêco is of the first conj., and regular.
WITH COMPOUNDS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exsilium</td>
<td>leap forth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exsisto</td>
<td>come forth, arise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exsolvo</td>
<td>unloose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exstinguo</td>
<td>extinguish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extus</td>
<td>project, be extant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exstungo</td>
<td>heap up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extendo</td>
<td>rise up, recover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exuio</td>
<td>stretch out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fácesso</td>
<td>put off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fáctio</td>
<td>accomplish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fállo</td>
<td>do, make</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fárico</td>
<td>stuff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fátio</td>
<td>confess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fáveo</td>
<td>favour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fério 1</td>
<td>strike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fério</td>
<td>bear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ferndo &amp; vo-ère</td>
<td>fervi and -bui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fido &amp; ère</td>
<td>boil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figo 1</td>
<td>trust</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Findo</td>
<td>fix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fingo</td>
<td>cleave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fío 1</td>
<td>fashion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flecto</td>
<td>be made, become</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fleo 1</td>
<td>bend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fligo 1</td>
<td>weep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluo 1</td>
<td>dash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fódio</td>
<td>figo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fóveo</td>
<td>dig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freggio</td>
<td>cherish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frendo</td>
<td>break</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frico</td>
<td>mutter, mutter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frígeo</td>
<td>gnash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frígo 1</td>
<td>rub</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fúgio</td>
<td>be cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fúgio</td>
<td>roast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fundo 1</td>
<td>roast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fúró 2</td>
<td>pour, rout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gaudeo 1</td>
<td>be mad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gémo 1</td>
<td>rejoice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gëro 1</td>
<td>groan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gëro 1</td>
<td>carry on</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 The perfect forms percussi, percussum, are supplied from percūtio.
2 The perfect form generally supplied instead of fürui, insānivi.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Verb 1</th>
<th>Latin Verb 2</th>
<th>Latin Verb 3</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gigno</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>gēnui</td>
<td>gēnītum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grādiōr</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>gressus (sum)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hāerōe</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>haesi</td>
<td>haesum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haurōl</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>hausi</td>
<td>haustum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Īco</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>īci</td>
<td>ictum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ignosco</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>ignōvi</td>
<td>ignōtum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Illīno</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>illēvi</td>
<td>illītum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Illūcesco</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>illuxi</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Illūdo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>illūsi</td>
<td>illūsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imbuō</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>imbui</td>
<td>imbūtum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immisceo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>immiscui</td>
<td>immixtum(-mistum)intermix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impendeo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>impend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impendo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>impendi</td>
<td>impensum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impingo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>impēgi</td>
<td>impactum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impleo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>implēvi</td>
<td>implētum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incēdo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>incessi</td>
<td>incessum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incendo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>incendi</td>
<td>incensum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incesso</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>incessivi</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incīdo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>incīdi</td>
<td>[incāsum]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incīdo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>incīdi</td>
<td>incīsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incingō</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>incinxi</td>
<td>incinctum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incūndō</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>inclusi</td>
<td>inclusum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incūlo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>incūlui</td>
<td>incultum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incūbo</td>
<td>-āre</td>
<td>incūbui</td>
<td>incūbitum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incumbo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>incūbui</td>
<td>incūbitum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incurro</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>incurri[-cūcurri]incursum</td>
<td>incussum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incaētio</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>incussi</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indīgeo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>indīgūi</td>
<td>indītum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>indīdi</td>
<td>indultum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indulgeo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>indulsi</td>
<td>indūtum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Induo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>indūi</td>
<td>ſūtum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Īneo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>ſūi</td>
<td>[influxum]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflīo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>influxi</td>
<td>insītum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insēro</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>insēvi</td>
<td>insertum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insīro</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>insīrūi</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insisto</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>institī</td>
<td>[instātum]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insto</td>
<td>-āre</td>
<td>institī</td>
<td>insurrectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insurgō</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>insurrexi</td>
<td>intellectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intellēgo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>intellexi</td>
<td>intentum, or -sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intentō</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>intendi</td>
<td>intercessum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intercēdo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>intercessi</td>
<td>interētum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intēreo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>interītū</td>
<td>interemptum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interīmo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>interīmi</td>
<td>interītum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interlīno</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>interlēvi</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internosco</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>internōvi</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- produce
- step
- stick
- drain
- strike
- pardon
- smear
- dawn
- make game of
- tinge
- intermix
- impend
- expend
- thrust against
- fill
- step
- set on fire
- assail
- fall, light on
- cut into, engrave
- gird
- shut in
- inhabit
- brood over
- lean on, bend one's mind to
- run towards, meet
- strike against
- need
- put in, apply
- indulge
- put on
- enter
- flow into
- sow in
- put in, mingle
- stand on, persevere
- press on
- rise up, or to
- understand
- stretch, direct
- intervene, interpose
- perish
- destroy
- smear, falsify by erasures
- distinguish
### WITH COMPOUNDS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Intono</th>
<th>-āre</th>
<th>Intōnui</th>
<th>Intōnitum</th>
<th>thunder</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Intorqueo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>intorsi</td>
<td>Intortum</td>
<td>twist, hurl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intueor</td>
<td>-ēri</td>
<td>intuitus (sum)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>look on, regard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invideo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>invidi</td>
<td>invisum</td>
<td>envy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jācio</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>jēci</td>
<td>jactum</td>
<td>throw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jūbeo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>jussi</td>
<td>jussum</td>
<td>command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jungo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>junxi</td>
<td>junctum</td>
<td>join</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jūvo</td>
<td>-āre</td>
<td>jūvi</td>
<td>jūtum</td>
<td>help</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lābor</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>lapsus (sum)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>glide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lācessō</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>lācessīvī</td>
<td>lācessītum</td>
<td>provoke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laedo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>laesi</td>
<td>laesum</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lambo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>lambi</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>lick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lāvo</td>
<td>-āre¹</td>
<td>lávi</td>
<td>lávātum</td>
<td>wash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lēgo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>légi</td>
<td>lautum, lōtum</td>
<td>read, choose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lībet</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>lībūtum est</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>it pleases, suits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Līngō</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>linxi</td>
<td>linctum</td>
<td>lick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Līno</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>livi and lēvi</td>
<td>lītum</td>
<td>smear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Līnquo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>liqui</td>
<td>[lictum]</td>
<td>leave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lūceo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>luxi</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>shine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lūdo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>lūsi</td>
<td>lūsum</td>
<td>play</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lūgeo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>luxi</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>mourn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>lui</td>
<td>luītum</td>
<td>wash, alone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mālo</td>
<td>malle</td>
<td>mālui</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>prefer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mando</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>mandi</td>
<td>mansum</td>
<td>chew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Māneo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>mansī</td>
<td>mansum</td>
<td>remain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mēdeor</td>
<td>-ēri</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>heal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>——</td>
<td>mēmīn-</td>
<td>mēmīni</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>remember</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notes

1. There is an ante-classical and poetical form lávēre.
2. The form lībūt is perhaps not found in Cicero.
3. Distinguish this from mentior, mentīri, mentītus, lie.
IRREGULAR VERBS,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
<th>Present Participle</th>
<th>Greek Meaning</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mulgeo</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>mulsi</td>
<td>muctum</td>
<td>milk</td>
<td>obtain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nancisor</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>nactus, nactus</td>
<td>(sum)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nascor</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>nátus (sum)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>be born</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Necto</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>nexus &amp; nexi</td>
<td>nexum</td>
<td></td>
<td>tie, bind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neglēgo</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>neglexi</td>
<td>neglectum</td>
<td></td>
<td>neglect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neo</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>névi</td>
<td>nētum</td>
<td></td>
<td>spin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ningo</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>ninxi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>snow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitco</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>shine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitor</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>nisus and nixus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>strive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nōlo</td>
<td>nolle</td>
<td>nōlui</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>be unwilling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nosco</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>nōvi</td>
<td>nōtum</td>
<td></td>
<td>come to know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nūbo</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>nupsi</td>
<td>nuptum</td>
<td></td>
<td>be married</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Óbeo</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>ōbī and īvi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>go towards, down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oblino</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>oblēvi</td>
<td>oblītum</td>
<td></td>
<td>besmear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oblivisor</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>oblītus (sum)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>forget</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obrēpo</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>obrepsi</td>
<td>obreptum</td>
<td></td>
<td>creep up to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obruō</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>obrui</td>
<td>obrūtum</td>
<td></td>
<td>overchelm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obsideo</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>obsēdi</td>
<td>obsession</td>
<td></td>
<td>besiege</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obsisto</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>obstīti</td>
<td>[obstītum]</td>
<td></td>
<td>oppose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obsōlesco</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>obsōlēvi</td>
<td>obsōlētum</td>
<td></td>
<td>wear out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obsto</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>obstīti</td>
<td>obstātum</td>
<td></td>
<td>stand in the way of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obstringo</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>obstrīnxi</td>
<td>obstrictum</td>
<td></td>
<td>bind (by oath)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obtēro</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>obtrīvi</td>
<td>obtrītum</td>
<td></td>
<td>trample underfoot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occīdo</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>occīdi</td>
<td>occīsum</td>
<td></td>
<td>slay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occīdo</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>occīdi</td>
<td>occāsum</td>
<td></td>
<td>fall, die</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occūlo</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>occūlīi</td>
<td>occultum</td>
<td></td>
<td>hide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occurro</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>occurri</td>
<td>occursum</td>
<td></td>
<td>meet, resist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offendo</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>offendi</td>
<td>offensum</td>
<td></td>
<td>hate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offero</td>
<td>-erre</td>
<td>obtūli</td>
<td>oblātum</td>
<td></td>
<td>knock against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ómitto</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>ōmīsi</td>
<td>ōmissum</td>
<td></td>
<td>offer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ópērio</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>ōpērīi</td>
<td>ōpertum</td>
<td></td>
<td>pass over</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oppōno</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>oppōsui</td>
<td>oppōsitum</td>
<td></td>
<td>cover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opprīno</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>oppressi</td>
<td>oppressum</td>
<td></td>
<td>put in the way of press down, over-power</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ordior</td>
<td>-iri</td>
<td>orsus (sum)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>commence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Órior</td>
<td>-iri</td>
<td>ortus (sum)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>arise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pāciscor</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>pactus (sum)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>bargain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pando</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>pandi</td>
<td>passum &amp; pansum</td>
<td>expand, spread</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pango</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>pē̄gi</td>
<td>pactum</td>
<td></td>
<td>frame, fasten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parco</td>
<td>-ère</td>
<td>pē̄peri</td>
<td>parsum</td>
<td></td>
<td>spare</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Nosco means, I make acquaintance with; nōvi means, I have made the acquaintance of, i.e. I know.
WITH COMPOUNDS.

Pário -ére pēpēri partum bring forth
Pasco -ére pāvi pastum feed
Pāveo -ére pāvi fear
Pecto -ére pexui and pexi pexum comb
Pello -ére pēpuli pulsum drive away
Pellício -ére pellexi pellectum allure
Pendo -ére pépendi - hang (intr.)
Pendo -ére pépendi pensum hang, weigh (tr.)
Pērāgo -ére perēgi peractum complete
Percello -ére percūli perculusm strike (with terror)
Pērcūtio -ére percussi percussum strike
Perdo -ére perdīdi perdictum lose, destroy
Pergo -gēre perrexī perrextum continue
Pêrīmo -ére perēmī peremptum make away with
Perlēgo -ére perlēgi perflectum read through
Perpētīor -ī perpessus (sum) - endure
Persto -āre perstīti perstātum persevere
Pētō -ēre pētīvi & pētīi pētītum seek
Pingo -ére pīnxi pictum paint
Pinso -ére pinsi & pinsuī pinsūm pound
Plango -ēre planxi planctum beat
Plauðo -ēre plausi plausum clap hands
Plecto -ēre plexuī, plexi plexum lash
Plecto -ēre plexuī, plexii plexum plait
Pleō -ēre plēvi plētum fill
Plico -āre plīcuī plīcatum & plīctum fold
Plīto -ēre plūtīt and plūvit - rain
Pōno -ēre pōsui pōstum place
Posco -ēre póposcī - demand
Possum 2 posse pōtui - be able
Pōto -āre pōtāvi pōtātum & pōtum drink
Praecāveo -ēre praecāvi praecautum take precautions
Praecellos -ēre praecāvi praecautum excel
Praecidō -ēre praecidī praecisum cut off, abridge
Praecēno -ēre praecēnui praecessum play before, fore-
Praecurrō 2 -ēre praecūcurri praecursum excel
Praedico 4 -ēre praedichi praedictum precede
Praeor -ēre praetūi, or -īvi praētūm predict
Praestō -āre praestīti praestātum [-ītum] go before, dictate

1 Distinguish this from pāreo, pārēre, pārui, pāritum, obey.
2 Distinguish this from the forms of the regular Verb pōtōr, I gain possession of.
3 Note that here, and in excurrō, the longer form of the Perfect is the more common.
4 Distinguish this from praedico, praedicāre, praedicavi, praedicātum, proclaim.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Perfect Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Praetexo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>praetexui</td>
<td>praetextum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prandeo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>prandi</td>
<td>pransum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prehendo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>prēhendi</td>
<td>prensum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prēmo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>pressi</td>
<td>pressum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prōcumbo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>prōcūbui</td>
<td>prōcūbitum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prōdeo</td>
<td>-īre</td>
<td>prōdīti</td>
<td>prōditum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prōdo</td>
<td>-īre</td>
<td>prōdīdi</td>
<td>prōditum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prōfēcisor</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>prōfectus (sum)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prōfiteor</td>
<td>-eri</td>
<td>prōfessus (sum)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prōfundo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>prōfundi</td>
<td>prōfūsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prōmo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>promptsi</td>
<td>promptum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prōmōveo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>prōmōvi</td>
<td>prōmotum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prōpello</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>prōpūli</td>
<td>prōpūlsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proscribo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>proscrispi</td>
<td>proscriptum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prōvīdeo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>prōvīdi</td>
<td>prōvisum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psallo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>psalli</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pungo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>pūpūgi</td>
<td>punctum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quaero</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>quaesivi</td>
<td>quaesītum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quātio</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>quātère</td>
<td>quassum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>quīvi</td>
<td>quītum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quēror</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>questus (sum)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quiesco</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>quīvi</td>
<td>quiētum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rādo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>rāsi</td>
<td>rāsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rāpio</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>rāpēre rānui</td>
<td>raptum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rēcīdo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>reccīdī</td>
<td>reccāsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rēcīdo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>rēcīdī</td>
<td>reēcīsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rēcumbo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>recūbui</td>
<td>reclūsāsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reclādō</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>reclūsī</td>
<td>reclūsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reddo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>reddīdī</td>
<td>reddītum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rēdeo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>rēdīti</td>
<td>rēditum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rēdigo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>rēdēgi</td>
<td>rēdactum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rēdīmo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>rēdēmi</td>
<td>rēdemptum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rēfello</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>rēfelli</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Réfercio</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>rēfersi</td>
<td>rēfertum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rēfigo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>rēfixi</td>
<td>rēfixum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rēdōleo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>rēdōlui</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Réfrigisco</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>réfrigxi</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Réfringo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>réfrēgi</td>
<td>refractum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Régero</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>régessi</td>
<td>rēgestum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rélego ²</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>rélegi</td>
<td>rēlectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rémaneo</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>rémansi</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Other verbs that lengthen compound re- in the perfect, are, rettūlī and reppērī.
2 Distinguish this from rēlégo, -āre. -āvi, -ātum, banish.
WITH COMPOUNDS.

Reōr -ēri rātus (sum) — think, suppose
Repello -ēre reppūli répulsus
Rēpendo -ēre rēpendi rēpensum
Repōrio -īre reppēri rēpertum
Rēpo -ēre repsi reptum
Rēquiro -ēre réquisīvi réquisītum
Rescingo -ēre rescīdi rescissum
Réseco -āre rēsecui résectum
Rēsīdeo -ēre rēsēdi rēsessum
Rēsīdo -ēre rēsēdi —
Rēsīpisco -ēre rēsīpīvi and ui —
Rēsīsto -ēre restīti —
Respergo -ēre respersi respersum
Respicio -ēre respexi respectum
Respondeo -ēre respondi responsum
Restinguo 1 -ēre restīnxi restīntcum
Resto -āre restīti —
Rētexo -ēre retexui rétextum
Rētundo -ēre rētūdi & rettūdi rētūsum
Rēvello -ēre rēvellī révulsum
Rēverto 2 -ēre rēverti réversum
Rīdeo -ēre rīsi rīsum
Rōdo -ēre rōsi rōsum
Rūdo -ēre [rūdivi] [rūditum]
Rūmpo -ēre rūpi ruptum
Ruo ruēre rui ruftum [rūtum] 3
Saepio -ēre saepsī septum
Sālio -īre sālui salutum
Sālio -ēre — salutum
Sanctio -īre sanxi [-i] sanctum [-itum]
Sāpio -ēre sāpīvi and -ii — render sacred, enact
Sarcio -īre sarsi sartum
Scābo -ēre scābi sartum
Scalpo -ēre scalpsi sculptum
Scando -ēre —
Scindo -ēre scīdi scissum

1 The obsolete stinguo is only found (in Present forms) in Lucretius and quotations of Priscian.
2 In the Present and Present-derived Tenses révertitur is more common; in the Perfect and Perfect-derived Tenses réverti, révertēram, &c.: but the best authors use the Dep. Participle réversus.
3 The Fut. Part. ruītūrus points to sup. ruītum; but in an old legal word "rūta," things dug up (on an estate), the vowel was long. In the compounds obrūtus, ērūtus and surrūtus the vowel was short.

P 2
IRREGULAR VERBS.

Scisco -ēre scīvi scītum decree
Scribo -ēre scripsi scriptum write
Sculpo -ēre sculpsti sculptum engrave
Sēco -āre sēcui sectum cut
Sēdeo -ēre sēdi sessum sit
Sentio -īre sensi sensum feel
Sēpēlio -īre sēpēlīvi sēpultum bury
Sēro -ēre sērui sērument join together
Sēro -ēre sēvi sātum crawl
Serpo -ēre serpsi serpentum sit down
Sīdo -ēre sīdi - sob
Singultio -īre singultīvi - allow
Sīno -ēre sīvi sitiīn stop, make stand
Sīsto -ēre sī - be accustomed
Sōleo -ēre sōltus sum - loosen
Solvo -ēre solvi sōlūtum sound
Sōnō 1 -āre sōnui sōnitum suck up
Sorbeo -ēre sorbui [sorpsi] - sprinkle
Spargeo -ēre sparsi sparsum despise
[Spēcio -ēre . spexi spectum] pledge, promise
Sperno -ēre spretīvi spretum
Spondeo -ēre spōponti sponsum
Stātuo -ēre stāui stātūtum set up
Sterno -ēre strāvi strātum strew
Sterto -ēre sternui - snore
Sto stāre stēti stātum stand
Strēpo -ēre strēpui [strēptum] roar
Strīdeo & -ēre & } strīdi - creak, hiss, whizz
Strīdo -ēre strīndi strictum tie
Stringo -ēre strīnxi structum build, pile
Struo -ēre struxi structum advise, persuade
Suādeo -ēre suāsi susum go under, spring up
Sābēo -ēre sūbī subītum bring under, subdue
Sūbīgo -ēre sūbēgi subactum tie under
Subnecto -ēre subnexusi subnexum sink down
Subruo, see surruo.
Subsido -ēre subsēdi subsessum help
Subvēnio -ēre subvēni subventum subvert
Subvertō -ēre subverti subversum approach, follow
Succēdo -ēre successi successum set on fire
Succendo -ēre succendi successusum help
Succurro -ēre succurri succursum be accustomed
Suesco -ēre suēvi suētum endure
Suffēro -erre sustūli sublātum

1 Note insōnui and consōnui, but rēsōnāvi.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>English Word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Suffundo -ére</td>
<td>suffúdi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suggěro -ére</td>
<td>suggesti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sāgo -ére</td>
<td>suxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summōveo -ére</td>
<td>summōvi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sāmo -ére</td>
<td>sumpsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sūo -ére</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suppēto -ére</td>
<td>suppētīvi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suppleo -ére</td>
<td>supplevi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suppōno -ére</td>
<td>suppōsui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supprīmo -ére</td>
<td>suppressi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surgo -ére</td>
<td>surrexi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surrēpo -ére</td>
<td>surrepsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surrīgo -ére</td>
<td>surrexi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surrīpio -ére</td>
<td>surrīpui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surruo -ére</td>
<td>surrui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suspendo -ére</td>
<td>suspendi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suspício -ére</td>
<td>suspexi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tāngo -ére</td>
<td>tētīgi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tēgo -ére</td>
<td>texi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temno -ére</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tendo -ére</td>
<td>tētendi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tēneo -ére</td>
<td>tēnui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tergo &amp; térgo -ére</td>
<td>tersi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tēro -ére</td>
<td>trīvi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Texo -ére</td>
<td>texni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tinguo -ére</td>
<td>tinxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tollo -ére</td>
<td>sustūli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tondeo -ére</td>
<td>tōtōndi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tōno -āre</td>
<td>tōnui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torqueo -ēre</td>
<td>orsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torreo -ēre</td>
<td>torrui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trādo -ēre</td>
<td>tràdidi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trāho -ēre</td>
<td>traxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transseo -īre</td>
<td>transīi and -īvi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transīgo -ēre</td>
<td>transēgi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transīlo -ēre</td>
<td>transīli [-īvi] ⁴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trēmo -ēre</td>
<td>trēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trībue -ēre</td>
<td>tribui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trūdo -ēre</td>
<td>trūsi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ This is the uncontracted form of surgo used transitively.
² These Supine forms have probably no existence, and are merely inferred from the Pass. Part. tentus and tensus.
³ These forms do not properly belong to tollo, but are assigned to it, as it has no perfect and supine: see note on fūro above.
⁴ Livy uses -ui; Plautus and Pliny, -īvi.
DEFECTIVE VERBS.

The Defective Verbs coepi, begin, mēmīni, remember, and ōdī, hate, have no Tenses except those derived from the Perfect. Thus I remembered is mēmīnēram; that they may remember, or let them remember, mēmīnērint; I shall remember, mēmīnēro; and the same of ōdī.

Indicative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(1)</th>
<th>(2)</th>
<th>(3)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect.</strong></td>
<td>Coepi</td>
<td>Mēmīni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.-Perf.</strong></td>
<td>Coepēro</td>
<td>Mēmīnēro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pluperf.</strong></td>
<td>Coepēram</td>
<td>Mēmīnēram</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
DEFECTIVE VERBS.

### SUBJUNCTIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Coepĕrim</th>
<th>Mĕminĕrim</th>
<th>Ódĕrim</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pluperf.</td>
<td>Coepissem</td>
<td>Mĕminissem</td>
<td>Ódissem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IMPERATIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future.</th>
<th>(wanting)</th>
<th>Mĕmento</th>
<th>Mĕmentôte</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### INFINITIVE.

| Perfect. | Coepissē | Mĕminissē | Ódissē |

### PARTICIPLE.

| Future. | Coepiturūs | (wanting) | Ósūrūs |

4. Aio, I say:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Present.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. Aio</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>S. Aiēbam</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ais</td>
<td>Aiās</td>
<td>Aiēbās</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ait</td>
<td>Aiāt</td>
<td>Aiēbāt</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. —</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>P. Aiēbamūs</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Aiēbātis</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aiunt</td>
<td>Aiant</td>
<td>Aiēbant</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. In quam, say I:

### INDICATIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inquam</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Inquīi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inquis</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Inquiōs</td>
<td>Inquisti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inquit</td>
<td>Inquīebāt(^1)</td>
<td>Inquiet</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inquīmūs</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inquītīs</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inquīunt</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IMPERATIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present.</th>
<th>Future.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inquē</td>
<td>2 Pers. Inquīto.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) But this form is found without the e.

_N.B._— _In quam_ is always used after the first emphatic word in a speech, and is almost always separated from its Nominaive.

_Then Balbus said, “This I Tum Balbus, “Haec,” inquit, “négo.”_
APPENDIX III.

HINTS ON CONSTRUING.

Take as an example:

Terra tribus scopolis vastum procurrít in aequor
Trinacris, a posítu nomen adepta loci.

I.—QUESTIONS ON THE SENTENCE.

1. The first question is, Which is the Principal Verb? Ans., procurrít—runs forth.

2. What is the Subject of the Principal Verb? Ans., Terra, a land.

3. (a) Is the Principal Verb Intransitive; or has it (b) a Direct Object? (c) an Indirect Object?
   Ans., It is Intransitive.

4. (a) Is there any Noun in Apposition with the Subject? (b) Is there any Adjective or Participle in agreement with the Subject, or is there any Genitive Case dependent on it?
   Ans., (a) Trinacris (i.e. trin-acrís, three-promontoried) is sometimes a Noun (a name of Sicily), sometimes an Adjective, and may be regarded either as in Apposition to terra, or as agreeing with it; (b) Adepta, from adipiscor, is a Participle agreeing with terra, meaning having obtained.

1 Bear in mind that two Adjectives (unless connected by a Conjunction) rarely agree with the same Noun: many serious sorrows, multi et graves dolores (153). But an Adjective and Participle may agree with the same Noun, without a Conjunction.
5. Is there any Adjective or Participle in agreement with the Object, or is there any Genitive Case dependent on it?

6. The next question is to ask, Are there any Adverbial Clauses attached to the Principal Verb? i.e. any Clauses answering to the question (a) How? (b) When? (c) Where? (d) Whence? (e) Why, &c.

Ans. How? tribus scopolis, with three rocks; (c) Where? or Whither? vastum in aequor, into the vast sea.

7. Coming to adepta, repeat the above questions. Is it Transitive? Has it an Object? Adverbial Clauses, &c.?

Ans. (3) (b). The Object is nomen, the name; (5) loci, of the place, is Gen. depending on nomen (or positu); (6) Whence? Ans., a positu, from its position.¹

8. No further questions are required for this sentence: but instead of the Participle adepta, a prose author might have written quod, or quia adepta fuerat, because it had obtained, and the Conjunction quod or quia would have introduced a Subordinate Sentence.

Therefore it must be borne in mind that the answer to the question (6) How? When? Why? &c., may be conveyed by a Subordinate Sentence introduced by a Conjunction, because, though, when, in order that, &c.: and this Subordinate Sentence must be taken to pieces in the same way as the Principal Sentence.

N.B.—A Subordinate Sentence may sometimes be the Subject or Object of the Principal Verb, e.g. "incertum est (or nescio) num locus a positu nomen adeptus fuerit," it is uncertain whether the place obtained its name from its position: here est (or nescio) is the Principal Verb, and has for its Subject (or Object) "num . . . . fuerit."

¹ Possibly, loci may be transposed, as is sometimes done in poetry, and may be dependent on positu: from the position of the place.
II.—RULES FOR THE CASES.

In order to answer the question What Case? it is not enough, for example, to say that "loci is Genitive because it means of the place;" the pupil must say "Genitive Case, governed by nomen (or positu)." In other words, the pupil must give the Rule.

The Rules for the Cases are as follows:

1. Nominate.
   1. The Subject of a Verb.
   2. In Apposition to another Nominative.
   3. The Complementary Nominative (Par. 260).
   4. By connection, i.e. because it is connected with another Nom. by some Conjunction, quam, vel, et, &c.

2. Accusative.
   1. The Subject of an Infinitive (Par. 208, 209).
   2. The Object of a Verb.

   This includes the Accusative (often called Cognate Accusative) found after some Intransitive Verbs, when the Verb and Noun are of kindred, i.e. Cognate meaning, e.g. "ludo ludum," I play a game; "eo viam," I go my way.

   3. Governed by a Preposition (Par. 183).
   4. In Apposition to another Accusative (Par. 123).

   *5. The Accusative of Respect (or the Accusative of the Part affected).

   This is more common in poetry than in prose, especially with Passive Participles: "tectus cālīgīnĕ vultum," covered with darkness as to his features.

   6. The Accusative of Extension of (a) time or (b) space (Par. 262).

* This mark denotes a construction more common in poetry than in prose.
7. The Accusative of Place Whither (towns and small islands, Par. 249).


9. The Double Accusative (after Verbs of asking, teaching, and concealing): Par. 312.

10. The (a) Primary and (b) Complementary Accusative: see Par. 259.

We thought you a second Cato. Alterum te Catonem putabamus. They will create you king. Te regem creabunt.

Here the person (te) is (a) the Primary Object of the Verb, and requires (b) a Complementary Accusative, Catonem or regem, to make the meaning complete.¹


3. The Dative.

1. Of the Remote Object: after Verbs of giving, pleasing, helping, obeying, and their opposites (Par. 142); also after Verbs Compounded of Prepositions (Par. 192); after many Adjectives signifying nearness, pleasantness, fitness, likeness, equality, &c., and their opposites (Pars. 27, 90, 112).

*2. Of Advantage or Disadvantage (sometimes called “Commodi et Incommodi”):

Thou sest for thyself. Tibi seris. We desire office for thee. Tibi honores optamus.

This construction should be rarely employed by beginners in Latin Prose.

¹ In the Public School Grammar this is called the Oblique Double Accusative with Factitive Verb.
3. Of Purpose (Par. 268): often accompanied by the Dat. of Advantage or Disadvantage, or some other Dative:

He came for a help to us.  

Venit auxilio (Dat. of P.)

He gave this for a present to me.  

Hoc mihi (Dat. of Recipient,)

doно (Dat. of P.) dedit.

4. Of the Recipient used for the Agent, found only with Perfect Passive, Passive Participles, especially Gerundives (Par. 168), and Verbals in -bilis.¹

I have now made up my mind.  

Mihi jam consilium captum est.

4. The Ablative (Par. 273—280).

1. Governed by a Preposition (Par. 178).  

This includes the Ablative of the Agent with a or ab.

2. Of the Instrument (Par. 8).

3. Of the Measure of Excess or Defect (Par. 274).

4. Of Definite Price (Par. 273).

5. Of Manner (Par. 276).

This requires an Adjective joined to the Noun (Par. 181), except with a few Adverbal Ablatives: nomine, in name; re, or re ipsa, in fact; verbo, in word; specie, in appearance; jure, rightly; neque injuria, and not unnaturally; recte atque ordine, in due course; via atque ratione, methodically; vi, forcibly; dolo, craftily.

6. Of Quality.

This also requires an Adjective (Par. 281).

7. Of the Point of Time (Par. 30, 263).

8. Of Comparison (Par. 63).

9. Absolute (Par. 196).

¹ The poets use this Construction with Tenses not derived from the Perfect.

I am scarce heard by any.  

Vix audior ulli.—Ovid.
10. Used with dignus, indignus, fretus (Par. 28, 278).  
11. Object of fungor, fruor, utor, potior (Par. 207).

12. (a) Of Plenty and Want; (b) with "opus est," "usus est"; see Par. 279.

13. Of the Place Where (with towns and small islands in the Third Declension, and in the Plural of the First and Second Declension); see Par. 265.

*14. A Poetic Local Ablative, where Prose writers would insert the Preposition in.

15. Of the Place Whence (of all towns and small islands); see Par. 265.

*16. Of Separation (after a few words, mostly legal, "abdico me magistratu," I resign my office; "moveo te senatu," I expel you from the senate").

Most of the Verbs (Par. 8) which allow an Abl. of Separation in Poetry require or allow a Preposition in Prose.


5. The Genitive.

Genitives may be divided into two large classes, those in which the Gen. can be readily replaced (i.) by a Subject; (ii.) by an Object. The former are called Subjective; the latter, Objective.

Thus "injuriae Æduorum" may mean (i.) "wrongs inflicted by the Ædui" (i.e. "the Ædui wronged some one"), a Subjective Genitive; but it may mean (ii.) "wrongs inflicted on the Ædui" (i.e. "some one wronged the Ædui"), an Objective Genitive.

1 The Abl. after the Verbal Adjectives contentus, fretus, onustus, is really an Abl. of the Instrument.
(i.) The Subjective Genitive (Par. 281—292).

1. The Possessive Genitive.

The Noun governing this Genitive is often omitted (Par. 289) in such phrases as *it is the mark of, characteristic of, &c.*

2. The Descriptive or Adjectival Genitive; see Par. 282.

This may be illustrated by the English descriptive Adjective formed out of a Noun, *sun-light* (i.e. *sun’s light*), a *pine forest, &c.* So in Latin: "lauri nemus," a *laurel grove;" nomen regis," the *name of king (or the royal name); virtue constantiae, the *virtue of constancy.*

3. Of the charge, after Verbs of accusing and condemning.

This is really governed by some Noun understood, as *crimine, nomine, causa, &c.*: see Par. 290.

4. Of Quality (Par. 282), Value, or Indefinite Price (Par. 283).

5. The Partitive Genitive (Par. 91).

*6. A Genitive, in Poetry, often follows a Neuter (mostly Plural) used instead of a Noun: "secreta silvarum," the *secret place of the woods.*

7. After some Verbs and Adjectives of *plenty and want* (285).¹

(ii.) The Objective Genitive.

8. Governed by a Noun.

This Gen. must be rendered by different English Prepositions: *auri fames, hunger for gold; militiae vacatio, exemption from military service; remedium irae, remedy against anger; incitamenta periculi, incitements to peril; quies laborum, rest from evils.* (In writing Latin avoid this construction where it is ambiguous: obsequium *coelibis,*

¹ This is said (*Pub. Sch. Gr.* p. 420) to be a Partitive Genitive, and it would therefore fall under the head of Subjective, not Objective Genitives.
HINTS ON CONSTRUING.

respect to a bachelor; praestantia animarum reliquarum, superiority to other souls.)

9. With Verbal Adjectives and Present Participles used as Nouns (Par. 288).

10. With Adjectives of knowledge and ignorance, and some Adjectives of desire (Par. 287).

11. With Impersonal Verbs (as the Impersonal Object): see Par. 219.

12. With Verbs of remembering and forgetting: Par. 203.

13. An apparent Genitive, more properly called the Locative Case in -i, is used in the Second Declension to represent Place Where, of towns and small islands, and with a few other Nouns (Par. 265.)

6. All Cases.

N.B.—A Noun may be in any Case by (1) Connection, i.e. through being connected with some other Noun by a Conjunction, e.g. quam, vel, et; or by (2) Apposition.
APPENDIX IV.

PARSING TABLE.

The following Table shows how the different parts of speech should be parsed.

The pupil is intended to use the Table, principally to show him how to parse *viva-voce*; but he may occasionally make similar Parsing Tables for himself in order to fill up the columns in writing.

"Rogāvērant cives ut urbs, incendio fērē dēlēta, a nostris restituērētur."

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACCIDENTE.</th>
<th>SYNTAX.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Verb ...</strong></td>
<td><strong>Pres. Ind. 1st. Pers.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Noun or Pronoun.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Nom. Sing.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Adjective ...</strong></td>
<td><strong>Nom. S. of all Gend.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Participle ...</strong></td>
<td><strong>Pres. Ind. 1st. Pers.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Preposition ...</strong></td>
<td><strong>—</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Adverb ...</strong></td>
<td><strong>—</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Conjunction ...</strong></td>
<td><strong>—</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 (1) The Verb must have a Subject, which should always be stated in the Syntax; (2) it may be (a) Intransitive, or have (b) a Direct Object, or (c) an Indirect Object; (3) it may be (a) Principal, or (b) Coordinate, or (c) Subordinate to another Verb; or, if Inf., (d) Subject or Object of some Verb, or Partial Object or Subject.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Ut.&quot; Conjunction.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;fero.&quot; Adverb.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;a.&quot; Preposition.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;noster.&quot; Pronoun Adj.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Agrees with Nom. "cives" has for its Obj. the sentence "ut urbs ... restitueretur."

To the Verb "rogaverant."

Joins "rogaverant" with "restitueretur."

To the Verb "restitueretur."

Abl. of Instrument.

Modifies "deleta."

Agrees with "urbs."

Governs the Abl. "noster, nostris (hominibus)."

Agrees with "hominibus" understood, which is Abl. of the Agent, governed by "a."

(1) Agrees with its Nom. "urbs"; (2) Subordinate to "rogaverant." Subjunctive after "ut."

Rule: Verbs signifying ask, command, &c., take "ut" with the Subjunctive.
TABLE OF GENDERS.

APPENDIX V.

LATIN GENDERS.

Fem. Nouns are in black type; Neut., in CAPITALS; Masculine in ordinary type; (f. means sometimes fem.; m., sometimes masc.).

I.—BY TERMINATIONS.

FIRST DECLENSION.

Feminine.¹

SECOND DECLENSION.

Masculine endings -er, -ir, -us. Neuter endings -UM.

Exceptions {alvus, cólus (m.), dōmus, hūmus, vannus;
arctus,† átōmus,† carbāsus,† dialectus,†
(phārus,† pēlagus,† vīrus, vulgus.

THIRD DECLENSION.

Masculine Terminations.

-er, -or, -os.
-es increasing in the Genitive.
-o (when not -do, -go, -io).

Principal Exceptions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-er</th>
<th>linter</th>
<th>CĀDĀVER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ÍTER</td>
<td>PĀPĀVER²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ÜBER</td>
<td>VĒR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VERBER</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-or</td>
<td>arbor</td>
<td>ΑΕQΟΡ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cōr</td>
<td>MARMΟR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-os</td>
<td>cōs</td>
<td>dōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ēs</td>
<td>ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CHAOS†</td>
<td>ΕΠΟΣ†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-eŝ</td>
<td>compēs</td>
<td>mercēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mergēs</td>
<td>quīēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rēquēs</td>
<td>sēgēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tēgēs</td>
<td>ĒS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-o</td>
<td>cáro</td>
<td>ĖCHO†</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Excepting names of men and men's occupations, and national names, such as Scytha, a Scythian, pōcta, a poet &c.; for which see "Genders by Meaning" below. Add also the Greek-derived words cómēta m., and plānēta m.

² Also some other names of vegetable products, as ācer, cīcer, fīper, sīler, sīser, tūber, &c.

† This sign denotes a Greek derivation.
### Feminine Terminations

- **-do, -go, -io, -as, -is, -aus, x.**
- **-es, not increasing in the Genitive.**
- **-s, preceded by a consonant.**
- **-ūs (long) in words of more than one syllable.**

#### Principal Exceptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-do</th>
<th>cardo</th>
<th>cupīdo (f.)</th>
<th>ordo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-go</td>
<td>harpāgo</td>
<td>ligo</td>
<td>margo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-io</td>
<td>concretae nouns, such as pāpīlio.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-as</td>
<td>pūgio</td>
<td>ūnio</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-is</td>
<td>amnīs</td>
<td>anguis</td>
<td>axis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sS</td>
<td>crīnis</td>
<td>cūcūmis</td>
<td>ensis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sO</td>
<td>fūnis (f.)</td>
<td>follic</td>
<td>fūnis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-s</td>
<td>ignis</td>
<td>lāpis</td>
<td>mensis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-s</td>
<td>pānīs</td>
<td>piscis</td>
<td>postis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-s</td>
<td>sanguis</td>
<td>torris</td>
<td>unguis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-x</td>
<td>vermis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Neuter Terminations

- **-c, -a, -t, -e, -l, -n.**
- **-ar, -ur, -ūs (short).**
- **-ūs (long) in monosyllable.**

#### Principal Exceptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-L</th>
<th>sāl</th>
<th>sōl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-N</td>
<td>liēn</td>
<td>pectēn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rēn</td>
<td>splēn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ur</td>
<td>fūr</td>
<td>furfur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>turtūr</td>
<td>vultūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td>lēpūs</td>
<td>pēcūs (udis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td>grūs m.</td>
<td>sūs (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mūs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

† This sign denotes a Greek derivation.
TABLE OF GENDERS.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Masculine.

Except acus, idus (pl.), manus, porticus, tribus.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Feminine.

Except dies (f. in Poets), mēridiēs.

II.—GENDERS REGULATED BY MEANING.

A.—Masculine.

Names of (1) men, (2) men’s occupations, (3) months, (4) winds, (5) mountains, (6) rivers, (7) peoples. The exceptions arise from the terminations, such as:

(5) Aetna, Hybla, Ída; Calpē, Cyllēnē, Rhō-
dōpē; Alpēs (pl.); Pēliōn and Plurals implying ranges (jūgā) such as Gargārā, Iṣmārā, &c.; Sōractē.

(6) Allia, and others in -ā, Lēthē, Styx.

B.—Feminine.

Names of (1) women, (2) plants, (3) countries, (4) islands, (5) cities.

(2) Nouns of Decl. 2, in -us and -er, e.g. ācanthus, oleaster; Nouns in -um, e.g. āpium; Nouns of 3rd Decl. in -er, e.g. ācer, cīcer, pāpāver, pīper, sīler, sīser, and sūber; also rōbur and tūs.

The following are common: bālānus, cūtīsus, lōtus, rūbus, spīnus.

Exceptions


(5) Masc. (a) all Plurals in -i, e.g. Cūrīōlī; also (b) Canōpus and Orchōmēnus; (c) Nouns in -as, -ant, e.g. Acrāgās, -antis; (d) several in -o, -on, e.g. Hippo, -ōnis; (e) a few in -us, -unt-, e.g. Pessīnus, -untis. Neut. (a) Nouns in -um, -on, -ā (pl.) of Decl. 2; (b) most in -e, -ur, -os of Decl. 3.

1 These names may be regarded as adjectives agreeing with (1) and, (2) hōmo, (3) mensis, (4) ventus, (5) mons, (6) flūviōs, (7) pōptēlus.

2 These names may be regarded as adjectives agreeing with (1) múlier, (2) planta, (3) terra, (4) insula, (5) urbs.
THE DAYS OF THE MONTH.

APPENDIX VI.

RULE FOR TURNING THE DAYS OF THE MONTH FROM ENGLISH INTO LATIN.

In Latin the day of the month is reckoned not as in English, from the first day of the month but from (1) the Nonæ, i.e. the 5th or 7th of the current month; (2) the Idæ, i.e. the 13th or 15th of the current month; (3) the Kalælæ, i.e. the first day of the next month.

The Latin terms are—

1. **Nonæ, -ārum (f.), i.e. nine days before the Idæ.**

2. **Idæ, -ūm (f.), i.e. the dividing days of the month, falling about the middle.**

3. **Kalælæ, -ārum (f.), i.e. the calling days (Old Latin calære, proclaim), the day when the order of the days of the month was proclaimed to the people, the first day.

There is *in every month* an interval of 8 days between the Nonæ and the Idæ. The Nonæ are on the 5th, and the Idæ on the 13th, in every month, except March, July, October and May; in which four months the Nonæ are on the 7th and the Idæ on the 15th.

This is sometimes remembered from the rhyme:

```
In March, July, October, May,
The Nonæ are on the seventh day.
```

I. When the day falls *between the first* and the Nonæ, or *between the Nonæ and the Idæ*, the rule is (since the Romans reckoned inclusively) *Add one to the Nonæ or Idæ and subtract the day.*

Thus, if the day be 4 March, add 1 to the Nonæ of March; 7 + 1 = 8, subtract 4, the result is 4. This is written “ante diem quartum Nonæ Martias.”

If the day be 11 April, add 1 to the Idæ of April; 13 + 1 = 14; subtract 11, the result is 3. This is written “ante diem tertium Idus Aprīls.”

II. When the day falls *after the Idæ*, the rule is (since here we are reckoning not from the last day of the month but from the day after that), *Add two to the total number of days in the month, and subtracting the day from the result, reckon from the Kalælæ of next month.*

Thus if the day be 20 January, add 2 to 31, and from 33 subtract 20, the result is 13 days before the Kalælæ of February: and this is written thus “ante diem tertium dēcimum Kalælæ Februāriās.”

III. If the day is (a) on, or (b) the day before, the Nonæ, Idæ or Kalælæ, it is expressed by (a) the Abl., or (b) Prīdīe, followed by the Acc.: (a) 7th of May, “Nonīs Maiīs”; (b) 12th of June, “Prīdīe Ídus Jūniās”; 30th of June, “Prīdīe Kalælæ Quintīles”; 4th of August, Prīdīe Nonās Sextīles.

IV. Note that Adjectives, (and not Nouns in the Genitive) are used in each case. The Adjectives are, ("ante diem—Kalælæ, Nonæ, Ídus) Jānuāriās, Februāriās, Martiās, Aprīlēs, Maiās, Jūniās, Quintīles, Sextīles, Septembres, Octōbrēs, Novembres, Dēcembres."

---

1 We should say “eight days before”: but the Romans reckoned inclusively.

2 This is the derivation commonly given from an Etruscan word *iduāre*, divide: but more probably from Sanser. indh-, idh-, kindle, enlighten, (indu, moon) from being the days of light, the days of the full moon.

3 A rarer form is “tertio, quarto, tertio dēcimo die antē,” &c. The common construction cannot be explained except as a confusion.
APPENDIX VII.

ELEMENTARY RULES ON THE QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

As a Guide to Pronunciation.

I.—GENERAL RULES.

1. Diphthongs (aēs, brass) and contracted syllables (quīs for quībus) are long.

2. A vowel before another vowel (monēo) is short.

3. A vowel naturally short (e.g. the a in căno, I sing), when placed before two consonants (e.g. in cantus, song), is said to be long by position, and is long for the purposes of verse-making; but it is pronounced in the same way as the a in căno, so that length by position does not affect pronunciation.

II.—FINAL SYLLABLES.

1. Final -ā is long: exceptions; Nom., Voc., and Acc. cases; also ītā, quīā.

2. Final -ē is short: exceptions: (1) Adverbs in -ē derived from Adj. in -us, -a, -um, as maximē, (save bēnē, mālē, sūpernē); (2) Abl. Sing. of 5th Decl.; (3) 2nd Pers. Sing. Imper. of 2nd Conj.; (4) nē, mē, tē, sē.

3. Final -ī is long; but -ī is mostly short in mīhī, tībī, ēbī, ēbī, sībī, always in nīsī.

4. Final -ō is long; but mostly short in ēgō, mōdō (adv.) only.

5. Final -ū is long.

6. A vowel before -c is long; exceptions, nēc, dōnēc, fāc.

7. A vowel is short before final -b, -d, -l, -n, -r, and t.

---

1 None but the more important exceptions are given to every rule.

2 The quantities of syllables not final must be learned by experience; but the quantity of one word often helps the pupil to that of many derived words. For example, the short ō in mōnēo determines the quantity in admōnēo, commōnēo, mōnītus, -us, mōnītor, -ōris, monumentum, -ī, &c.; exceptions, dūcis, of a leader, dūco, I lead; sēdēs, a seat; sēdeo, I sit.
8. -äs and -ēs are long: but nouns in -es, increasing the Genit.,
are short, e.g. milēs, militis; and ēs (thou art) is short, both in
sum and in its compounds.

9. -īs is short: exceptions (a) Plural Cases, e.g. insūlīs,
dōmīnis, nōbis; (b) second Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic., of fourth
 Conj., audīs; (c) sis (Pres. Subj. of sum) and vis (Pres. Indic.
of vōlo), and their compounds, as well as velīs, mālīs, nōlīs;
(d) vis, violence.

10. -ōs is long: exception, ōs (Gen. ossis).

11. -ūs is short: exceptions; (a) Gen. Sing., and Nom. and
Acc. Pl., of Fourth Decl.; (b) nouns in -us which increase in the
Gen. with a long penult, virtūs, -ūtis.

N.B.—It will be seen that (by Rules 7 and 9) many of the
commonest monosyllables are short; ōb, sūb, ād, āt, ēt, īd, īn,
ān, vēl, pēr, tēr, vīr; also īs, and quīs.

But although (according to Rule II. 2) -quē, -vē, and -nē? are
short, nē lest is long, and so are the pronouns mé, té, se. Also
cūr? why? is long.
APPENDIX VIII.

ETYMOLOGICAL GLOSSARY OF GRAMMATICAL TERMS.

Ablative (Case) [L. *ab*, "from;" *latus*, "carried"]. The Case denoting, among other things, ablation, or carrying away from (3, 273).

Absolute (Construction) [L. *ab*, "from;" *solut-*, "loosed"]. A construction in which a Noun, Participle, &c., is supposed to be used apart, i.e. loosed from, its ordinary Grammatical adjuncts. But the *Abl. Absolute* is really an *Abl. of circumstance* (196).

Abstract (Noun) [L. *abs*, "from;" *tract-*, "drawn"]. The name of an abstraction, i.e. of something considered by itself, apart from (drawn away from) the circumstances in which it exists.

Accent [L. *ad*, "to;" *cantus*, "song"]. Perhaps originally a sing-song, or modulation of the voice, added to a syllable. Now used of stress laid on a syllable.

Accidence [L. *accident-*, "befall"]. That part of grammar which treats of the changes that *befall* words. (1); Quintilian I. 5, 41, "frequentissime in verbo quia plurima huic accidunt."

Accusative (Case). 2. Probably a Latin mistake. The Greek original meant (1) *cause*, (2) *accusation*. The Latins took it in sense (2) instead of (1). The Latin name for the Direct Objective Inflexion. Possibly the Romans regarded the object as confronted with the agent, like an accused person with the prosecutor.

Active (Voice). The form of a Verb that usually denotes acting or doing.

Adjective [L. *ad*, "to;" *jact-*, "cast or put"]. A word put to a Noun.

Adverb [L. *ad*, "to;" *verb-*, "word" or "verb"]. A word generally joined to a Verb.

Adversative [L. *adversus*, "opposite"]. An epithet applied to Conjunctions that (like "but") express opposition.

Affix [L. *ad*, "to;" *fix-*, "fixed"]. A syllable or letter fixed to the end of a word.

Agreement. The change made in the inflections of words so that they may suit or agree with one another.

Alphabet [Gr. *alpha*, *beta*; "a," "b"]. The list of letters, so called from the names
of the first two letters in Greek.

Anacolouthon [Gr. α-, "not;" acolouthon, "following'']. A break in the Grammatical sequence, or following.

Anomaly. A Greek-formed word meaning "unevenness," "irregularity."

Antecedent [L. ante, "before;" cedent-, "going'']. (a) That part of a sentence which expresses a condition. So called because the condition must go before its consequence. (b) Also used for the Noun that goes before a Relative Pronoun (107).

Apodosis [Gr. apo-dosis, "a paying back'']. A Greek name for the "Consequent," or "Then-Clause," in a Conditional Sentence (293). The Consequence was regarded as a sort of debt, to be paid in return for the fulfilment of the Condition.

Appellative [L. appella, "call to'']. A name for the Vocative or calling use of a noun.

Apposition [L. ad, "near;" posit-, "placed'']. The placing of one noun in the same case with another noun or pronoun, to express some quality, or circumstance, of the latter (123).

Asyndeton [from Greek "not bound together'']. The placing of words together without a Conjunction: see Par. 32.

Attribute [L. attribut-, "assigned'']. An Adj. assigned to qualify a Noun.

Cardinal (Numbers) [L. cardin-, "hinge'']. That on which anything hinges or turns: hence, "important." A name given to those more important forms of Numeral Adjectives from which the Ordinal forms are derived.

Case [L. casus, "falling'']. The Latin translation of the Greek term for the forms of a Noun. The subjective form was regarded as "erect," and the other forms as more or less falling away from it. Hence "oblique," "decline," &c.

Clause [L. claus-, "enclosed'']. A general term for a part of a Sentence, whether it be a Phrase or a Subordinate Sentence.

Cognate (Object) [L. co-, "together;'" (g)nat- "born'']. The name given to an object that denotes something akin to (born together with) the action denoted by the Verb.

Common (Noun). A name that is common to a class and not peculiar or proper to an individual.

Comparative (Degree). The form of an Adjective denoting that a quality exists in a greater degree in some one thing than in some other with which it is compared.

Complementary [L. comple- "fill up'']. That which completes, or fills up.

Complete (State). A name given to an action (whether Past, Present, or Future) that was, is, or will be complete.

Complex (Sentence) [L. con- "together;'" plc- "fold'']. A sentence that is folded together, or involved by con-
taining one or more Subordinate sentences.

Compound (Sentence) [L. con, or com, "together;" pon-, "place"]). A sentence made up of a number of Co-ordinate sentences placed together.

Concord. The name given to syntactical agreement between words, e.g. between Verb and Subject.

Conjugation [con, "together;" jugatio, "joining"]. A number of Verbs joined together in one class. Conjunction [L. con, "together;" junct-, "joined"]. A word that joins together two sentences expressed or implied.

Consequent. The name given to that part of a Sentence which expresses the consequence of the fulfilment of a condition. See Antecedent.

Consecutive. The name sometimes given to a clause introduced by "ut," so that, expressing result, or consequence, of an action.

Consonant [L. con, "together;" sonant-, "sounding"]. Letters (such as p) that can only be sounded together with a vowel.

Coordinate [L. co-, "with;" ordin-, "rank"]. The name given to a Sentence that ranks with the Principal Sentence (334a): see Note following the Glossary.

Correlatives. Words that are related together or mutually related, e.g., "either," "or;" "both," "and;" "when," "then."

Dative [L. dativus,2 "that which has arisen from giving"). The Latin name for the Indirect Objective case used after Verbs of giving, &c. (192)

Declension. The bending or declension of the Oblique (see Oblique below) cases from the Subjective form, which was regarded as "erect."

Defective (Verbs) [L. deficio, "I fail"). Verbs that are deficient in some of their forms: see p. 215.

Degree (of comparison) [L. gradus, Fr. degré, "step"]. The forms expressing the steps or degrees in which a quality can be expressed by an Adjective.

Dependent (Sentence). Sometimes used for Subordinate. But generally applied to Subordinate sentences that are the Subjects or Objects of Verbs (208, 239).

Deponent (Verbs) [L. deponens, "laying aside"]). Verbs that retain an Active meaning, while laying aside Active forms: Par. 199.

Diaeresis [Gr. diairesis, "separation"]). The mark placed over one of two vowels to show that each is to be

---

1 Hence to conjugate a Verb is to repeat the inflections belonging to the class or conjugation. But the Romans used decline and not conjugate in this sense (Madvig).

2 Termination -ivus in Latin, when added to Participles, denotes that which has arisen from, e.g. "captiveus," that which has arisen from "capture."
pronounced *separately*, *e.g.* in "aërial."

Diphthong [Gr. di, "twice;" *phthongos*, "sound"]; *two* vowel sounds pronounced as one.

**Direct (Object).** The Noun that denotes what is regarded as the direct object of the action of a Verb.

**Ellipsis** [Gr. *elleipsis*, "omission"]; The omission of words (said to be "understood" *i.e.* implied) in a Sentence.

**Enclitics** [Gr. "lean on"]; Words that cannot stand without *leaning on*, and being attached to, the words before them, *e.g.* -quê, -vê, -nê.

**Epithet** [Gr. *epithetos*, "placed to"]; An Adjective placed to a Noun to describe some quality of the person or thing denoted by the Noun.

**Final** [L. *finis*, "end"]; A final clause expresses an end or purpose; and "ut" final ("in order that") is distinguished from "ut" *consecutive* ("so that") (296).

**Finite (Verb).** A name given to those parts of the Verb which are defined by Number and Person, as distinct from the *Infinite* or *Infinite*.

**Frequentative (Verb).** A Verb that expresses a *frequently repeated action*, *e.g.* "ventito," *I* *often* come.

**Gender** [L. *genus*, Fr. *genre*, "breed," or "class"]; Forms to denote *classification* according to sex.

**Gerund** [L. *gero*, "I carry on"]; Part of the Verb denoting the *carrying on* of the action of the Verb. The Gerundive is Adjectival, the Gerund is a Noun (163, 170, 251).

**Gutturals** [L. *guttur*, "throat"]; *Throat* letters, *k*, and hard *g*.

**Historic Infinitive.** The *Infinitive* used for the *Indicative*, as is sometimes the case in rapid *historical* narrative: see Par. 320.

**Idiom** [Gr. *idioma*, "peculiar"]; A mode of expression peculiar to a language.

**Imperative (Mood).** [L. *impera*, "command"]; The *commanding Mood* (129).

**Impersonal (Verbs).** Verbs not used with a *Personal* Subject: see Par. 219.

**Indicative (Mood).** [L. *indica-,"point out"]; The Mood that *points out* or indicates an action, &c., as a past, present, or future existence.

**Indirect (Object).** The Noun or Pron. denoting the person or thing regarded as not directly but only *indirectly* influenced by the action of the Verb (192).

**Infinitive (Mood)** [L. *in*, "not;" *finit-", "limited"]; A Mood not limited by any definition of Person or Number.

**Inflection.** [L. *inflecto*, "I

---

1 The Latin "genitivus" is a mistranslation of the Greek *genike*, which meant the *generic case* *i.e.* the case that denoted the *genus* or *class*. For example "life," "What class of life?" "*Man’s* life."
bend"). The bending of a word from the simple form, by means of varying the termination. See Oblique. Interjection [L. inter-ject-，“thrown between”]. An utterance thrown in between words, to express emotion. Intransitive (Verb). [L. in, “not”; transitiv-，“passing across”]. A Verb whose action is not supposed to pass across to any Object. Labials [L. labium, “lip”]. Zip-letters: /, v, p, b, m, hw and w. Linguals [Latin lingua, “the tongue”]. Letters whose sounds are produced by the tongue: sh, s in pleasure. Locative (Case) [L. locus, “place”]. A case expressing place (Par. 265). Liquids. Letters of a flowing, liquid sound, as l, r. Monosyllable [Gr. mono, “only”]. A word of only one syllable. Mood [L. mod-,”manner”]. The form of a Verb expressing the manner of action. Mutes [L. mut-,”dumb”]. Letters that are dumb without the aid of a vowel: k, g, t, d, p, b. Nasal [L. nas-,”nose”]. Consonants sounded through the nose; n, m. Neuter (Gender). [L. neuter, “neither”]. That Gender which is neither Masc. nor Feminine. Nominative (Case) [L. nomina-,”to name”]. A Latin term for the Subject, because the Subject was regarded as a person or thing named. Noun [L. nomen, Fr. nom, “name”]. The name of anything. Object. The word, or group of words, denoting that which is regarded as the object or mark aimed at by the action of Verbs or the motion of Prepositions. Oblique (Case). A name given to all Cases but the Subjective. By the Greeks the Subjective form of a Noun was regarded as erect, and all the other forms as fallings or oblique deviations from the Subjective. Oblique (Speech). Speech reported, not directly in the First Person with the exact words of the speaker, but indirectly or obliquely in the Third Person. Ordinal (Adjective) [L. ordin-,”order”]. An Adjective, that answers to the question “in what order.” Palatals. Letters whose sounds are produced by the palate: ch, j. Participle [L. particip-,”participating”]. A form of a Verb participating in a Verb and an Adjective. Particle. A “little part”: a name given to the four undeclined “parts of speech,” Adverb, Conjunction, Interjection and Preposition. Partitive (Genitive). A Genitive implying partition (91). Passive (Voice). A form of the Verb expressing passiveness rather than active- ness. Perfect (Tense) [L. perfect-,”complete”]. The Name
for the Latin Tense that has to represent (1) our Indef. Past, (2) our Complete Present.

Period [Gr. peri, "round"; od-, "path"]. (1) The full, rounded path of a complex sentence, (2) a mark at the end of a sentence.

Person [L. per, "through"; son, "sound"]; hence, persona "a mask through which an actor sounds"); "an actor's part in a play"). The part played in conversation, (1) speaking; (2) spoken to; (3) spoken of.

Phrase [Gr. phrasis, a "saying"). A group of words not expressing a statement, question, or command.

Pluperfect (Tense) [L. plu- "more"; perfect, "complete"). A more than complete Tense. The Latin equivalent of our Complete Past (121).

Plural (Number) [L. plu- "more"). The form denoting more than one.

Polysyllable [Gr. poly, "many"). A word of many syllables.

Positive. The simple form of an Adjective; so-called because it expresses a quality not comparatively, but positively.

Possessive [L. possess-, "possessed"). The name given to the use or case of a Noun denoting possession.

Predicate [L. "praedica-," "proclaim," "state"]). A word or group of words making a statement about a Subject.

Prefix [L. prae, "before"); fix-, "fixed"). A letter, syllable, or word fixed before another word.

Preposition [L. prae, "before"); posit-, "placed"). A Word (not a Verb) generally placed before a Noun or Pronoun as its Object. N.B. A Preposition and its Object make up an Adverbial Phrase.

Pronoun [L. pro, "for"); L. nomen, "noun"). A word used for a Noun.

Proper (Noun). [L. propri-, F. propre; "peculiar"). A name that is peculiar or proper to the individual, not common to a class.

Prose [L. prosa, for prosa, for pro-versa, i.e. "turned forward"). Writing that does not turn like verses but runs straight on. Hence, the straightforward arrangement of prose.

Prosody [Gr. prosodia, a "song"). Hence, that part of Grammar which treats of verse, whether intended to be sung or not.

Protasis [Gr. pro, "before"); tasis, "stretching"). Literally, stretching before. Hence, in a sentence, the Antecedent or Condition. See Apodosis.

Punctuation [L. punctum, "point"). Dividing a sentence by means of points representing the pauses.

Quantity. The quantity of time necessary to pronounce a syllable.

1 Compare our e'er, o'er for ever, over.
Reduplication. The reduplicating or redoubling of a syllable, mostly found (but with some change) in a few Latin Perfects, e.g. "tendo," "te-tendi."

Reflexive (Pronoun) [reflexus, "bent back"]. A Pronoun which is as it were bent back on the Subject, so that the Pronoun and the Subject denote the same person or thing.

Relative (Pronoun) [L. re, "back;" lat-, "carried"]. A name given to qui, quae, &c., when used not Interrogatively to carry one forward, but to carry one back to the Antecedent.

Root. A word that gives birth to a group of kindred words, as a root to branches.

Sentence [L. Sententia, a "meaning"]. A group of words of meaning so complete as to express a statement, question, or command.

Sibilant L. [sibila-, hiss]. Hissing letters: s, z, sh.

Stem. That part of a word which remains the same when the word is inflected.

N.B.—The True Stem of a word is sometimes concealed by changes, e.g. the "o" which is part of the True Stem of "dominus" is lost in almost all the Cases. Hence the Stem of "dominus" as printed in Par. 12 appears to be "domin-.

This false Stem, which is obtained by clipping the True Stem of its final vowel, is sometimes called the Clipt Stem. (Par. 55, note 1.)

Subject [L. subject-, "placed under"]. That which is placed under one's thoughts, as the basis for speech. Hence, the Subject of a Verb is that about which the Verb makes a statement (127).

Subjunctive (Mood) [L. subjunct-, "subjoined"]. A Mood expressing a purpose, condition, &c., subjoined to some statement, question, or answer.

Subordinate (Sentence) [L. sub, "beneath;" ordin-, "rank"]. See Note p. 239.

Substantive (Noun) [L. substantia, "substance"]. A name given to Nouns, perhaps as being the substance or ground standing beneath the Adjective. It is from a Greek term, applied not to Nouns but to the Substantive Verb, "to be."

Suffix [L. sub, "beneath;" fix-, "fixed"]. Same as Affix.

Supine. A name given to two very rarely used Noun forms of the Verb used only in the Accusative and Ablative. Its origin is unknown, but it may at least serve to remind the pupil that these forms are the laziest and most supine of all the parts of the Verb: see Par. 246, 247.

Superlative (degree) [L. super, "above;" lat-, "carried"]. An Adjectival form denoting the expression of a quality in a degree carried above other degrees.

Syllable [Gr. syn, "together;" lab-, "take"]. A group of letters taken together so as to form one sound.

Syntax [Gr. syn, "together;"
**OF GRAMMATICAL TERMS.**

```


taxis, "arranging"]. The arrangement of words together in a sentence.
Temporal (Clause) [L. tempus, "time"]. An Adverbial Clause introduced by a Conjunction of time.
Tense [L. tempus, Fr. temps, "time"]. The forms of a Verb indicating the time of an action.
Transitive [L. trans, "across"; it, "going"]. A Verb that has an Object, so called because the action of the Verb is regarded as passing or going across to the Object.

Verb [L. verb-, "word"]. The chief word in a sentence.
Vocative [L. voca-, "call"]. The use, or Case, of a Noun when the person or thing is called to.
Vowels [L. vocalis, "having voice"]. The letters that have a voice or are sounded (not as the "consonants but) by themselves: a, e, i, o, u.

NOTE ON SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

Subordinate Sentences are those which express some (1) **Noun**, (2) **Adjective**, or (3) **Adverb** in another Sentence called the Principal Sentence.1

(1) **Noun** 

(a) (Subject.) "When he-will-come is uncertain."
(b) (Object.) "I say that he-will-come."

(2) **Adjective.** 

"The battle that-was-fought at Cannes was gained by Hannibal."

(3) **Adverb.** 

(a) (When?) "When he-had-heard-this he departed"; (b) (Why?) "I will strive that you-may-succeed"; (c) (How?) "He behaved so gently that he-surprised-everybody"; (d) (Where?) "Where the-Turk's-horse-goes, nothing grows."

For a list of the Principal Subordinate and Coordinate Conjunctions see Par. 334a.

---

1 A Subordinate Sentence (called also a Subordinate Clause) is sometimes defined as one that is "constructively dependent" on another Sentence. If this definition were adopted, a sentence in the Subjunctive preceded by "antequam" would be Subordinate, while the same sentence in the Indicative, preceded by "antequam," would not be Subordinate.
```
APPENDIX IX.

VOCABULARIES.

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.

adj. = adjective
adv. = adverb
c. = common gender
conj. = conjunction
f. = feminine
gen. = genitive
indec. = indeclinable
inter. = interrogative
m. = masculine
n. = neuter
pl. = plural
prep. = preposition
pron. = pronoun
sing. = singular
v. = verb

Exercise I.

aqua, f. water
aquila, f. eagle
filia, f. daughter
insula, f. island
nauta, m. sailor
pecunia, f. money
puella, f. girl
regina, f. queen
violentia, f. violence
amat, v. loves
dat, v. gives
lavat, v. washes
liberat, v. frees, delivers
monstrat, v. points out, shews
superrat, v. overcomes
voret, v. devours
et . . . et, conj. both . . . and

Exercises II.—VI.

constantia, f. constancy
culpa, f. blame, fault
dextra, f. right hand
expersentia, f. experience
femina, f. woman
intemperantia, f. intemperance
ira, f. anger
patentia, f. patience
patria, -ae, f. native land
procella, f. storm
prudentia, f. prudence
sapientia, f. wisdom
stella, f. star
dominus, m. lord, owner
equus, m. horse
filius, m. son
fluvius, m. river
 gladius, m. sword
hortus, m. garden
magister, m. master (mostly teacher)
mina, f. threat
minister, m. servant, attendant
servus, m. slave
labet, v. has
timet, v. fears
terret, v. terrifies, frightens
VOCABULARIES.

Exercises VIII.—XI.

āger, m. field
agrīcōla, m. husbandman
āper, m. boar
arbīter, m. umpire
Auster, m. south wind
cancer, m. crab
cāper, m. goat
cōlūber, m. snake
culter, m. knife
cāber, m. artificer, workman
gēner, m. son-in-law
hasta, -ae, f. spear
invidiā, -ae, f. envy
liber, m. book
Liber, m. Liber, the god of wine
libēri, m. pl. children
pūer, m. boy
sōcer, m. father-in-law
vesper, m. evening
vir, m. man, hero
culpat, v. blames
laudat, v. praises
nēque, or nēc, conj. and not, neither
nōn, adv. not
ā (āb before vowels or h), prep. by
sùpērantur, terrentur, see p. 11

Exercise XII.

argentum, n. silver
arvum, n. cornfield
aurum, n. gold
diligentia, f. diligence
dōnum, n. gift
mūrus, m. wall
Neptūnus, m. Neptune
oppidum, n. town
porta, -ae, f. gate
praemiium, n. reward
terra, f. land
templum, n. temple
dēlectat, v. delights, charms

Exercise XIII.

aurīga, m. charioteer
bōnus, -a, -um, good
dirūs, -a, -um, terrible
doctus, -a, -um, learned
ēpistūla, -ae, f. letter
impāvidus, -a, -um, fearless
imprōbus, -a, -um, dishonest
injustus, -a, -um, unjust
jussum, n. command
justus, -a, -um, just
magnus, -a, -um, great, large
parvus, -a, -um, little, small
pāvidus, -a, -um, fearful
pēlagus, n. sea
pēricūlum, n. danger
prübus, -a, -um, honest
scriba, m. scribe, clerk:
splendidus, -a, -um, splendid
strenūsus, -a, -um, vigorous
timidos, -a, -um, timid
vastus, -a, -um, vast
via, f. way

Exercises XIV. and XV.

aeger, -gra, -grum, sick, ailing
āla, f. wing
albus, -a, -um, white
altus, -a, -um, high, tall
Britannia, f. Britain
falsus, -a, -um, false
impiger, -gra, -grum, active
incōla, m. inhabitant
lātus, -a, -um, broad
mācer, -era, -erum, lean
miser, -era, -erum, wretched
morbus, m. disease
niger, -gra, -grum, black
piger, -gra, -grum, slothful
pōeta, -ae, m. poet
prosper, -pēra, -pērum, prosper,
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beautiful
rūber, -bra, -brum, red
sācer, -era, -erum, sacred
stultitia, -ae, f. folly
stultus, -a, -um, foolish
taeter, -tra, -trum, foul
væfer, -fra, -frum, cunning
vælidos, -a, -um, strong
verbum, -i, n. word

Est, v. (he) is; (there) is
Sunt, v. (they) are; (there) are

Exercise XVI.

acutus, -a, -um, sharp
aestas, aestatis, f. summer
arx, arcis, f. citadel
bellum, -i, n. war
clarus, -a, -um, renowned
comites, -a, -um, companion
dignus, -a, -um, worthy (g. abl.)
dux, ducis, m. leader
eques, equitum, m. horse-soldier
fessus, -a, -um, weary
gratus, -a, -um, pleasing
ignavia, -ae, f. sloth, cowardice
imperator, -oris, m. general
indignus, -a, -um, unworthy
ingratatus, -a, -um, displeasing
injustus, -a, -um, unjust
jucundus, -a, -um, agreeable
judex, iudicis, m. judge
lapis, -idis, m. stone
lex, legis, f. law
malus, -a, -um, bad
membra, f. memory, recollection
miles, militis, m. soldier
molestus, -a, -um, troublesome
nox, noctis, f. night
obscenus, -a, -um, dark
pedes, peditis, m. foot-soldier
pes, pedis, m. foot
rex, regis, m. king
sinister, -stra, -strum, left
spinæ, -ae, f. thorn
verbum, -i, n. word
delictat, v. (he) delights
laedit, v. hurts

Exercise XVII.

annus, -i, m. year
cæphas, elephantis, m. elephant
ferus, -a, -um, savage
grus, gruis, c. crane
hiemps, hœmis, f. winter
homo, hœminus, m. human being
hora, -ae, f. hour
leo, leonis, m. lion
longitudo, -tudinis, f. length
longus, -a, -um, long
mirus, -a, -um, wonderful
multitudo, -tudinis, f. multitude
multus, -a, -um, many, much
papilio, papiliones, m. butterfly
pœnum, -i, n. fruit
princeps, principis, m. chief
terra, -ae, f. land
trabs, trabes, f. beam
virgo, virginis, f. maiden
vivit, -unt, v. (he) lives, (they) live

Exercise XVIII.

amicus, -i, m. friend
amor, amoris, m. love
anser, anseris, m. goose
arbore, arbœris, f. tree
causa, -ae, f. cause
cinis, cinoris, m. ashes
clæmor, clæorris, m. clamour
clarus, -a, -um, clear, bright, renowned
colour, coloris, m. colour
consul, consulis, m. consul
florus, floris, m. flower,
frater, -tris, m. brother
frigidus, -a, -um, cold
injucundus, -a, -um, disagreeable
jussum, -i, n. command
mater, matris, f. mother
oculus, -i, m. eye
pater, patris, m. father
paucus, -a, -um, (mostly pl.) few
sepulcrum, -i, n. sepulchre
timor, timoris, m. fear
vox, vocis, f. voice
VOCABULARIES.

Exercise XIX.
caput, cãpitis, n. head
carmen, carminis, n. poem, song
cibus, -i, m. food
corpus, corpóris, n. body
deus, -i, m. God
doctrina, -ae, f. learning
eactum, -i, n. deed
fructex, frúticis, m. shrub
fulmen, fulminis, n. lightning
(j that strikes)
jus, juris, n. right or law
longus, -a, -um, long [chant
mercator, mercatóris, m. mer-
nómen, nóminis, n. name
mens, mentis, f. mind, understanding
opus, òpérís, n. work
poeìta, -ae, m. poet
sceîlus, sceîaris, n. crime
sidus, sidéris, m. star
verber, verbéris, n. lash, stripe
-que, conj. and
erat, v. (he) was; there (was)
erant, v. (they) were; (there) were
gens, gentis, f. nation
génnus, géneris, n. kind, race
hostis, hostis, m. enemy; oft.
pl. in Lat. where Eng. is
sing., hostium castra, the
camp of the enemy
ignávus, -a, -um, slothful
ignis, ignis, abl., -i, m. fire
imber, imbris, abl., -i, m. shower
máre, mários, n. sea
návis, návis, f. ship
notus, -a, -um, known
núbés, núbis, f. cloud
ós, óris, n. mouth, countenance
ós, ossis, n. bone
pastor, pastóris, m. shepherd
rápidus, -a, -um, rapid
róbur, robóris, n. strength
saevus, -a, -um, cruel, fierce
tempestás, -tatis, f. tempest
tóthus, -a, -um, whole
urbs, urbís, f. city
néque .. néque, conj. neither
.. nor
saepé, adv. often
consúmit, v. (he) consumes

Exercise XX.
ánimal, ánimalis, n. animal
ávidus, -a, -um, greedy
auréus, -a, -um, golden
Britannus, -i, m. adj. used as
noun, a Briton
calcar, calcáris, n. spur
certámen, certáminis, n. contest,
strife
civis, cívís, m. citizen
cívitas, cívítátis, f. state,
country, citizenship
crèber, -bra, -brum, repeated,
frequent
décus, décoris, n. honour
exitium, -i, n. destruction
ferrum, -i, n. iron, sword [rage
fúror, fúroris, m. madness,
gens, gentis, f. nation
génnus, géneris, n. kind, race
hostis, hostis, m. enemy; oft.
pl. in Lat. where Eng. is
sing., hostium castra, the
camp of the enemy
ignávus, -a, -um, slothful
ignis, ignis, abl., -i, m. fire
imber, imbris, abl., -i, m. shower
máre, mários, n. sea
návis, návis, f. ship
notus, -a, -um, known
núbés, núbis, f. cloud
ós, óris, n. mouth, countenance
ós, ossis, n. bone
pastor, pastóris, m. shepherd
rápidus, -a, -um, rapid
róbur, robóris, n. strength
saevus, -a, -um, cruel, fierce
tempestás, -tatis, f. tempest
tóthus, -a, -um, whole
urbs, urbís, f. city
néque .. néque, conj. neither
.. nor
saepé, adv. often
consúmit, v. (he) consumes

Exercise XXI.
ácér, m. ácrís, f. acre, n. keen
áninus, -i, m. mind
audáx, gen. audácis, bold
célér, m. célérís, f. céleré, n.
swift
consiliúm, -i, n. plan [gent
dilígens, gen. dilígentis, dili-
divés, gen. divítis, rich
dulcis, m. & f. dulce, n. sweet
equester, m. -trís, f. -tre, n.
equestrian
férax, gen. ferácis, fruitful
félíx, gen. féllicis, happy
fortis, m. & f., forte, n. brave
infélíx, gen. inféllicis, unhappy
insignis, m. & f. insignie, n.
distinguished, illustrious
lābor, lābōris, m. labour
laetitia, -ae, f. joy
laetus, -a, -um, joyful
mēlior, m. & f. mēlius, n. better
mors, mortis, f. death
prūdens, gen. prūdentis, prudent
sālūber, m. -bris, f. -bre, n. healthful
sāpiens, gen. sāpientis, wise
sēdītio, sēdītonis, f. sedition
tergum, -i, n. back
tristis, m. & f. triste, n. sad
tristior, to. & f. tristius, n. sadder
verber, -eris, n. lask, stripe
vestis, -is, n. garment
vita, -ae, f. life

EXERCISE XXII.

'almus, -a, -um, loving
ātrōx, gen. ātrōcis, stern, gloomy
āter, -tra, -trum, dark, black
bēnignus, -a, -um, kind
brēvis, m. & f., breve, n. short
cohors, cohortis, f. a cohort, the tenth part of a Roman legion
fama, -ae, f. reputation, fame
fēritās, fēritātis, f. savageness
hasta, -ae, f. spear
infirmus, -a, -um, weak
inhōnestus, -a, -um, dishonourable
irācundus, -a, -um, angry
omnis, m. & f. omne, n. all, the whole
poenitentia, -ae, f. penitence
prīmus, -a, -um, first
senex, sēnis, m. old man
tēner, -ēra, -ērum, tender
turpis, m. & f. turpe, n. disgraceful, base
vētus, gen. vētēris, old

vīnum, -i, n. wine
virtūs, virtūtis, f. virtue
vitium, -i, n. vice
quem, pron. acc. m. whom?
quis, pron. nom. m. who?

EXERCISE XXIII.

ācūs, -ūs, f. needle
adversus, -a -um, adverse
arcus, -ūs, bow
audītus, -ūs, hearing
Caesar, āris. m. Caesar
cervus, -i, m. stag
cōpia, -ae, f. plenty
cornū, -ūs, n. horn
cursus, -ūs, m. running, course
dīgitus, -i, m. finger
[ferent diversus, -a, -um, diverse, different
dūrus, -a, -um, hard
fractus, -ūs, m. fruit
frāmentum, n. corn
gēlīn, -ūs, n. frost
gēnū, -ūs, n. knee
glans, glandis, f. acorn
mūliēr, mūlēris, f. woman
myrītus, -i or -ūs, f. myrtle
pernīciosus, -a, -um, destructive
pinūs, -ūs, or -i, f. pine-tree
plebs, plēbis, f. the common people
portus, -ūs, m. harbour
quercus, -ūs, f. oak
rāmus, -i, m. branch
Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman
sāgītta, -ae, f. arrow
[perous secundus, -a, -um, second, pros- sinner, -tra, -trum, left
Scythia, -ae, m. a Scythian
do- lertia, -ae, f. skill, subtlety
taurus, -i, m. bull
tribus, -ūs, f. tribe

1 For the future, the quantity of the Nom. of the Fourth Decl. will not be marked. The pupil must bear in mind that the Nom. Sing. of the Fourth Decl. is to be pronounced short, diff. from the Gen. Sing. and Nom. and Ace. Pl. which are long.
tātus, -a, -um, safe
ūtīlis, m. & f. utile, n. useful
ūtīlitās, utīlītātis, f. utility
vēnātor, vēnātōris, m. hunter
ventus, -i, m. wind
visus, -ūs, sight
vulpēs, vulpis, f. fox
dātur (not dātur) v. is given
āgit, v. drives
compārat (-ant), v. obtains (-ain)
expectat, (-ant), v. awaits (-ait)
tīntelligīt, v. understands
vitāt, (-ant) v. avoids (-oid)
vulnērat (-ant), v. wounds (-nd)
nāves longae, long ships, i.e. ships of war

tantus, -a, -um, so great
tēnūris, m. & f. tenue, n. thin
āgitur, v. (he) is (being) driven
interdum, adv. sometimes
tam, adv. so

Exercise XXV. 1

āmicītīā, -ae, f. friendship
āsinus, m. ass
asper, -ēra, -ērum, rough, rugged
āvis, f. bird
brāchium, -i, n. arm
campus, -i, m. a plain
cānis, is, m. dog
crūs, crūris, n. leg
difficīlis, -e, difficult
discīpulus, -i, m. pupil
dissīmilis, -e, unlike
fertīlis, -e, fertile
grācīlis, -e, slender
hūmilis, -e, low, low-minded
īter, itīnēris, m. journey
nihil, indecl. n. nothing
pātrīa, -ae, f. native land
praeceptor, -ōris, m. teacher
prōcērus, -a, -um, tall
rēgio, -īonis, region, district
sāgax, sāgācis, sagacious
sīmilis, -e, like
sōror, ōris, sister
tardus, -a, -um, slow
testūdo, -inis, f. tortoise
turdus, -i, m. thrush
uxor, ōris, f. wife
vallīs, -is, f. valley
vēlōx, -ōris, swift
virtūs, -ūtis, virtue, valour
autem, conj. in the second place.
however, but, (never comes after a stop)
māgis, adv. more

1 The pupil must not expect to find the Comparative or Superlative forms of Adjectives in this Vocabulary. In looking out the meaning of hūmilītus, for example, he will only find hūmilis, the Positive
quädem, conj. than
indeed
complet, v. fills
dücit, v. leads

Exercise XXVI.

Alexander, -dri, m. Alexander
Balbus, -i, m. Balbus
bēnēvōlus, -a, -um, well-wishing, benevolent
castra, -orum, n. pl. camp
cōntio, -ōnis, f. speech
Graecus, -a, -um, Greek
maximē, adv. very greatly, most
mons, -nis, m. mountain
nātus, -ās, m. (used only in Abl. nātu, by birth)
pius, -a, -um, dutiful
praestans, -antis, excellent
rātio, -ōnis, f. reason
rēvērentia, ae, f. reverence
Sōcrētēs, -is, m. Socrates
tempus, -ōris, n. time
Tullius, -i, m. Tullius
quid, pron. (nom. and acc.) n. what?

Exercise XXVII.

antiquus, -a, -um, ancient
centūria, -ae, f. century
centūriō, -ōnis, m. a centurion
cērāsum, -i, n. cherry
Décember, gen. -bris, adj. of December
Germānus, -a, -um, German
Jānūārius, -a, -um, adj. of January
jūvēnis, -is, m. young man
lēgēio, -ōnis, f. legion

mänēpūlus, -i, m. maniple
Martīus, -īus, -īum, of March
mensis, -is, m. month
nux, nūcis, f. nut
ōvum, -i, n. egg
patrimōnium, n. patrimony
pauper, -ēris, poor
pōnum, -i, n. fruit
September, gen. -bris, adj. of September
tribūnus, -i, m. tribune
nunc, adv. now
quondam, adv. formerly, once
sōlum, adv. alone
tum, adv. then, during that period
tunc, adv. then, at that moment
castīgatur v. (he) is chastised

Exercise XXVIII.

armentum, -i, n. herd
āvārus, -a, -um, greedy
cārus, -a, -um, dear
cōrōna, -ae, f. crown
ensis, -is, m. sword
laus, laudis, f. praise
mālum, -i, n. evil
mōres, mōrum, m. pl. conduct
mōs, mōris, m. custom
nēmo, gen. nullius, dat. nēmīni, acc. nēminem, abl. nullo, no one
scūtum, -i, n. shield
tot, indecl. adj. so many
ūtērque, utrāque, utrumquē, adj. either, both
valēdē, adv. strongly, exceedingly
vōluptās, -tātis, f. pleasure
clāmant, v. (they) cry out
vitāre, v. to avoid

1 The irregular Comparatives and Superlatives given in the text are intended to be learned there, and are consequently not repeated here.
2 These terms are explained in a sentence of Exercise XXVII.
Exercise XXIX. and XXX.

äliĕnus, -a, -um, another's

crudĕlis, m. c. f. -e, n. cruel

ignărus, -a, -um, ignorant

immémor, gen. -ōris, adj. un-mindful

mémor, gen. -ōris, mindful

-né? euclitic, asks a question (emphasizing the word to which it is attached)

nōnunē, interrog. adv. (expects the answer 'Yes')

num? interrog. adv. (expects the answer 'No')

porcus, -i, m. pig

sed, conj. but (on the other hand); but yet; but still

tālis, -e, adj. such

cūrat, v. (he) takes-care-of

Exercise XXXI. and XXXII.

Belga, -ae, m. a Belgian

Dārius, -i, m. Darius

doctus, -a, -um, learned

fīnitīmus, -a, -um, bordering on

fons, fontis, m. fountain, source

Gallus, -i, a Gaul

Hōmērus, -i, m. Homer

huc, adv. hither

indoctus, -a, -um, unlearned

jūre, rightly, see Par. 58

maximē, adv. very greatly, especially, most of all

miśēricordia, -ae, f. pity

nīmis, adv. too much

nōmen, -inis, n. name

pāriter, adv. equally

pārens, -rentis, c. parent

patria, -ae, f. native land

Exercise XXXIII.

[The Conjugation of a Verb is denoted by the figure placed after it.]

Castīgo, -avi, -ātum, 1, punish, chastise

culpo, -avi, -ātum, 1, blame

do, dēdi, dātum, dāre, 1, give

dōno, -avi, -ātum, 1, present

egrēgius, -a, -um, excellent

ēmendo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, improve

erro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, err

inmīnicus, -a, -um, unfriendly

laudo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, praise

monstro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, show, point out

optimus, -a, -um, very good

rógo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, ask

saepē, adv. often

si, conj. if

Tullia, -iae, f. Tullia

vitūpēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, receive

1 Henceforth words must be looked out in the Vocabularies, pp. 243-327.

2 This Verb is irregular.
## APPENDIX X.

### VOCABULARY—I.

**LATIN INTO ENGLISH.**

---

**LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>ablatives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>accusatives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj.</td>
<td>adjectives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adv.</td>
<td>adverbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c.</td>
<td>common gender</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comp.</td>
<td>comparatives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conj.</td>
<td>conjunctions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>datives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>def.</td>
<td>defectives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dep.</td>
<td>deponents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f.</td>
<td>feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g., gen., dat., i</td>
<td>governs the gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abl., &amp;c. j</td>
<td>dat., abl., &amp;c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>genitives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impers.</td>
<td>impersonal verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indec.</td>
<td>indeclinable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indef.</td>
<td>indefinite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interj.</td>
<td>interjections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inter.</td>
<td>interrogatives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m.</td>
<td>masculine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n.</td>
<td>neuter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num.</td>
<td>numeral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p.</td>
<td>page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part.</td>
<td>participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass.</td>
<td>passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prep.</td>
<td>preposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pron.</td>
<td>pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel.</td>
<td>relative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing.</td>
<td>singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sup.</td>
<td>superlative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v.</td>
<td>verb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

1, 2, 3, 4, indicate the Conjugation of a Verb.

**Ab** (ā, abs), prep. with abl. from, by

ābēō, -īi or -īvi, -ītum, -īre, 4, to go away

āblīne, adv. (216) (313) ago (with acc. or abl.)

abjīcēo, -jīci, -jectum, 3, cast away

abēns, -entis, absent

abūlīi, see aufēro

absūm, abūi, abesse, *I am absent; minimum abest quin pēream, I*

am almost perishing, Par. 195: abest quinque milia passuum, *he is five miles off; prōpē ābēst ā nobis, he is close to us [the forms abfīui, abfātūrus, &c., for āfūi, āfātūrus, &c., are incorrect]*

absūmo, -umpi, -umpum, 3, consum., destroy

absurdus, -a, -um, adj. absurd

ābūndo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, abound

ābūtor, -ūsus, 3, v. dep. misuse, use
VOCABULARY.

ac, a form of acque
acēdō, -essi, -essum, 3, approach
accido, -idi (no sup.) 3, n. v. to happen (of ill fortune) [take
accipio, -cēpi, -cēpum, 3, receive
accombo, -cūbui, -cūbitum, 3, recline (at dinner)
acciuro, -cūcurri & -curri, -cursum, 3, run up, or towards
accūso, -āvi, -ātum, 1, accuse (q. gen. of the charge)
ācer, -cris, -cre, keen, sharp, active
ācerbus, -a, -um, bitter, painful
Achillēs, -is, m. Achilles
ācēs, -iēs, f. line (of battle)
āceō, -tū, -tūm, 3, I sharpen
ācus, -ās, f. needle
ācutūs, -a, -um, sharp
ād, prep. (q. acc.) to, at, near, towards, for (185, 186)
ādāmanthus, -a, -um, adamantine
ādeo, adv. so, to such an extent
ādeo, -ivi or -ii, -itum, 4, go to, come to, visit, consult (q. acc.)
ādeptus, see adēpiscor
ādhibēo, -ūi, -ūtum, 2, apply
ādhuc, adv. as yet
ādēpiscor, -eptus, 3, acquire, obtain
adjāmentum, -i, n. assistance
adjūvo, -jūvi, -jūtum, 1, assist
admiror, -ātus, 1, wonder at, admire
admitto, -mис, -missum, 3, to admit; admitti in se (acc) see's us, he gave crime entrance into himself, i.e. committed a crime
admōneō, -uī, -utum, 2, warn; remind; (eum eius rei)
ādōlescens, see ādūlescens
adsum, affuit, adesse, I am present, stand by, side with
ādūlātio, -ionis, f. flattery
ādūlātor, -ōris, m. flatterer
ādūlescens, -ntis, m. young men
advēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4, arrive
adventus, -ās, m. arrival
adversus, -a, -um. adverse; res adversae, adversity
adversus or -um, prep. (q. acc.) towards, against
aedes, -iis, f. sing. temple; pl. house
aedeficium, -ii, n. building
aedefico, -āvi, -ātum, 1. build
Aedui, -orum, m. pl. the Aedui, a Gallic tribe
aeger, -gra, -grum, sick; aegreg
fēro hoc, I bear this ill, i.e. I resent this
Aegyptus, -i, f. Egypt [just aequus, -a, -um, adj. level, even, är, ärīs, m. the air
aes, aeris, n. brass, money; aes \-āliēnum, debt
aestas, -ātis, f. summer
aestūm, -āvi, -ātum. 1, I value; with magni, pluris, &c. (283)
aetas, -ātis, f. age, time of life
aeternus, -a, -um, adj. eternal
aether, -ēris, m. the upper air, heaven
affōro, attūlī, allātum, afferrē. I bring to, cause; (imper.) allatum est, word was brought
afficiō, -fēci, fectum, 3, treat; afficere, volūptāte, supplīcio, mētu, I treat you with honour, pleasure, &c., i.e. I honour you, cause you pleasure, visit you with punishment, &c.
affirmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, assert
affligo, -ixi, -ictum, 3, I cast down, prostrate
Africa, -ae, f. Africa
āger, -gri, m. field, lands
agger, -ēris, m. a mound
agnosco, -nōvi, -nūtum, 3, recognize
āgo, -āgi, -actum, 3, drive, lead, act, do; id āgo ut, I am doing my best to; grātiās āgere, to return thanks; causam a., plead a cause; vitam a., lead a life; nihil a., do nothing; actum est de nōbis, it is all over with us; hōc āgitur, this is being done, i.e. this is the point, or question
agrícula, -ae, m. husbandman

âo, v. def say, see p. 215; ut aiunt, as they say, i.e. as the proverb goes

âla, -ae, f. wing

Albânius, -a, -um, Alban

albus, -a, -um, white

Alcibiádes, -is, m. Alcibiades

Álexander, -dri, m. Alexander (the Great)

âlias, adv. at one time, at another

âlibi, adv. at one place, at another place; alii a. stant, some stand in one place, others in another

âliènus, -a, -um, another's; âliēna sūis antēpōnīt, he places the interests of others above his own; aec âliēnum, debt; in aerē âliēno esse, to be in debt

âlīo, adv. to one place, to another

âliquando, adv. sometimes, at some time or other

âliquus, -quae, -quid, pron. some one, something, decl. like quis

âliquo, adv. somewhat, as if, terrârum, (part. gen.) to some place in the world

âliet, adv. otherwise, differently

âlius, -a, -ud, irr. adj. one of any number, one another. See Par. 86

âllatūm, see affero

âllicio, -lexi, -lectum, 3, allure

Allôbrôges, -um, m. the Allobroges

allôquor, -â locâtus, 3, dep. speak to, accost (g. acc.)

âlîmus, -a, -um, loving

âlô, âlīu, altum, 3, nourish, rear

Alpês, -ium, f. pl. the Alps

alter, -tēra, -tērum, (gen. -erūs, dat. -erī), one of two, second, the other; unus et a, one or two; viceēstimus a., twenty-first

âltus, -a, -um, high, deep

âmâblis, -e, adj. lovely [Par. 288]

âmens, -ntis, adj. loving, (g. gen. -mGLOSS: AR

âmârus, -a, -um, bitter

âmbo, -ae, -o, both. See Par. 77

ambiûlo, -âvi, -ârum, I walk

âmens, -ntis, senseless, mad

amîcio, -icûi or -ixi, -ictum, 4, cover, clothe

âmiciâ, -ae, f. friendship

ânicus, -i, m. friend

âmô, -âvi, -âtum, 1, love

âmor, -oris, m. love

âmitto, -mîsi, -missum, 3, lose

annis, -is, m. river

ân, or (in dep. quest., see Par. 171); (also in direct quest., an alternative being understood), An nōs prōdēs? i.e. (you will be faithful, will you not?) Or will you actually betray us? (171, 302)

Angli, -orum, m. pl. Englishmen

anguis, -is, m. snake

angustus, -a, -um, adj. narrow

ânimadvertero, -i, -sum, 3, observe

ânûmâl, -âlis, n. animal

ânîmus, -i, m. mind, soul, courage

annōn, see Par. 172

annus, -i, m. year [vestigate]

ânquifro, -quisīvi, -quisītum, 3, in answer, -crīs, m. goose

antē, prep. (g. acc.) before, (183); adv. paucis ante annis, a few years before; N.B.—distinguish the prep. from the conj. ante...

quam, or antequam; anteā, adv. before those things, beforehand

antēpōna, -pōnus, -pōsitum, 3, prefer (g. acc. and dat.) (192)

antequam, conj. before, until

Anthrōpōphâgi, -orum, m. pl. man-eaters, cannibals

ântiquus, -a, -um, ancient

ânûlus (not ânnûlus), -i, m. ring

ânûs, -âs, f. old woman

aper, -pri, m. wild boar

âpērio, âpērūl, âpertum, 4, open

âpertus, -a, -um, open, clear

Apollo, -inis, m. Apollo

appello, -âvi, -âtum, 1, call

âpricus, -a, -um, sunny

âquid, prep. g. acc. See Par. 183
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aptus, -a, -um, fit</td>
<td>apt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aqua, -ae, f. water</td>
<td>water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aquila, -ae, f. an eagle</td>
<td>eagle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arbitrer, -tri, m. umpire</td>
<td>judge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arbitror, -átus, 1, (v. dep.) consider, judge</td>
<td>judge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arbor, -óris, f. tree</td>
<td>tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Archimédès, -is, m. Archimedes</td>
<td>Archimedes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arci, see arx</td>
<td>arc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arcus, -ús, m. bow</td>
<td>arch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ardéo, arsi, -sum, 2, v. intr., I burn, am on fire</td>
<td>burn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ardúus, -a, -um, adj. lofty, steep, difficult</td>
<td>difficult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>argenteus, -a, -um, silver</td>
<td>silver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>argentum, -i, n. silver; money</td>
<td>silver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aríovístus, -i, m. Aríovístus</td>
<td>Aríovístus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arma, -órum, n. pl. arms</td>
<td>arms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ärménia, -ae, f. Armenia</td>
<td>Ärménia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>armentum, -i, n. herd</td>
<td>herd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arma, -ávi, -átum, 1, arm, equip</td>
<td>arm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>áro, -ávi, -átum, 1, plough</td>
<td>plough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arpínum, -i, n. Arpínum, the birth-place of Cícero</td>
<td>Arpínum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ars, artis, f. art, handicraft</td>
<td>art</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arvum, -i, n. corn-field</td>
<td>field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arx, arcis, f. citadel</td>
<td>citadel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as, assis, m. the smallest Roman coin; it may be translated a farthing (used in the genit. of indef. price; see Ex. LXXXX.)</td>
<td>coin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia, -ae, f. Asia (mostly Ā)</td>
<td>Asia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ásínus, -i, m. ass</td>
<td>ass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asper, -éra, -érum, rough, rugged</td>
<td>rough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aspernor, -átus, 1, v. dep. reject, despise</td>
<td>reject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aspicio, -spexi, -spectum, 3, look at</td>
<td>look at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asséquor, -secutus, 3, attain</td>
<td>attain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>át, conj. but (more abrupt than sed)</td>
<td>but</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>áter, atrum, atrum, black, gloomy</td>
<td>black</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Äthénæ, -ärum, f. pl. Athens</td>
<td>Athen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Äthéniensis, -e, Athenian</td>
<td>Athenian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atqúe (or ac, but not before vowels), conj. and further, and; often used to couple words of similar meaning, e.g. súciì atqúe ámuíci, hónestissimus atqúe ornátissimus</td>
<td>and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>átrox, -ócis, stern, gloomy</td>
<td>gloomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auctor, -óris, m. adviser, author; Tullio auctôre, at the advice of Tullius (197)</td>
<td>author</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auctóritas, -átis, f. authority</td>
<td>authority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auctumnus, -i, m. autumn</td>
<td>autumn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audactér, adv. boldly, daringly</td>
<td>boldly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audáx, -ácis, bold</td>
<td>bold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audéo, ausus sum, audère, 2, to dare, venture</td>
<td>dare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audio, -ívi, -itum, 4, hear</td>
<td>hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditus, -us, m. hearing</td>
<td>hearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aufféro, abstúli, ablátum auferró, I carry away, take away</td>
<td>carry away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>augeo, auxí, auctum, 2, augment</td>
<td>augment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Augustus, -i, m. Augustus, the first emperor of Rome</td>
<td>Augustus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auréus, -a, -um, golden</td>
<td>golden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auríga, -ae, m. charioteer</td>
<td>charioteer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auris, -is, f. an ear</td>
<td>ear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aurum, -i, n. gold</td>
<td>gold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ausus, see audeo</td>
<td>use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auster, -tri, m. South wind (173)</td>
<td>wind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aut...aut, either...or else (157a, autem, conj. but, in the second place (placed after the first word of the clause to which it belongs); see quidem (67)</td>
<td>but</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auxilium, -i, n. help, aid</td>
<td>help</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ávārus, -a, -um, avaricious, greedy</td>
<td>greedy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ávidus, -a, -um, greedy</td>
<td>greedy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ávis, -is, f. bird</td>
<td>bird</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ávus, -i, m. a grandfather</td>
<td>grandfather</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Bábýlôn, -ónis, f. Babylon**

bálæna, -ae, f. a whale | whale |

Balbus, -i, m. Balbus | Balbus |

barbarus, -a, -um, barbarian | barbarian |

bēátē, adv. happily | happily |

bēátus, -a, -um, adj. happy | happy |

Belgæ, -ae, m. a Belgian | Belgian |

bellicósus, -a, -um, adj. warlike | warlike |

bello, -ávi, -átum, 1, I wage war | wage war |

bellum, -i, n. war | war |

bēlīna, -ae, f. a great beast | beast |

bēnē, adv. well | well |

bēnēficium, -ii, n. benefit | benefit |
benevolent, -a, -um, benevolence

benevolentia, -ae, f. benevolence

benevolus, -a, -um, well-wishing, benevolent. See Par. 68a

bigné, adv. kindly

bignexus, -a, -um, kind

bestia, -ae, f. a beast ; damnari ad

bestias, to be condemned to be ex-

posed to the beasts (in the amphi-

theatre)

bibo, bibi, bibitum, 3, I drink

Bibulus, -i, m. Bibulus

bidium, -i, n. two days ; bidui

iter, two days' journey

biennium, -i, n. two years

bini, -ae, -a, two apiece (311)

bis, adv. twice

blandior, -itus, with dat. 4, v. dep.

I flatter, win upon

bóna, -orum, n. pl. goods, blessings

bónum, -a, -um, adj. good [311

bós, bóvis, c. ox, cow, see Par.

bracchium, -i, n. arm

brévis, -e, short, brief

Britannia, -ae, f. Britain

Britannus, -i, m. a Briton

Brutus, -i, m. Brutus

būbas, see bós

Cádáver, -óris, n. corpse

cádo, cecídi, cásum, 3, I fall ; N.B.

distinguish this from cecídi

cæcus, -a, -um, adj. blind

caedés, -is, f. slaughter

caedo, cecídi,.caesum, 3, strike, cut
down, slay ; N.B. distinguish
this from cecídi

caelestis, -e, celestial

cælicólae, -arum, n. pl. lit. heaven-
dwellers, i.e. gods

cælum, -i, n. heaven

Caesar, -áris, m. Caesar

cálamitas, -átis, f. calamity

calcár, -árís, n. spar

cálíx, -éris, m. cup

cálor, óris, m. heat

Cámillus, -i, m. Camillus

Campáña, -ae, f. Campania
campus, -i, m. plain

cancer, -cri, m. crab

cánis, -is, c. dog

Cannae, -arum, f. pl. Cannae, a

village where Hannibal defeated

the Romans

cáno, cecíni, cantum, 3, sing ; túbá

cecidinit, the trumpet sounded

canto, -ávi, -atum, 1, I sing
cantus, -ús, m. song
cáper, -pri, m. goat
cápillus, -i, m. hair (pl. once in

Cicero, but in poetry often)
cápiro, céri, captum, 3, take [ive
captivus (or captus) -a, -um, capt-

Cápuá, -ae, f. Capua, the most

luxurious city in Italy

cáput, -itis, n. head ; gentis cáput,

the capital city of the nation ;

cápité multo, I punish with
dead ; cápitis damno, I con-
demn to death (Ex. LXXX.)
career, -óris, m. prison

cardo, -inis, m. hinge
cárco, -ui, 2, I am without (g. abl.) ;
fácile c. vino, I easily do with-
out wine

carmén, -inis, m. song
cáró, cárnis, f. flesh [ginian

Carthá-ginénsis, -e, adj. Cartha-

Carthago, -inis, f. Carthage
cáurus, -a, -um, dear
cása, -ae f. cottage
cásus, -i, m. cheese

cástigo, -ávi, -atum, 1, chastise

punish
castrá, -orum, n. pl. camp

cásus, -ús, m. chance, accident ;

diversis cásus, with varied for-
tunes

cátna, -ae, f. chain

Cátilina, -ae, m. Catiline

Cáto, -onis, m. Cato

causa, -ae, f. cause ; andíendi

causa, for the sake of hearing ;
causam égit, he pleaded a cause
cāvēō, cāvi, cautum, 2, beware, beware of (g. acc.); cāvē nē fācīas, take care not to do; cāvē-bātūr, precautions were taken

cēcīdi, see cādo and caedo

cēdo, cessi, cessum, 3, yield; c. tībi, I yield to you; c. āciē or ex āciē, I retire from the battle

cēler, -ēris, -ēre, swift; cēlēritēr, adv. swiftly (61)
cēlēritis, -tātis, f. speed

cēlo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, conceal, (g. two acc.). See Par. 312

celus, -a, -um, adj. lofty, tall

cēna, -ae, f. dinner; cēno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, dine (perf. also cēnātus sum); cenātus, having dined

centum, see Par. 81

centūria, -ae, f. a (military) century (see Ex. XXVII., sent. 8)
centūrīo, -iōnis, m. centurion (the officer of a century)

cērāsum, -i, n. cherry

cērāsus, -i, f. the cherry-tree

cērebrum, -i, n. brain

Cērēs, Cērēris, f. Ceres

certāmen, -iinis, n. contest, strife; in certāmen hōnōris vēnērunt, they entered into a competition for distinction

cerno, 3, I see, discern

certus, -a, -um, adj. certain; certi-orem te fēci, I informed you (joll. by Gen., or Object Injunctive); fixed, certum oppūs, a fixed task

cervus, -i, m. stag

[cecēt], -ēra, -ērum, adj. the rest, the rest of (see Eng. Latin Vocab., of); pl. cēctēri, the others

cēbus, -i, m. food

Cīcēro, -ōnis, m. Cicero

cīnis, cīnēris, m. ashes

cingo, -nxi, -nctum, 3, I surround

circā, circum, prep. (g. acc.) around

circētēr, prep. with acc. about

circundādo, -dāre, -dēdi, dātum, 1, (1) to put round (acc. and dat.);

(2) to surround (acc. and abl.)
circunspiciō, -spexi, -spectum, 3, look round

circunsto, -stētī, -stāre, stand round; (part. as noun) circum-stantes, -iun, by-standers [of
cis, citrā, prep. (g. acc.) on this side
Cisalpinus, -a, -um, on this side of the Alps, Cisalpine

cīthāra, -ae, f. lute [quickly

cīto, adv. quickly; cītius, more

civilis, -e, adj. belonging to a citizen, civil

civis, -is, m. citizen

civitas, -tātis, f. state, citizenship; dōnant ēum civitātē, they present him with the citizenship

clādes, -is, f. slaughter

clam, adv. secretly; prep. (g. abl.) without the knowledge of

clāno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, cry out, shout

clāmor, -ōris, m. clamour, shout

clude, -si, -sum, 3, shut

clārus, -a, -um, clear, renowned

classis, -is, f. a fleet

clēmēnter, adv. gently, mercifully

cōactus, see cōgo

cōcelestis, see caelestis

cōelum, see caelum

cōena, see cēna

cōeno, see cēno

cōēo, -īvi or -īi, ētum, 4, join together (v. intrans.)
cōerēcō, -ūi, -ūtum, 2, restrain

cōgito, -āvi, ētum, 1, I think, meditate

cognosco, -nōvi, -nītum, 3, learn, ascertain

cōgo, cōēgi, cōēctum, 3 compel

cōhors, -rtis, f. cohort, a tenth part of the legion

cōhortor, -ātus, 1, v. dep. en-courage

collīgo, -ēgi, -ectum, 3, collect
collis, -is, m., hill
collōquium, -i, n. conversation
collōquor, -cutus, 3, v. dep. I converse
collūvīes, (acc. -em, abl. -e) f. medley, confusion
cōlo, cōlūi, cultum, 3, cultivate, worship, cherish
cōlōnīa, -ae, f. a colony
cōlōnus, -i, m. farmer
cōlor, -ōris, m. colour
cōlumba, -ae, f. dove
cōlūber, -bri, m. snake
cōmēs, -ītis, m. companion [penny-
cōmītor, -ätus, 1, v. dep. I accom-
commēcātus, -ās, m. provisions, supplies
commēmōrātio, -iōnis, f. com-
memoration, mention
commīltio, -ōnis, m. fellow-soldier
commīmus, adv. hand to hand
commītto, -mūsi, -missum, 3, com-
mitt; c. proelium, join (lit. send
together) battle
compāro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, get to-
gether, obtain
compello, -pūli, -pulsum, 3, drive
together
compōrio, -pēri, -pertum, 4, find,
ascertain; compertum hābeo, I have (it) ascertained (with acc.
and inf.)
compēs, -pēdis, f. fetter
compelo, -ēvi, -ētum, 2, fill
comprēhendo (or comprendo), -di,
-sum, 3, I seize [retire
concēdo, -essi, -essum, 3, yield,
concordia, -ae, f. concord
concērōmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, burn up
condemno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, condemn
condicio, -iōnis, (less correctly con-
dition), f. condition; (in pl.) terms
(of peace, &c.)
condūco, -xi, -ctum, 3, hire
condo, -didi, -ditum, 3, found;
post conditam urbem, after the
foundation of the city
confēro, -tūli, collātum, conferre,
3, irr. I bring together, betake;
se contūlit rūs, he betook him-
self to the country
confessus, see confitēor
conficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3, I finish,
accomplish
confido, -īsus, -sum, 3, g. dat. I
trust
confitēor, -fessus, 2, confess
confūgio, -fugi, 3, I flee for refuge
conjicio, -jēci, -jectum, 3, hurl
conjūrātio, -ōnis, f. a conspiracy
conjūrātus, -i, m. conspirator
cōnors, -ātus, 1, v. dep. attempt
conscendo, -di, -sum, 3, mount,
go on board (ship)
conscientia, ae, f. conscience
conscribo, -scripsi, -scriptum, 3,
envol (soldiers)
consentio, -nsi, -nsum, 4, agree
conservo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, I preserve,
maintain
consiliūm, ii, n. plan, purpose
wisdom
constanter, adv. steadily, firmly
constantia, -ae, f. constancy, firmness
constat, -stītī, 1, imper. v. it is
agreed, well-known &c.
constitūto, -ūi, -ūtum, 3, determine
consuētūdō, -inis, f. habit
consul, -ūlis, m. consul; Gaio et
Balbo consūlībus, Gaius and
Balbus being consuls
consulūtus, -ūs, m. office of consul,
consulate
consūlo, -lūi, -ltum, 3, consult; c.
tibi, I c. your interests; c. te, I
consult you
consumo, -mpsi, -mptum, 3, con-
sume, waste away
contemno, -mpsi, -mptum, 3,
despise
contemplor, -ātus, 1, v. dep. con-
template
contendo, -di, -sum, or -tum, 3
gaze at, hasten (278)
contentus, -a, -um (g. abl.) contented (278)
continuo, -ūi, -entum, 2, I hold together
contre, -tīgi, 3, befall; contigit mihi, it was my good luck
continuo, adv. forthwith; N.B. not continually
contio, -ōnis, f. speech, harangue
contra, prep. (g. acc.) against
contrāho, -āxi, -actum, 3, draw together
contrārius, a, -um, contrary (189)
contumelia, -ae, f. an insult
convalesco, -i, n. reviling, abuse
convocō, -āvi, -atum, 1, call together
cōpiā, -ae, f. plenty; cōpiāe, -ārum, f. pl. forces
cōr, cordis, n. the heart
cōrām, prep. (g. abl.) in presence of
Cōrinthus, -i, f. Corinth Cornēlia, -ae, f. Cornelia
cornū, -ōs, n. a horn
cornōna, -ae, f. a crown
corpus, -ōris, n. body
corrīgo, -exi, -ectum, 3, correct
corrūpio, -rīpū, -reptum, 3, snatch away; morbo corruptus est, he was carried off by disease
cotidie, see quotidie
crās, adv. to-morrow
Crassus, -i, m. Crassus, a miserly millionaire of the times of Cicero
creātor, -ōris, m. creator
creāvē, -bra, -brum, frequent, recredibilis, -e, adj. credible
credō, -dīdi, -ditum, 3, believe (g. credit, -āvi, -ātum, 1, I create, make
Crēta, -ae, f. Crete
crimen, -īnis, n. charge, accusation
crēnis, -is, m. hair
crucītātus, -ūs, m. torture
crudelis, -e, cruel
crudelitas, -ātis, f. cruelty
crūs, crūris, n. leg
culpa, -ae, f. blame, fault; see extrā
culpo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, blame
culter, -tri, m. knife
cum, prep. (g. abl.) with
cum, (sometimes wrongly spelt quum) conj. when, (Par. 151) since; cum ... tum not only
... but also; N.B. — cum is never interrogative; see quando
Cūmae, -ārum, f. pl. Cumeae, (a city) cunctor, -atus, 1 (v. dep.) delay
cuctive, -a, -um, adj. all (together)
cupiditas, -ātis, f. desire, passion
cupidus, -a, -um, fond of (g. gen.)
cūpio, -īvi and -iī, -ātum, 3, desire
cūr, adv. why? (also conj. in dep. sent.); non est cūr timēas, there is not (any reason) why you should fear
cūra, -ae, f. care
cūro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, take care;
cūrā ut, or nē, ēās take care to, or not to, go
curro, cūcūrri, cursum, 3, run
currus, -ōs, m. chariot
cursus, -ūs, m. running, course
custōdīo, -īvi or -iī, -ātum, 4, guard
custos, custōdis, m. a guardian
Cyprus, -i, f. Cyprus

Damnō, -āvi, -ātum, 1, condemn
Dārius, -i, m. Darius
de, prep. (g. abl.) down from, from, concerning
dēa, -ae, f. a goddess (dat. and abl. pl. déabus) see Par. 311
dēbō, -ūi, -ātum, 2, owe: dēbūi
dāre. I ought to have given (223) débilis, -e, adj. feeble
dēcem, see Par. 81
Décleró, -ávi, -átum, 1, lament over, deplore

déposco, -poposci, 3, demand
dérisus, -ús, m. laughing-stock
descendo, -scendi, -scensum, 3, come, or go, down
descisco, -scivi, -scitum, 3, revolt
déséro, -ruí, -rtum, 3, I abandon
désidéro, -ávi, -átum, 1, long for
(what is absent)
désum, -fui, -esse, (dat.) be wanting to, fall short, fail
détergo, -xi, -ctum, 3, reveal, disclose
déterréro, -uí, -ítum, 2, frighten
détexo, -texuli, -textum, 3, finish
wearing, finish
detineo, -ui, 2, detain, keep back
détrahó, -traxi, -tractum, take away, withdraw
Déns, -i, m. God
dévinco, -vici, -vectum, 3, subdue
dextra, -ae, f. right hand
Diana, -ae, f. Diana
dico, -xi, -ctum, 3, say, speak; dicitur Tullius, &c., it is said that
Tullius, &c. (Par 177)
dictito, -ávi, -átum, 1, say often
dictum, -i, a saying
díes, -i, m. (f. in poets) day
dificilís, -e, difficult (60) [trust
diffido, -fisum, 3, (g. dat.) dis-
diffindo, -fídi, -físsum, 3, cleave
asunder
digéro, -gessi, -gestum, 3, arrange
digitus, -i, m. finger [authority
dignitás, -átis, f. dignity, worth,
dignus, -a, -um, worthy (g. abl.)
dilabor, -lapsus, 3, slip away in
different directions
diligens, -ntis, adj. diligent, careful
diligenter, adv. carefully
diligentia, -ae, f. diligence
diligentissimé, adv. most carefully
diligo, -exi, -ectum, 3, love, esteem
dimico, -ávi, -átum, 1, fight (a battle)
VOCABULARY.

dimidium, -i, -n. half
dimitto, -isi, -issum, 3, I let go,
dissimiss

Dionysius, -ii, m. Dionysius, a
tyrant of Syracuse
diripio, -ripui, -reptum, 3, plunder
discendo, -cessi, -cessum, 3, depart
disciplina, -ae, f. discipline
discipulus, -i, m. pupil
disco, didici, 3, learn
discordia, -ae, f. discord
displieco, -ui, -atum, (g. dat.) 2,
displesa
disputo, -avi, -atum, 1, discuss
dispulantio, -onis, f. discussion
dissimilis, -e, adj. unlike; g. gen.
or dat. (see Par. 66, 60)
distraho, -traxi, -tractum, 3, draw
asunder
distribuo, -dui, -atum, 3, distribute
diui, adv. long, for a long time
diutius, adv. longer
diversus, -a, -um, diverse, different
dives, -itus, rich [parate
divido, -visi, -visum, 3, divide, se-
divinus, -a, -um, divine
divitiæ, -arum, f. pl. riches
do, dedi, datum, dare, 1, give; do
litteras, I date a letter
docéo, -üi, -ctum, 2, I teach (g.
two acc.) See Par. 312
docté, adv. learnedly, skilfully
doctrina, -ae, f. learning
doctus, -a, -um, learned
dólco, -ui, 2, grieve
dolor, -orius, m. pain, grief
dólus, -i, m. craft, treachery; per
dólum, treacherously
domesticus, -a, -um, domestic
domicilium, -ii, n. an abode
domina, -ae, f. mistress
dominaeus, -us, m. rule, sovereignty
dominus, -i, m. master, owner
domo, -üi, -ctum, 1, tame, subdue
domus, -i, f. house, home; domi,
at home; domum, homeward,
Pars. 249, 265
dono, -avi, -ätüm, 1, present, g.
acc. and dat. like do; or else
acc. and abl.; dono éum équo,
I present him with a horse
dönum, -i, n. gift
dormio, -ivi or ii, -itum, 4, sleep
dorsum, -i, n. back
dūbito, -avi, -ätum, 1, doubt
dūbius, -a, -um, adj. doubtful; non
dūbiun est quin, it is not doubt-
ful that, i.e., there is no doubt
that (foll. by Subjunct.)
dūcenti, -ae, -a, see Par. 81 [(237)
dūco, -xi, -ctum, 3, lead, marry
dulcis, -e, sweet, delightful
dum, conj. (Par. 272) while
dürus, -a, -um, hard
dux, dúcis, c. leader, general

É, ex, prep. (g. abl.) out of, from:
ex impróbo, físi impróbior, from
bad, you are becoming worse
éber, ébûris, n. ivory
eece, interject. lo! behold!
edo, édi, ésum, 3, eat
edüco, -avi, -ätum, 1, educate
edüco, -xi, -ctum, 3, I lead out
efféro, extúli, élätum, efferré, 3,
irr. v. I carry out
efloresco, -flórüi, 3, blossom
effódio, -fódi, -fóssum, 3, scoop
out, strike out
effügi, -fügi, 3, escape (g. acc.)
egéco, -ui, 2, to need (g. abl.)
egés, see Par. 90
egrégius, -a, -um, adj. excellent, eminent
eímusdó, see módus
eíció, -jeci, -jectum, 3, cast out
eiéctus, -antis, adj. elegant, ex-
quise
élegantia, -ae, f. tastefulness
eléphas, éléphantis, m. (also élé-
phantus, -i, m.) elephant
eléctio, -licui, -licitum, 3, draw forth
eíligo, -légi, -lectum, 3, choose
éloquens, -entis, lectum, adj. eloquent
eloquentia, -ae, f. eloquence
ĕmendo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, improve
ĕmigro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, I depart
from
ĕminus, at a distance [military term opp. to comminus (cum, mānus), hand to hand]
ĕmo, ēmi, emptum, 3, I buy
ĕnarro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, I relate
ĕnim, conj. for (differs from nam in never standing first in a clause)
ĕnitor, -īsus or ēxus, 3, v. dep. strive hard
ensis, -is, m. sword
eō, adv. abl. of ēs, by so much;
(with compar.) eō mēlius (by)
so much the better; in ēo (166)
ĕo, ēvi, ētum, ire, go, Par. 241
ĕpistōla, -ae, f. letter, epistē (per-
haps better, epistīlā)
Epāmisondas, -ae, m. Epaminondas, a Theban patriot and general
Ēphēsus, -i, f. Ephesus
ēquēs, -ītus, m. horse soldier
ēquester, -tris, -e, equestrian
ēquidem (Par. 139) for my part
ēquīto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, ride
ēquītātus, -ās, m. cavalry
equus, -i, m. a horse
ergā, prep. (g. acc.) towards (only of the feelings) Par. 183
ēripio, -ripui, -reptum, 3, snatch
away (g. acc. and dat., 192)
erro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, err, wander
error, -ōris, m. error, fault
ērūdio, -īvi or -īi, -ītum, 4, train
up, educate
ērūditus, -a, -um, adj. trained, educated
ērumpo, -ripi, -ruptum, 3, burst, rush forth
ēt, conj. and; et...et, both...and;
even, (see Par. 12, 32, 153)
ētiam, conj. also, even (141); (most-
ly before the word it modifies);
nōn sōlum...sed ētiam, not only
...but also
Euphrātēs, -is, m. the Euphrates
Euripidēs, -is, m. Euripides
Europa, -ae, f. Europe
evādō, -vāsi, -vāsum, escape
evēnīo, -vēni, -ventum, 4, to happen
evēntūs -ūs, m., event, result
ex or ē, prep. with abl. out of, from; ex ītūnēre, on a journey
exalbesco, -albui, 3, turn pale
exaudio, -īvi, -ītum, 4, catch the sound of (g. acc.)
excōdo, -essi, -essum, 3, I depart
from
exclāmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, I cry out
excēlo, -cōlūi, -cultum, 3, I cul-
tivate carefully; agri exculenti fru-
mento, lit. fields richly cultivated
with corn, i.e. fields with rich
corn-crops
excūsātiō, -īonis, f., excuse
excūsō, -āvi, -ātum, 1, to excuse
excūtiō, -cussi, -cussum, 3, shake
off
exemplum, -i, n. example
exēdo, -ēdi, -ēsum, 3, eat out, gnaw
away; exēsus pānēx, weather-
hollowed rock
exēo, -īvi or -īi, -ītum, 4, I go out
exercēo, -iū, -ītum, 2, exercise
exercitus, -ūs, m. army
exhaurio, -hausi, -haustum, 4,
drain off, drink off
exigūus, -a, -um, scanty, little
exillum, see exsilium
exitium, -īi, n. destruction
exordior, -orsus, 4, (v. dep.), begin
a web; hence exorsa, -orum, n. pl. a beginning
expecto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, await
expello, -pūli, -pulsum, 3, I drive
out [awakened
expergiscor, experrectus, 3, I am
experientiā, -ae, f. experience
expērior, -pertus, 4, dep. try, ex-
perience
Vocabulary.

expertos, -rtis, destitute of (g. gen.)
expěto, -ivi, -itum, 3, seek out
explorátor, -óris, m. spy, scout
explóro, -ávi, -átum, 1, investigate
expōno, -púsui, -pósitum, 3, put forth, disembark
expugno, -ávi, -átum, 1, take by storm
exscindo, -scídi, -scissum, 3, rend
exsílio, -sílii, -sultum, 4, leap forth
exsílium, -i, n. exile
exstrúo, -xí, -ctum, 3, build up
extimesco, -tímī, 3, take alarm at (acc.)
extrá, prep. (g. acc.) outside of; extrá culpam, free from blame
extráho, -traxí, -tractum, 3, draw out
extrémus, -a, -um, last, Par. 69
exulto, -ávi, -átum, 1, exult
exúdo, -úi, -útum, 3, strip off

Fáber, -bri, m. workman, artíficer
Fábíus, -iī, m. Quintus Fábius
Maximus, called Cunctátor, because by "delaying action" he restored success to Rome in the Second Punic War
fábula, -ae, f. story, fable
fácie, -ći, f. face
fácile, adv. easily; comp. fácilius
fácialis, -e, adj. easy (60) [crime
fácinus, -óris, n. daring deed,
fácio, fáci, factum, fácērē, 3, make, do; fác (ut) vēnīas, cause that you, i.e. take care to, come;
(with assis, floccī) I value (284)
factum, -i, n. deed
falláx, -ácis, deceitful
fallo, féfelī, falsum, 3, deceive;
fidem féfellīt, he broke his word;
non f. ópiniōnem, it did not deceive our expectation
falsus, -a, -um, false
fāma, -ae, f. fame, reputation;
Fāma, the goddess Fame
fāmīliāris, -e, belonging to the household; rēs f. one's property, estate
fāmēs, -is, f. hunger
fās, n. indecl. divine law, hearen's will; contrā ān fasque, against human and divine law
fascis, -is, m. bundle, faggot; fascēs, the rods carried before consuls
fātēr, fassus, 2, dep. confess
fātum, -i, n. fate
faux, -cis, f. jaw
fāveo, fāvi, fautum, 2, favour (g. dat.)
febris, -is, f. (-im or -em, -ī or -ē), fever
fēlicītēr, adv. luckily, prosperously
fēlix, -ēcis, happy, fortunate
fēmina, -ae, f. a woman
fēra, -ae, f. a wild beast
fērāx, -ācis, fruitful
fērē, adv. almost, commonly; nēmo fērē, hardly anyone
fēritis, -ātis, f. savageness [peace
fērio, 4, strike; f. pācem, I make fēro, tūli, lātum, ferre, bear, carry, endure; fertur Gaius dixisse, it is reported that Gaius said
fērōx, -ōcis, adj. fierce, spirited
ferrum, -i, n. iron, sword
fertilis, -e, fertile
fērus, -a, -um, savage, wild
fessus, -a, -um, weary
fētus, -ūs, m. offspring
fīcus, -ūs, f. a fig
fīdelis, -e, adj. faithful
fīdes, -ē, f. faith; servo fidem, I keep my word
fīdo, fissus sum, fidere, 3, (g. dat. or abl.) I trust
fidus, -a, -um, adj. faithful
figo, fixi, fixum, 3, fig
fīlia, -ae, f. a daughter
fīlius, -ii, m. a son
fingo, finxi, dictum, 3, feign
finis, -is, m. end, boundary (pl. territories)
finitimis, -a, -um, bordering on
fio, factus sum, fléri, 3, v. irr. to
become, be made (258)
firmo, -avi, -ätum, 1, strengthen
firmus, -a, -um, adj. strong
Flaccus, -i, m. the surname of
Quintus Horatius Flaccus, com-
monly called Horace
flagitia, -i, n. disgraceful crime
flo, flivi, flétum, 2, weep
flo, flavi, flátum, 1, blow
flocus, -i, m. the down of wool;
 hence nón flocci fácio, I do not
value at a feather (284)
florens, -ntis, adj. flourishing
florétó, -ui, 2, I bloom, flourish
fló, flóris, m. flower
fluctús, -us, m. wave, billow
flumen, -inis, n. current, river
fluo, -xi, 3, flow (fut. part. act.
fluxúrus)
flávius, -i, m. a river
födío, fódi, fossum, födère, 3, dig
foedo, -avi, -ätum, 1, deile
foedus, -éris, n. treaty
foedus, -a, -um, foul, shameful
fons, -ntis, m. fountain, source
fıré, fut. inf. of sum (Par. 212);
forem, föret, &c. see sum
fóra, adv. (motion) out of doors;
fóris, adv. (rest) out of doors
fórcé, -um, f. pl. doors
formídó, -avi, -ätum, 1, dread
formídó, -inis, f. terror
fortasse, adv. perhaps (mostly re-
fers to the future, unlike forté
below)
forté, adv. by chance, once upon a
time, never refers to the Fut., ex-
cept in the phrases, si forté, nisí
forte, ně forté
fortis, -e, brave, strong; -tissimé,
adv. very bravely; -tér, adv. bravelly
fortuna, -ae, f. fortune; fortuna,
nostrae pénés té sunt, our
fortunes are in your hands

forum, -i, n. market-place, forum
 fossa, -ae, f. ditch
frango, -ae, f. ditch
frátur, -tris, m. brother
fraus, fraudis, f. deceit, mischief
frémó, -ui, itum, 3, murmur
frigidus, -a, -um, cold
frígmus, -óris, n. cold
frons, -ndis, f. foliage
frons, -ntis, f. the forehead, brow
fructus, -ús, m. fruit, advantage
frígus, -um, f. pl. fruits, a crop
fruor, fructus or fructus, 3, dep.
enjoy (207, 256)
frumentum, -i, n. corn (mostly
harvested); frúmenta, -orum,
corn (mostly in the fields)
frustrá, adv. in vain
frútex, -icis, m. shrub
fúga, -ae, f. flight
fúgió, fúgi, 3, flee
fúgeo, -avi, -ätum, 1, put to flight
fulcium, fulsi, fultum, 4, prop up
fulgeo, fulsi, fulsum, 2, I shine
fulgur, -úris, n. lightning (that
shines); in poets used for fulmen
fulmen, -inis, n. lightning (that
strikés) [rout
fundó, fündi, fúngum, 3, pour, scatter
fundus, -i, m. farm
fánestus, -a, -um, fatal, deadly
fungor, functus, 3, v. dep. I dis-
charge (207)
funis, -is, m. rope
fúinus, -éris, n. a funeral
fúr, fúris, m. thief
fúror, -óris, m. madness, rage

Gádes, -ium, f. pl. Cadiz
Gáius, gen. Gai, m. (less cor-
rectly Caius, Caii) Gáius, a
Roman praenomen or fore-name
Galíán, -ae, f. Gaul
Gállus, -i, m. a Gaul
gaudéo, gávisus sum, gaudére, 2,
I rejoice
gaudium, -i, n. joy
VOCABULARY.

HANNIBAL, -alis, m. Hannibal
Hãruspex, -icis, m. soothsayer
hasta, -ae, f. spear
haud, adv. not (rarely with verbs and adj. except haud scio An, hand dubium est, &c.) [land]
Helvétia, -ae, f. Helvetia (Switzer-
Helvétius, -a, -um, adj. Helvetian
herba, -ae, f. herb
hercle! (an oath used as an ex-
clamation) by Hercules, certainly
hóri, adv. yesterday
hesternus, -a, -um, of yesterday
hiberna, -orum, n. pl. winter quar-
ters; hibernus, -a, -um, adj. of
winter, wintry
hic, pron. see Par. 103; hic...ille,
the latter...the former, one...
another; tribus his mensibus,
within the next three months
hic, adv. here
hiemps, hiémis, f. winter
hiláris, -e, adj. cheerful
hínc, adv. hence, from this place
história, -ae, f. history; Natúralis
h. the Natural History of Pliny
histrio, -iónis, actor
hódié, adv. to-day
Hómoerus, -i, m. Homer
hómo, -inis, m. man
hónestus, -a, -um, honourable (this
word never means “honest”)
hórónor, -óris, m. an honour, office;
in hónóre est, it is held in honour
hóra, -ae, f. hour
hordeum, -i, n. barley
Hórátius, -ii, Horace
hortor, -átus, 1, v. dep. exhort
hortus, -i, m. a garden
hostia, -ae, f. a victim
hostis, -is, m. the enemy
húc, adv. hither; often, though not
perhaps with strict correctness,
rendered in modern English, “here”

1 Hómo means a human being, and is occasionally (but very rarely) used of
women: vir means a good or brave man.
I, imperative of ēo
ibi, adv. there
ictus, -ūs, m. a blow; sub ictum venire, to come within striking distance
igitur, conj. therefore, then; differs from itaque in not standing first in a clause (in the best authors)
ignārus, -a, -um, ignorant; tibi ignāro prófui, I helped you without your being aware of it
ignāvē, adv. indolently
ignāvia, -ae, f. sloth, cowardice
ignāvus, -a, -um, slothful, cowardly
ignēs, -a, -um, adj. fiery
ignis, -is, m. fire, abl. ignī (except in poets)
ignōrātio, -ōnis, f. ignorance
ignosco, -nōvi, -nōtum, 3, (g. dat.) pardon
illātūri, see ināfero
ille, (103) Alexander ille, the great, well-known, &c., Alexander
illēcōbrae, -ārum, f. pl. allurements
illum, adv. thither
imāgo, -inis, f. image, likeness
imbellis, -e, unwarlike
imber, -ris, m. (Abl. -i), shower
imitor, -atus, 1, r. dep. imitate
immēmor, gen. -ōris, unmindful
immortālis, -e, adj. immortal
immortalitàs, -ātis, f. immortality
impār, gen. -āris, unequal
impāvidus, -a, -um, fearless
impello, -pāli, -pu'sum, 3, impel
impendeo, (no Perf. or Sup.) 2, impend
impērātor, -ōris, m. general
impēritus, -a, -um, (g. gen.) unskilful in
impērium, -ū, n. command, empire
impēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, (g. dat.) give orders to; i. tibi frumentum, I exact corn from you; foll. by ut (143)
impiētus, -ūs, m. attack, onset
impigēr, -grā, -grum, active
implēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, implore
impōno, -pōsui, -pōsitum, 3, impose (a task; tribute, &c.) on, Par. 192
imprōbus, -a, -um, adj. dishonest, wicked, bad
imprudēns, -ntis, ignorant; i. fēci, I did it ignorantly
imprudentiā, -ae, f. ignorance, imprudence
in, prep. (g. acc.) into, towards; (g. abl.) in
inānis, -e, idle, empty [tion
incendīnum, -i, n. a fire, conflagra-
incendo, -di, -sum, 3, set fire to, burn
incertus, -a, -um, adj. uncertain
incipīo, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3, begin
incōla, -ae, m. inhabitant
incōlo, -ni, -ultum, 3, inhabit
incōlūmis, -e, safe
incōlūmitās, -ātis, f. safety
incrēpo, -crēpūi, -crēpitum, 1, re-
proach
incuṣo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, I accuse, find fault with
indē, adv. thence, thereupon; indē a pūerītiā, even from boyhood
Indi, -ūrum, m. pl. Indians
indico, -āvi, -ātum, 1, point out
indignus, -a, -um, unworthy
indoctus, -a, -um, unlearned
indulgēo, -si, -tum, 2, (g. dat.) indulge
industrius, -a, -um, adj. industrious, busy

ineo, -ivi or -ii, -itum, 4, go into, enter, begin

ineptē, adv. (in-aptē, unfitly), foolishly, without tact

ineptus, -a, -um, silly

ines, -tis, adj. helpless, sluggish

infānia, -ae,/. infamy

infamis, -e, adj. infamous

infectus, -a, -um, unaccomplished; re infecta, (abl. abs.) the affair being unaccomplished, i.e. with nothing done (Par. 197)

infāliciter, adv. unluckily; pugnātum est i. we have been defeated

infālix, -icis, unfortunate, unhappy

inferior, -ius, comp. of inf, eras, adj. lower, inferior

infero, intuli, illatum, infectus, -a, -um, irrite, -i, v.; bellum i. tibi, I declare war against you

infinitus, -a, -um, adj. unbounded, infinite

infirmitās, -ātis, f. weakness

infirmus, -a, -um, infirm, weak

infra, prep. (g. ace.) below

ingens, -ntis, huge, great

ingenium, -i, n. dispositiūm

ingratus, -a, -um, displeasing, ungrateful

ingrēdiōr, -gressus sum, 3, v. dep. enter

inhaerēō, -haesi, -haesum, 2, stick fast

inhōnestus, -a, -um, dishonourable

inimicītia, -ae, f. enmity

inimicus, -a, -um, unfriendly, hostile; inimicus, -i, m. a private enemy; opp. to hostis, an enemy of the state

iniūtium, -i, n. a beginning

injicio, -jeci, -jectum, 3, cast (fear, &c.) into, inspire

injucundus, -a, -um, disagreeable

injustē, adv. unjustly

injustus, -a, -um, unjust

innōcens, -ntis, innocent

innúmerus, -a, -um, adj. innumerable

inops, -opis, destitute

iinquām, inquit, see Defective Verbs, Appendix II., p. 215

insānio, -ivi, -itum, 4, I am mad

insēquor, -secutus, 3, follow after, pursue

insidiae, -arum, f. snares, an ambush; per insidias, insidiously

insignis, -e, distinguished, noted

insōlens, -ntis, (g. gen.) unaccustomed to

instītūo, -ui, -ätum, 3, I appoint, institute

instrumentum, -i, n. an instrument

instruo, -xi, -ctum, 3, arrange, draw up

insuēctus, -a, -um, untrained to (g. gen.)

insula, -ae,/. island

insum, -fui, -esse, v. irr. (g. dat.) I am in

intellēgo, -lexi, -lectum, 3, understand, hear, perceive (less correctly intelligo)

inter, prep. (g. acc.) between, among; inter venandum, during hunting; haec inter sē repugnant, these things are inconsistent with one another

intercludo, -ūsi, -ūsum, 3, I cut off; i. hostes commeātu, I cut off the enemy from supplies

interdum, adv. sometimes

interēō, -ivi or -ii, -itum, 4, perish

interest, -ēsit, -esse, (v. imper.) it makes a difference, it concerns, Par. 329

interficio, -feci, -fectum, 3, slay

interītus, -ūs, m. destruction

interjācēō, -jacui, 2, lie between

interrūgo, -avī, -ätum, 1, ask, question
intersum, -fūi, -esse, (q. dat.) I am among, I take part in
intervēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4, interrupt, (q. dat.) (192)
intrā, prep. (q. acc.) inside, within
intro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, enter
introduī, -ivi or -iū, -ātum, 4, go into, enter
intexūō, -itus -sum, 2, v. dep. look upon, into
Īnūro, -ussi, -ustum, 3, brana
inūtilis, -e, useless
inūtilāter, adv. uselessly, in vain
invidō, -vāsi, -vāsum, 3, attack
invēnio,-vēni,-ventum, -ae, 4, light on, find, find out [dat.
invidō, -vādi, -visum, 2, envy, g.
invidia, -ae, f. envy, ill-will
invidus, -a, -um, envious
invitus, -a, -um, unwilling; (used as adj. but with adv. force) invitus fēci, I did it unwillingly
ipsē, see Par. 105, 308
īra, -ae, f. anger
Irācundus, -a, -um, angry
Irascor, Irātus, 3, v. dep. I am angry
irrumpō, -rūpi, -ruptum, 3, burst into, rush into
irrūo, -rūi, 3, rush in
īs, ĕa, īd, see p. 46; nōn īs sum qui mentiar, I am not the man to lie, 303a
istē, -a, -ud, pron. adj. that of yours; iste, that fellow
īstāc, adv. thither, where you are
īa, in that way, thus, so
Itālia, -ae, f. Italy
Itāque, and so, thereupon; ītāque, (differing from īgitur), stands first in a clause
īter, ītūnēris, n. journey, road, way; ex ītūnēre, on a journey
Ītērum, adv. a second time, again
Jācēō, -ūi, 2, lie (on the ground)
jāciō, jēci, jactum, 3, I throw
jactātiō, -ōnis, f. boasting
jactō, -āvi, -ātum, 1, boast
jactūs, -ās, m. cast, shot, fire; intrā tēli jactum, within shot; sūb jactu, under fire
jam, adv. (1) already; (2) by this time; eun jam often means "just when," or "at last when"; non jam, no longer
jamādum or jamprīdeīm, adv. this long while; j. cūpio, I have been this long while desiring (324)
Jānumārius, -ia, -ium, of January
jōcor, -ātus, 1, (v. dep.) jest
Jōvis, see Juppiter
jūbēō, jussi, jussum, 2, I order, (g. acc. and inf.) bid
jūcundus, -a, -um, agreeable
Jūdæa, -ae, f. Judaea
jūdex, -icis, m. judge; mē judicem, in my judgment, lit. I being a judge (Par. 197)
jūdicum, -i, n. judgment
jūdico, -āvi, -ātum, 1, judge
jūgūlo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, cut the throat of, butcher
jūgum, -i, n. yoke; to be "sent under the yoke" was the sign of defeat
jungō, -nxi, -nectum, 3, join; ponte jungere, to bridge over
jūniōr, -oris, younger
Jūno, -ōnis, f. Juno, a goddess
Jūppiter, Jōvis, m. Jupiter
jūro, -āvi, ātum or jurātus sum, 1, I swear; j. in lēgēm, I swear (obedience) to a law; j. in verba eius, in accordance with his words
jūs, jūris, n. right, law; jūrē, (adv. abl.) by right, rightly (182)
jusājūrandum, jūrisājūrandi, n. an oath
jussum, -i, n. command
justē, adv. justly; justīus, more justly
justītiā, -ae, justice
justus, -a, -um, just
jūvēnis, -is, m. young man
VOCABULARY.

juventus, -atis, f. youth
juxta, prep. (g. acc.) near, hard by, next to

Labiënuus, -i, m. Labienus
labor, -oris, m. labour
läbar, lapsus, 3, v. dep. I glide, pass away, fall
läc, lactis, n. milk for Sparta
Läcdeoämon, -onis, f. Lacedaemon
Läcdeoämonii, -orum, m. the Lacedaemonians
läcrima, -ae, f. a tear
läcus, -üs, m. a lake
laedo, laesi, -sum, 3, hurt (g. acc.)
laetitia, -ae, f. joy
laetus, -a, -um, joyful
läpis, -idis, m. stone
läpidëus, -a, -um, adj. of stone
lätë, adv. widely, wide
lätëo, -uti, 2, lie hid, lurk
lätëx, -icis, m. water
Lätinus, -a, -um, Latin
lätitudo, -inis, f. breadth
Lätôna, -ae, f. Latona, mother of Apollo and Diana
latró, -onis, m. a robber
latrócinium, -i, n. robbery
lätûus, fut. part. of fero
lätus, -a, -um, wide, broad
laudo, -avi, -atum, 1, praise
laus, laudis, f. praise
lävo, -avi, lavátum, 1, wash

lecus, -i, m. bed
légátus, -i, m. ambassador, lieutenant
légio, -onis, f. legion, from 4,000 to 6,000 men
lëgo, lëgi, lectum, 3, gather, read
lëgo, -avi, -atum, 1, bequeath
Lëmnos, -i, f. the isle of Lemnos
lëo, leonis, m. lion
Lëônidas, -ae, m. Leonidas
lëpus, -oris, m. a hare
Lesbos, -i, f. Lesbos
lëvis, -e, light, fickle, empty

lëx, légis, f. law
libenter, adv. willingly
liber, -bri, m. book
liber, -ëra, -ërum, free; liberrima
ârâtio, very frank speech (61)
Liber, -ëri, m. Liber, the god of wine
libëre, adv. freely
libëri, -ërum, m. pl. children
libëro, -avi, -atum, 1, I free, deliver (g. abl. of thing)
libertas, -atis, f. freedom, liberty
libet (libuit and) libitum est, 2, v. impers. (g. dat.) it pleases
Libya, -ae, f. Africa
licet, licuit and licitum est, libère,

2, v. impers. (g. dat.) it is lawful, allowed; (used with Inf.; or with Subjunct. with ut omitted) licet omnes frêmant, let them all murmur; N.B. after licet mihi esse, the Adj. may either be dat. (Par. 24), or attracted into the Acc., to agree with me “understood,” licet mihi (mē) esse bēatum

Lîcînius, -i, m., Licinius
lictor, -oris, m. a lictor
lignëus, -a, -um, wooden
liitum, -i, n., lily
lingua, -ae, f. tongue, language
liquet, liqueùre, 2, v. impers. (Par. 222) it is clear, evident
littëra, -ae, f. a letter of the alphabet
littërae, -arum, f. pl. letters, learning, also an epistle, letter
litus, -ëris, n. a shore
Livius, -i, m. Titus Livius the historian, commonly called Livy
locus, -i, m. a place
longë, adv. far, far off
longinquitas, -atis, f. length, distant
longinquus, -a, -um, adj. long, distant

1 Also lautum and lótum; this verb is never intransitive.
longitūdo, -ōnis, f. length
longius, adv. comp. farther, too
longus, -a, -um, long; nāves
longae, ships of war
lōquor, lōcātus, 3, dep. speak
lācescit (illūxit), lācescēre, 3, v. impers. it becomes light
lādo, -si, -sum, 3, I play
lūdus, -i, m. play, game
lūna, -ae, f. the moon
lūpus, -i, m. wolf
luscinia, -ae, f. nightingale
lux, lūcis, f. light, dawn
lyra, -ae, f. lyre

Mācēdo, -ōnis, m. a Macedonian
mācer, -era, -crum, lean
mācūla, -ae, f. spot
māgis, adv. (sup. maxīmē), rather, in a higher degree, more
māgister, -tri, m. master, teacher
māgistrātus, -āus, m. magistrate, magistracy
magnificus, -a, -um, adj. magnificent; (for superl. see Par. 68a)
magnōpere, adv. greatly, earnestly
magnus, -a, -um, great, large
mājestas, -ātis, f. lit. “sovereignty”; condemnāri mājestātis, to be found guilty (on the charge) of (imparing) sovereignty, i.e. of treason (290)
mājor, -ōris, Par. 68
mājores, -um, m. pl. ancestors
mālē, adv. comp. pējus, sup. pessimē, badly, ill
mālēdictum, -i, n. slander, curse
mālēvōlus, -a, -um, ill-wishing, malevolent (superl., Par. 68a)
mālo, māluī, mallē, irr. v. I am more willing, I prefer, I had rather (p. 130)
mālum, -i, n. an apple
mālum, -i, n. evil
mālus, -i, f. an apple tree
mālus, -a, -um, bad, evil [mission
mandātum, -i, n. a charge, com-

mānēo, -nsi, -nsum, 2, remain
mānifestus, -a, -um, evident, manifest
mānīpūlus, -i, m. a maniple
mansi, see mānēo
mānus, -ās, f. a hand
Mārathon, -ōnis, f. Marathon
Marcus, -i, m., Marcus; see Crassus
māre, -is, n. sea (see terra)
margāritā, -ae, f. a pearl
mārinus, -a, -um, adj. of the sea
marmor, -āris, n. marble
Martius, -a, -um, of March, p. 229
māter, -tris, f. mother
māteria, -ae, f. materials, timber
mātrīmonium, -ii, n. matrimony, duxit eam in mātrīmonium, he married her (always of man marrying women, see nūbo)
mātrīrus, -a, -um, ripe
maxīmē, adv. very greatly, especially
maximus, -a, -um, see Par. 68
Maximus, -i, m. Maximus, “the greatest”; see Fābius
mēdicīna, -ae, f. medicine
mēdicus, -i, m. physician
mēdītor, -ātus, 1, v. dep. meditate on, study
mēdīus, -a, -um, middle (of); mēdios in hostes, into the midst of the enemy
mēlio, neut. -ius, see Par. 68
mēnīni, v. def.; see p. 215
mēmor, -ōris, mindful (g. gen.)
mēnōrābilis, -e, adj. memorable
mēmōria, -ae, f. memory, recollection
mendācium, -i, n. lie, falsehood
mendāx, -ācis, adj. lying, deceitful
Mēnēnius, -ii, m. Menenius Agrippa, author of the fable of the Belly and the Other Members
mens, mentis, f. mind
mensis, -is, m. month
mentor, -ītus, 4, (v. dep.) tell a lie
mercātor, -ōris, m. merchant
mercēs, -cēdis, f. pay, wage, reward
Mercúrius, -i, m. Mercury
mírō (also mírōr, míritus, 2, v. dep.) -āri, -ārum, 2, I desire; dē pātria bēne míritus est, he has deserved well of his country
mergo, meri, mersi, mersum, 3, plunge
mēridies, m. mid-day
messis, -ίs, f. harvest
mētallum, -i, n. a metal; mētalla, -ōrum, n. pl. mines; damnāri in m. to be condemned to the mines
mētīor, mensus, 4, (v. dep.) measure
mētio, messī, messum, 3, reap
Mettus, -i, m. Mettus, an Alban, torn in pieces by Tullus Hostilius
mētūo, -ūi, -ātum, 3, I fear
mētōs, -ōs, m. fear
mēus, -a, -um, pronom. adj. my, mine
mi, masc. voc. of méus [part
migro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, migrate, demīlē, militis, m. soldier
milia, (80) n. pl. (sometimes for mīlia passuum, see passus)
militāris, -e, military; rēs m. military affairs, i.e. warfare
militiāe, adv. in war
milliēns, a thousand times
mille, mília, see Par. 80
mīna, -ae, f. threat
mīnūnē, adv. by no means, in the least degree; mīninu,-a,-um (68)
mīnister, -tri, m. a servant
mīnor, see Par 68
mīnuo, -ui, -ātum, 3, diminish
mīrandus, -a, -um, wonderful
mīrōr, -ātus, 1, (v. dep.) wonder at, admire
mīrus, -a, -um, wonderful
mīscēo, miscui, mixtum, 2, mix, throw into confusion
mīser, -ēra, -ērum, wretched
mīserōr, -sertus or -sēritus, 2, dep. pity (g. gen.) (203)
mīserēt, misēritum est, 2, v. impers., see Par. 219
mīserīa, -ae, f. misery
misericordia, f. pity [(g. acc.)
mīsērōr, -atus, 1, show pity to
mītesco, 3, become mild
mītis, -e, adj. mild
mitto, mīsi, missum, 3, send
mōdestia, -ae, modesty
mōdo, adv. only; sī, or dum, mōdo, if, or provided, only; mōdo nunc, only just now
mōdus, -i, m. measure, manner: praetert mōdum, beyond measure; nullo modo, in no way; eius modo, of that kind
moenia, -ium, n. pl. fortifications
mōlestus, -a, -um, troublesome
mollō, -īvi or -īi, -ātum, 4, soften
mollis, -e, adj. soft, mellow
mōnēo, -ūi, -ātum, 2, advise, warn
monēs, -ntis, m. mountain
monstro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, show, point out
mōnuntum, -i, n. monument
mōra, -ae, f. delay
morbus, -i, m. disease
mōrīor, mōrtūus, 3, v. dep. die (fut. part. mōritūrīs, about to die)
mōrō, mōrātus, 1 (v. dep.) delay
mors, -tis, f. death
morsūs, -ūs, m. bite
mortālis, -e, adj. mortal
mortūus, -a, -um, dead
mōs, mōris, m. manner, custom; mōres, -um, pl. conduit, morals; nōn nostri mōris est, it is not (characteristic of) our custom
mōtūs, -ūs, m. motion, movement
mōvēo, mōvi, mōtum, 2, move, affect; bellum, or arma, mōveo,
I stir up or commence war
mox, adv. soon
mūliēr, -ēris, f. woman, wife
multiplex, -plīcis, manifold; m. fetus, many young ones at a time
multitudo, -inis, f. multitude
multo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, punish (with death, fine, &c.)
multus, -a, -um, much, many;
multa nox, a late (hour of) night; multum adv., multum interest, it makes a great difference; multo (adv. with compar.) (by) much; multo felicior, (by) much more happy

Mummius, -i, m. Mummius, the destroyer of Corinth
mundus, -i, m. the universe
mūnificus, -a, -um, (68a) liberal
mūnimentum, -i, n. a fortification
mūnio, -īvi or -iī, -itum, 4, fortify
mūnus, -ēris, n. a gift, duty, function
murmūr, -ūris, n. murmur
mūrus, -i, m. wall
mūto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, change
Mycēnae, -arum, f. pl. Mycenae, the chief city of Greece in the Trojan times
myrtus, -i and -ās, f. myrtle

Nactus, see nanciscor
nam, conj. for; differs from enim in standing first in a clause
nanciscor, nactus and nancetus, inf.
nancisci, 3, obtain (v. dep.)
narro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, relate
nascor, nātus, -i, v. dep. I am born
N.B. nascor means "I am being born"; dēcem annos nātus est, he is ten years old
Nāso, -onis, m. Publius Ovidius
Nāso, commonly called Ovid
nātus, adv. abl. by birth
nātūra, -ae, f. nature
nāturālis, see history
nātus, -a, -um, part. and adj. born, aged; viginti annos n., twenty years old
nauta, -ae, m. a sailor
nāvālis, -e, adj. naval
nāvigo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, sail
nāvis, -is, f. ship
-nē, enclitic, asks a question (100)
nē, conj. that not, lest (131); nē quīs, that no one (294); (with perf. subj.) (do) not (129)
Néapolis, -is, f. (acc. -im), Naples nēc, see nēque
nēcessārius, -a, -um, adj. necessary
nēcessae, adv. necessarily; (used as adj.) nēcessae est, it is necessary,
(foll. by acc. and inf. or ut)
nēco, nēcāvi, nēcatum, 1, kill
nēlandus, -a, -um, unspeakable, monstrous
nēfas, n. indecl. wickedness; n. dictu, monstrous to relate!
neglēgo, -exi, -ectum, 3, neglect
nēgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, I deny
nēgōtīum, -i, n. business
nēmo, nullius, m. nobody, no one
Par. 92; nānōn gaudebat, there was no one that did not rejoice
Nēoptōlemus, -i, m. Neoptolemus
Neptūnus, -i, m. Neptune
nēquam, indecl. adj. comp. nēquīor, sup. nēquissimus, worthless
nēquē, or nēc, conj. and not; when repeated, neither...nor
nēquēo, -īvi or -iī, -ītum, -īre, 4, I am unable, cannot; imperf. nē-
quībam; fut. indic. nēquībo; pres. part. nēquiens, gen. nēquīentis
nēquīquam, adv. in vain
nēquissimus, see nēquam
Nēro, -onis, m. Nero
necio, -īvi or -iī, -ītum, 4, I am ignorant of, do not know; necio an ventūrūs sit, i.e. necio (utrun
afītūrus sit) an (pōtūs) ven-
tūrus sit, I do not know whether he will be absent or whether he will rather come, i.e. I think he will come, Par. 302
neuter, -tra, -trum, adj. (gen. sing.
-tūs, dat. -i), neither of two, see Par. 85
nēve, adv. or not, nor; or (after neg.) ne affirmāvēris nēve nēgā
verīs, say neither 'yes' nor 'no'
nūdus, -i, m. a nest
VOCABULARY.

nox, noctis, f. night [jurious
noxius, -a, -um, adj. hurtful, in-
nābes, -is, f. cloud
nābo, nupsi, nuptum, 3, she marries
(g. dat.); not used of men marry-
ing; see mātrimōnium
nullus, -a, -um, adj. no, none; gen.
sing. -ius, dat. -i, (85)
num? interr. adv. expects the
answer "no": (sometimes conj.)
whether, Par. 135
nūmēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, I count
nūmērus, -i, m. number
Numīda, -ae, m. a Numidian
nunc, adv. now, at the present time
nunquam, adv. never
numtio, -āvi, -ātum, 1, bring word
numtius, -i, m. messenger
nūper, adv. lately
nūtrīo, -ivi and -īi, -ātum, 4, nourish
nux, nucis, f. nut

Ōb, prep. (g. acc.) on account of, in
front of
obdormīo, -ivi, -ātum, 4, fall asleep
ōbedīo, -ivi and -īi, -ātum, 4, (g. dat.) obey
ōbēo, -ivi or -īi, -ātum, 4, I meet,
esp. meet death, I die
oblātus, see offer
obluctātīo, -ōnis, f. delight
oblīno, -lēvi, -ātum, besmear, defile
obliviscor, -lītus, 3, dep. forget
(g. gen.) 203
obscūro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, darken,
obscurus, -a, -um, obscure, dark
obsēcro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, beseech
(foll. by ut) [respect
observo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, I observe,
obses, -īdis, m. hostage
obsīdeo, -sēdi, -sessum, 2, block-
ade, besiege
obsidio, -ōnis, f. a siege, blockade
obsto, -stīti, -stītum, 1, oppose,
prevent (g. dat.); nothing prevents
your coming, nihil obstat (tibi)
quōminus vēnias

nīger, -gra, -grum, black
nīhil, or nīl, n. indecl. nothing;
(from nīhilum) nīhīli te fācio, I
esteem you of no account; nīhīlo
mīnūs, none the less (277)
Nilus, -i, m. the Nile, a river in
Egypt
nī, conj. a form of nīsi
nīmis, adv. too, too much
Nīōba, -ae, f. Niobe
nīsi, conj. if...not, unless (has the
same constr. as si, 125, 293-5);
after nīhil and quīd, nīsī means
"but" or "except," and has the
same constr. as quam (62)
nītor, nīsus and nīxūs, 3, strive
(143)
nīx, nīvis, f. snow
no, nāvi, nātum, 1, swim
nōbilis, -e, adj. distinguished, noble
nōcēo, -ūi, -ātum, 2, (g. dat.) hurt
nōlo, nōlūi, nolle, v. irreg. I am
unwilling, I do not wish; nōlī
vēnire, do not come; idem no'le,
to dislike the same thing, p. 128
nōmen, -īnis, n. name
nōmīno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, name
nōn, adv. not
nondum, adv. not yet
nōnne? interr. adv. expects the
answer "yes"; sometimes a conj.
whether, Par. 135
nonnullus, -a, -um, adj. some
noso, nōvi, nōtum, 3, I gain
knowledge of; hence perf. nōvi, I
have gained knowledge of; i.e. I
know
noster, -stra, -strum, pronom. adj.
our, ours; nostri often means
"our men;" nostri is also gen.
of nōs (93), and nostrum part.
gen.
nosti for nōvisti, see nosco
nōtā, -ae, mark, stigma
nōtus, -a, -um, known
nōvus, -a, -um, adj. new
obstringo, -strinxi, -strictum, 3, bind (by oath)
obsum, obfui or offui, obesse, v. irreg. (g. dat.) I am in the way, am hurtful to, injure
obtempéro, -ávi, -átum, 1, comply with, obey (g. dat.)
obtúne, -tínui, 2, keep, hold
occásió, -ónis, f. opportunity
occidens, -tis, m. the west, the setting (sunt)
omito, -óbiti, -cásium, 3, fall; occidit spēs nostra, our hope has perished; occidimus, we are undone
occuló, -culi, -culum, 3, hide
occumbo, -cúbūi, -cūbitum, 3, fall down
occánus, -i, m. the ocean
ocúlūs, -i, m. eye
ódi, ódisse, v. dep. haste; see p. 215; òdium, -ii, n. hatred; hic mihi òdio (268) est, this man is hateful to me (lit. for hatred)
òdor, -òris, m. a smell, scent
offero, obtúli, oblātum, offerre, 3, v. irreg. I present
ólin, adv. formerly
ómén, -inis, n. an omen [drop
ómitto, -misi, -missum, 3, omit, omnino, adv. altogether; (the position alters the meaning) o. nōn bōnus, not at all good; 2, nōn o. bōnus, not altogether good
omnīs, -e, all, the whole; (not "every," except in the pl.)
onīs, -éris, n. a load, burden
ópera, -ae, f. pains, labour; hīs óperam do, I pay attention to these things [tion
ópinio, -ónis, f. opinion, expectātion
óportet, -út, 2, v. impers. it behoves, is necessary; óportūt ĭe táčēre, you ought to have been silent (Par. 223)
oppiá, -ósi, -ósum, 3, I set against; oppóno me tibi, I oppose you (192)
opprímo, -pressi, -pressum, 3, overpower, -ávi, -átum, 1, assault
optimus, (68) best, excellent; optimē, adv. excellently
ópus, -érís, n. work; opus est (g. abl.) there is need of
óra, -ae, f. the coast
órāculum, -i, n. an oracle
órāre causam, to plead a cause
órātio, -ónis, f. an oration, speech
órātor, -órīs, m. an orator
órds, -orsus, 4, v. dep. I begin
órdo, -inis, m. rank, order; ordinem equestrem, the order of the knights
órīor, ortus, óríri, 3, v. dep. rise
oró, -ávi, -átum, 1, adore
oro, -ávi, -átum, 1, entreat, pray; orāre causam, to plead a cause
ortus, see orior
óss, -óris, n. bone; in ore omnium est, it is the talk of everybody
óvum, -i, n. egg

Páciscor, pactus, 3, (v. dep.), make an agreement
paenē, adv. almost
pañam, (adv. and prep. g. abl.) publicly, in the presence of
Pallās, -ādis, f. Pallas Athene, not to be confounded with Minerva
pallium, -ii, n. a cloak
pando, pandi, passum, 3, lay open; passo crīne, with dishevelled hair
pānis, -is, m. bread
pāpāver, -érís, n. poppy
pāpilio, -ónis, m. butterfly
par, pāris, equal; non est solvendo par, he is not equal to paying, i.e. he is insolvent
Vocabulary.

pārātus, -a, -um, adj. prepared, p. ad pugnandum, p. to fight
parco, pēperci, parcitum or pars, 3, (g. dat.) spare; paucis parsam est, few were spared
pārens, -ntis, c. parent
pārēo, -ūi, -itum, 2, (g. dat.) obey
pārio, pēpēri, paritum, 3, (g. acc.) bring forth, give birth to
pāriter, adv. equally
pāro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, prepare, get
pars, -tis, f. part
parsum, see parco
partiur, -ītus, 4, dep. share, divide
partus, -ūs, m. birth
parum, adv. too little; used for "not"; (used as a noun g. part. gen.) p. virīum, too little strength
parvus, -a, -um, small, little
pasco, pāvi, pastum, 3, feed; ōves pascantur, sheep were grazing
passus, -ūs, m. a pace (about 5 feet); mille passūs, a mile
pastor, -ōris, m. shepherd
pāteo, -ūi, 2, extend; it extends for ten miles, pātēt in foll. by acc.
pātēr, -tiris, m. father
pātients, -ntis, (g. gen.) patient (of)
pāttenter, adv. patiently
pātītor, passus, 3, endure, suffer
pātres, -um, m. pl. Fathers, a name given to the Roman Senators
patria, -ae, f. a native land, country
patrimōnum, -ii, n. patrimony
paulisper, adv. for a short time
paucus, -a, -um (mostly pl.) few
pauper, -ēris, poor
paupertas, -ātis, f. poverty
pāvidus, -a, -um, fearful
pāvo, -ōnis, m. peacock
pāvor, -ōris, m. terror, trembling
pāx, pācis, f. peace
peccātum, -i, n. fault
pecco, -avi, -atum, 1, err, sin
pecūnia, -ae, f. money, sum of money
pēdēs, -īis, m. foot-soldier
pēdītātus, -ūs, m. infantry
pejor, see Par. 68
pēlāgus, -i, n. sea
pellis, -is, f. skin (of animals)
pello, pēpūli, pulsum, 3, drive
pendo (page 209) hang, weigh, value (283)
pēnēs, prep. (g. acc.) in the hands of
penna, -ae, f. feather, wing; (of fishes) fin
pēr, prep. (g. acc.) through, by means of; per dōlum, treacherously
percipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, perceive
percussio, -ōnis, f. striking; p. digitorum, the snapping of one's fingers
perdo, -didi, -ditum, 3, destroy
perdōnō, -ūi, itum, 1, thoroughly tame, subdue
pērēo, -ī or -ivi, itum, 4, perish
perfectus, -a, -um, adj. finished, perfect
perféreo, -tūlī, -lātum, -ferre, v. irr. endure
perficio, -feci, -fectum, 3, perform
perfida, -ae, f. perfidy
perfidus, -a, -um, perfidious, treacherous
Pēriclēs, -is, m. Pericles
pēricūlum, -i, n. danger [gen.]
pērītus, -a, -um, adj. skilful in (g.)
pēr'ēgo, -lēgi, -lectum, 3, I read through
permagnus, -a, -um, very great
permōvéo, -mōvi, -mōtum, 2, rouse, stir
permultī, -ae, -a, very many
perniciōsus, -a, -um, destructive
perpētūus, -a, -um, adj. continual
perrumpo, -ruptum, -ruptum, 3, burst through
Persā, -ae, m. a Persian
persaepē, adv. very often
perspicio, -spexi, -spectum, 3, see through, discern
persuādēo, -āsi, -āsum, 2, (g. dat.) persuade (143); persuāsum est mihi, I am persuaded
pertaeum, see taedet
peterreo, -ère, -úi, -iūm, 2, alarm
pertimesco, -timūl, 3, become fearful
pervenio, -vēni, -ventum, 4, arrive
perversus, -a, -um, wilful, perverse
pēs, pēdis, m. foot
pessimus, see Par. 68
pestis, -is, f. plague
pēto, -ivi & -ii, ītum, 3, seek
Phaethon, -ontis, m. Phaethon, a son of Apollo the Sun-god
Phidias, -ae, m. Phidias, an Athenian sculptor (1st decl.)
Philippus, -i, m. Philip (of Macedonia)
Philoctetes, -ae, m. Philoctetes
philosophia, -ae, f. philosophy
philosophus, -i, m. philosopher
Phoebus, -i, m. Phoebus Apollo, the Sun-god; Phoebēus -a, -um, adj. belonging to Phoebus Apollo
pigfer, -gra, -grum, slothful
pigēt, pigiūt and pigiūtum est, pigēre, 2, v. impers. it vexes
pingo, -nxī, -pictum, 3, I paint, embroider
pinguis, -e, fat
pinna, see penna
pīnus, -ūs and -i, f. pine-tree
pīrum, -i, n. a pear
pīrus, -i, f. a pear-tree
piscator, -ōris, m. fisherman
piscis, -is, m. a fish
plācco, -ūi, -iūm, 2, g. dat. please; plācitūr, or plācitum est, nobis vēnīre, to come pleased us, i.e., we resolved to come
plācet, -ūt or -iūm est, -ère, 2, v. impers. it pleases
plācidus, -a, -um, adj. quiet
plāné, adv. altogether
plānītīs, -īē, f. level space
planta, -ae, f. a sprout, plant
Plāto, -ōnis, m. Plato
plebs, plēbis, f. the common people
plēnus, -a, -um, full, g. gen. or

abl.; vino plēnus, filled with wine, i.e. intoxicated
plērique, plēraequē, plērāque, most plerumque, adv. for the most part
Plinius, -ii, m. Pliny
plāt, plūt or plāvit, pluēre, 3 v. impers. it rains
plārimus, see Par. 68
plās, -āris, more; (neut. pl. often used as noun) he spoke no more, nec plāra dixit, see Par. 72
poenitentia, -ae, f. penitence
poena, -ae, f. penalty; dāre poenas (pl.) culpae, to pay the penalty of a fault
poenitēt, -ītūt, -ītēre, 2, v. impers. it repents (me), see Par. 219
pōēta, -ae, m. poet
pollex, -īcēs, m. thumb (with which the lyre was twanged)
pollēcōr, -ītus, 2, promise (280)
Pompēius, -ēī, m. Pompey, the rival of Caesar
pōnum, -i, n. fruit
pondus, -ēris, m. weight
pōnē, prep. (g. acc.) behind
pōno, pōsūi, pōsitum, 3, place, lay aside
pons, -ntis, m. a bridge
pontifex, -īcis, m. a high priest
Pontius (Pilātus), -i, m. Pontius Pilate
porcus, -i, m. pig
porta, ae, f. a gate
porto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, carry
portus, -ūs, m. harbour
Pōrus, -i, an Indian king conquered by Alexander the Great
posco, poposci, 3, demand
possum, pōtūi, posse, v. irreg. I am able, can (see pp. 126, 127)
post, prep. (g. acc.) after; adv. (313) multī post annis, many years afterwards (N.B. never used like the conj. postquam)
posteā, adv. afterwards
postis, -is, m. door-post
postpóno, -pösui, -pósītum, 3, place after (g. acc. and dat.)
postquam, conj. when, after
postrèmeus, see Par. 69
postūlo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, I demand
pōtens, -entis, adj. powerful
pōtēntia, -ae, f. power
pōtestas, -ātis, f. power, authority
pōtor, -itus, 4, v. dep. (g. abl.)
I make myself master of, obtain
pōtius...quam, rather...than; vel pōtius, or rather (used when a writer slightly corrects his own statement)
prae, prep. (g. abl.) before, in comparison with, by reason of; see Par. 178
praebēo, -ūi, -ītum, 2, I exhibit, afford; p. exemplum, set an example; p. fructum, put forth fruit
praecēptor, -ōris, m. teacher
praeeptum, -i, n. precept, instruction, lesson
praeeptum, -i, n. teach
praeeptus, -a, -um, renowned,
praeda, -ae, f. booty
praedium, -i, n. farm
praee, -ivi or -īti, -ītum, 4, I go before; p. verba, dictate words
praeefero, -tūli, -lātum, prefer
praeeftio, -fēci, -fectum, 3, set in command over (acc. and dat.)
praeemitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3, I send on before
praemium, -i, n. reward
praesens, -entis, present; praesentem ēum laudāvi, I praised him in his presence
praesidium, -i, n. guard, garrison
praestans, -antis, excellent
praēsum, -fūi, -esse, v. irreg. (g. dat.) I am before, at the head of
praētēr, prep. (g. acc.) beside, be-
praētērēo, -ivi or -īti, -ītum, 4, v. irreg. pass by
praētēritus, -a, -um, past
praetor, -ōris, m. the praetor
praevēniō, -vēni, -ventum, 4, anticipate
prāvus, -a, um, perverse, depraved
prēmo, -essi, -essum, 3, I press
prētium, -i, n. price, reward
prīmārius, -a, -um, adj. first rate, eminent
prīmo, adv. at first
prīmus, -a, -um, first (71)
princeps, -ipsis, adj. and noun, first
in rank, chief, emperor
principātus, -ūs, m. sovereignty
prior, -ōris, superior, before (71)
g. abl.
pristinus, -a, -um, adj. former, olden
prius, adv. sooner, before
priusquam, conj. until, before, sooner than [behalf of
pro, prep. (g. abl.) before, for, on
probē, adv. rightly, properly
probītās, -ātis, f. honesty, integrity
probūs, -a, -um, honest, upright
probcella, -ae, f. storm
prōcērēs, -um, m. pl. nobles
prōcērus, -a, -um, tall
prōdītor, -ōris, m. traitor
prōdo, -didi, -ditum, 3, I hand down
prōducō, -xi, -ctum, 3, bring forward
proelium, -i, n. battle
prōfecto, adv. assuredly, indeed
prōfēra, -tūli, -lātum, -ferre, v. irreg. extend
prōficīssor, -fectus, 3, dep. set out
prōfundus, -a, -um, adj. deep
prōgignō, -gēnūi, -gēnītum, 3, bring forth, give birth to
prōgōdior, -gressus, 3, v. dep. advance
prōlābēo, -ūi, -ītum, 2, hinder, pro-
hibit, keep off
prōles, -is, f. offspring
prōmissum, -i, n. a promise
promissus, -a, -um, hanging down, long (of hair)
prōmitto, -mīsi, -mīsum, 3, promīse; p. mē ventūrum, I promise to come (never p. vēnīre) (280)
promptus, -a, -um, ready
prōpē, prep. (g. acc.) near
prōpē, adv. near at hand, nearly; p. ābest a nōbis, he is close to us
prōpēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, hasten
prōpinquus, -a, -um, adj. near
propter, prep. (g. acc.) on account of; more rarely, near (183)
proplulo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, repel
Prōserpina, -ae, f. Proserpine
prosper, -pērā, -pērum, prosperous
prōsum, -fūi, prodesse, (g. dat.)
I am of use; non prōdest hōc dieūre, it is of no use to say this (191)
prōtendo, -tendi, -tensum or -tentum, 3, extend
prout, conj. according as
prōvidō, -vidī, -visum, 2, I foresee, provide
prōvidus, -a, -um, provident, foreseeing
prōvīncia, -ae, f. a section of the Roman Empire called a "province"
prōvōcō, -āvi, -ātum, 1, challenge, provoke
proximus, -a, -um, nearest, next, last (Par. 69)
prūdens, -ntis, prudent
prudenter, -ae, f. knowledge, prudence
publīcus, -a, -um, public
pūdet, -nīt, or pūditum, -ēre, 2, v. impers. it shames (Par. 219)
pūella, -ae, f. girl
pūcr, -ēri, m. boy
pūcrītia, -ae, f. boyhood
pugna, -ae, f. battle
pugnō, -āvi, -ātum, 1, fight
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beautiful
pulli, -ōrum, m. pl. chickens
pūmex, -īcis, m. pumice-rock
Pūnicus, -a, -um, Carthaginian
pūnio, -īvi and -īi, -ītum, 4, punish
pūto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, I think
putresco, 3, putrefy
Pygmaliōn, -ōnis, m. Pygmalion
Pythāgōras, -ae, m. Pythagoras

Quadringenti, see Par. 81
quaevo, quaesīvī, quaesītum, 3, seek, ask; quaerēbam mēcum, I was enquiring with myself; I asked him why, &c., quaesīvī, āb, ē, or dē, eo ēsūr, &c.
quaestus, -ās, m. gain, profit
quālis, -e, pron. adj. of what sort? what sort of? of which sort? as
quam, conj. or adv. than (62) (aft. comp.); how, quam turpe est! how base it is! as, nōn tam validus est quam frater eius, he is not so strong as his brother; quam cēlimēre, as quickly as possible (327); quam qui, or ut (319)
quamdiū, conj. as long as
quamquam, conj. although (mostly with indic.) (328)
quandomēnum, conj. however much, although (with subjunctive) (323)
quando? interr. adv. when? also used in dependent questions (156)
quantus, -a, -um, adj. how great a; tantus...quantus, so great a...as; (used as a Noun) quantum pecūniae, as much (of) money; adv. how much; quantum interest, how great a difference is there! quanti? at how great a price? see Par. 283, 284
quārē? interr. adv. and conj. why? on what account?
quartus, see Par. 81
quāscī, adv. as if, just as
quamernī, -ae, -a, four a-piece (314)
quātio, no perf., quassum, 3, shake, toss
quattuor, see Par. 81
-que, conj. and; used to combine two words of similar meaning into one phrase, sēnātus pūpūlusquē (37) quercus, -ās, f. an oak [plain quēror, questus, 3 (v. dep.) com-
qui, rel. pron. (107); often precedes (never follows) cum, and must then be rendered demonstratively: quod cum intellexisset, when I perceived this; qui after quam (319); qui foll. by subjunct. (298); idem qui (319); see also quō
quēs, conj. because
quēdam, quaedam, quoddam, pron. adj. (neut. pron. quiddam), a certain (310a); cardo quīdam, a kind of hinge; see Eng. Vocab. “A”
quīdem, conj. or adv. (67, 139) on the one hand, it is true, indeed; quīdem...autem (or vēro or sēd), on the one hand...but on the other hand; nē...quīdem, not even (141); q. sometimes merely emphasizes a word, e.g. nunc quīdem rides, “Now you laugh (but soon you will weep)”
quīd (or quīc) quam, see quisquam
quīlibet, quaelibet, quodlibet (pron. adj.) any you please; quōlibet tempore, at any time he pleases (pron. neut. quīlibet)
quīm (i.e. quī nōn, or quō nōn) conj. that not, (with subj.) (145, 300) nēmo est quīn rideat, there is no one that does not laugh; see also obstat and dūbium, with which it means “but that”
quīnquē, see Par. 81; quinquīens, adv. five times; quintus, see Par. 81
quis, quae, quīd, who? see Par. 110, 111; (after sī, nē, num) any one
quisnām, quaeñam, quīdnam? emphatic inter. pron. who? which? what?
quisquam, quaequam, quodquam (pron. neut. quīcquam) anyone (used in neg. and compar. sentences, and in questions that expect the answer “no”) (309) quīsquē, quaequē, quodquē, (pron. neut. quīquē or quīque) each, every; fortissīmus quīsquē, each bravest man, i.e. all the bravest men; sūam quīsquē dōmum rēdiērunt, they returned, each to his own home (where quīsquē is not nom. to r., but in Apposition to the nom. to r.) (140, 310) quīquis, quaequae, quodquod (adj.), whoever; (pron. neut.) quīdquīd or quīquīd, whatever; quīdquīd ānīcōrum, whatever (of) friends (part. gen.) quīvis, quaevis, quodvis (pronom. neut. quīdquīs) any you like; nōn cuiusvis est, it is not every one’s luck (310) quō, adv. (rel. and intern.) whither
quōn, conj. and adv. (1) quō cītius, ēo mēllius, by how much the quicker, by so much the better; (2) (with compar.) in order that (303); quōceum (179)
quōd, conj. because, that (sometimes foll. by subjunct., 293a)
quōmīnus, conj. that not, Par. 144; quīd obstat q. vēnias? what prevents you from coming?
quōmōdo? in what manner? how? (also used i. e dependent quest.)
quondam, adv. formerly
quōniam, conj. since
quōquē, see quīsquē
quōquē, conj. also, too; (always after the word it modifies)
quōt, indecl. adj. how many
quōtīdīē (more correctly spelt cōtī-
dīē), adv. every day
quōtiens, adv. how many times; quōtiens...tōtiens, as many times as...so many times
quōtus, -a, -um? what (in number)?
how many?

quōtusquisque, pron. q. est qui
vēlīt! how many are there who
wish! (sometimes in two words,
e.g. quōtus enim quisque)

Quo est, an incorrect form of cum

Rādo, rāsi, rāsum, 3, shave
Radīx, -icis, f. root
rāpāx, -ācis, adj. rapacious
rāpidus, -a, -um, rapid
rāpio, -ūi, raptum, -ēre, 3, seize
rārō, adv. seldom, rarely
rārus, -a, -um, adj. rare
rātio, -ōnis, f. reason
rātus, -a, -um, thinking; see reōr
rēcīpiō, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, take
back; sē rēcipiunt in castra,
they retreat to the camp
rēcīto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, I read aloud
rēclāmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, cry shame,
protest
rēcordor, -ātus, 1, call to mind
(gen., but more often acc.)
rēcrēo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, refresh
rēctē, adv. rightly
rectus, -a, -um, adj. straight, right
rēcūpēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, recover,
get back [-fuse]
rēcūsō, -āvi, -ātum, 1, object, re-
reddo, reddīdi, reddītum, 3, restore,
render
rēdēo, -īi, -ītum, 4, return
rēduco, -duxī, -ductum, 3, bring
back
rēfēro, rētūli or retūli, rēlātum, 3,
v. irreg. I bring back, report,
relate, reply; sometimes means
"refer;" dē hāc rē ad Patres rēlā-
tum est, a reference was made
the Senate on this point
rēfert (or rē-fert) it matters, is of
importance (conjugated like fēro,
but impersonal); illud magni
rēferre rōr, I think that is of
great importance (329)

rēgēro, -gessi, -gestum, 3, cast up,
or back
rēgīna, -ae, f. a queen
rēgō, -ōnis, f. region, district
regno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, reign
regnum, -i, n. a kingdom
rēgō, -xi, -ctum, 3, I rule
Rēgulus, -i, m. Regulus
rēligō, -ōnis, f. religious scruple,
īd rēligiōnī hābēo, I consider this
sacright, lit. for a religious
scruple (268) [poets, rēligō]
rēmūntio, -āvi, -ātum, 1, bring back
word
rēlinquo, -liqüi, -lictum, 3, leave,
quit
rēminīscor, 3, I remember (203)
rēnōvo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, make new
again, restore
rēctor, rātus, rēri, (v. dep.) suppose,
think
rēpērio, reppēri, rēpertum, 4, find
(after search); se in vēnīō
rēplēo, -plevi, -plētum, 2, fill up
rēs, rēi, f. thing; rem bēnē gēro,
I succeed; rēs Rōmānā, the
affairs (or fortunes) of Rōmā; r.
militāris, military matters; r.
fammīlāris, one's household aff airs,
property; r. frumentāria, forage;
rē ipsa, or rē, in fact (adv. abl.)
rescindo, -scīdi, -scissum, 3, tear
open, or down; break down (a
bridge)

rēsistō, -stūi, -stūtum, 3, (g. dat.)
resist; mihi rēsistitur, I am
being resisted [gard
respicio, -spexi, -spectum, 3, re-
respondō, -di, -sum, 2, answer
responsum, -i, n. answer
rēs-publica, rēi-publicae, f., the
republic, the country, politics
restitūo, -ni, -ctum, 3, restore
resto, -stīi, 1, remain; spēs ūnā
restat, one hope remains
rēte, -is, n. a net
rētēxō, -textū, -textum, 3, unweave
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vocab</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rētīneō, -tīnui, -tentum, 2, keep back</td>
<td>saepio, saepsi, saeptum, 4, hedge in, fence round</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēus, -i, m. the accused, defendant; rēus factus sum, I was accused</td>
<td>saepissimē, adv. very often</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēvōco, -āvi, -ātum, 1, recall</td>
<td>saevus, -a, -um, cruel, fierce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēverto, -ti, -sum, 3, turn back, return (in the Pres. and Pres. derived tenses the Act form is rare: use rēvertor)</td>
<td>saugācitās, -ātis, f. keen scent, sagacity; saugāx, -ācis, sagacious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēgātio, -ōnīs, f. (see rōgo) a bill proposed to the people; ferre rōgātiōnem, to bring forward a bill</td>
<td>sāgitta, -ae, f. an arrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rōgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, ask; (used of asking the people whether they will pass a bill) hence rōgāre légem, to bring forward a bill</td>
<td>salto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, dance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rōma, -ae, f. Rome</td>
<td>salūber, -bris, -bre, healthful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman</td>
<td>sālūs, -ūtis, f. safety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rōmulus, -i, m. Romulus</td>
<td>salūto, -ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rōsā, -ae, f. a rose</td>
<td>salveō, -āre, 2, I am well; salvē, be well, i.e. good morning!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rūbeo, -ni, 2, blush</td>
<td>salvus, -a, -um, adj. safe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rūber, -bra, -brum, red</td>
<td>Sannitēs, -īum, m. pl. the Sannites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rūbēta, -ōrum, n. pl. bramble-beds; rūbus, -i, m. bramble</td>
<td>sancio, sanxi, sanctum, 4, enact: sancio né quis absit, I enact that no one shall be absent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rūdis, -e, raw, ignorant (g. gen.)</td>
<td>sāpiens, -ntis, wise; sāpienter, adv. wisely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rūpēs, -is, f. a rock</td>
<td>sāpientia, -ae, f. wisdom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rūs, rūris, n. country; rūri (Par. 265) in the country</td>
<td>sāpio, -ivi and -ii, 3, savour of (g. acc.); am wise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rusticus, -a, -um, rustic</td>
<td>sarcio, sarsi, sartum, 4, patch, mend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sācer, -cra, -crum, sacred</td>
<td>sātis, adv. enough, sufficiently: (used as a noun) sātis patriae dātum est, enough has been given to the claims of your country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sācerdōs, -ōtis, m. priest</td>
<td>saxum, -i, n. rock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saepē, adv. often</td>
<td>scēlus, -ēris, n. crime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saepēnūmēro, adv. oftentimes</td>
<td>scēna, -ae, f. the stage of a theatre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>scientia, -ae, f. knowledge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>scindo, scidi, sciss: m. 3, rend, tear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>scio, -i or -ivi, -ītum, 4, I know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Scipio, -onis, m. Scipio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>scriba, -ae, m. scribe, clerk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>scribo, -psi, -ptum, 3, write: s. légēs, I draw up laws</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>scriptor, -ōris, m. a writer, author</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>seĭtum, -i, n. shield</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Scythā, -ae, m. a Scythian</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
se, see Par. 94, 218, 305, 306; sē-
cum, see Par. 179.
sevūrus, -a, -um, adj. severe
si, conj. if (125); si quis, si qui, if
any man, any men (294); with
pres. and imperf. subj. (295)
sic, adv. thus, so
Sicilia, -ae, f. Sicily
sidus, -ēris, n. star
signum, -i, n. a sign, signal
silentium, -iī, n. silence
silva, -ae, f. a wood [66, 60
similis, -e, (g. gen. or dat.) like,
simul, adv. at the same time; simul
...simul, at once...and
simulāc, adv. as soon as
simūlacrum, -i, n. an image, statue
simulātio, -ōnis, f. a pretence
simūlo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, pretend
sine, prep. (g. abl.) without
singūli, -ae, -a, one a-piece, one by
one (77, 814)
sinister, -tra, -trum, left
sino, sīvi, sīatum, 3, suffer
sinūs, -us, m. a fold (of the garment,
especially about the breast);
pocket
sītus, -is, f. (acc. -im) thirst; sītī
mōri, to die of (lit. with) thirst
sīve, conj. whether; sīve...sīve,
whether...or; (not used like utrum
an...in dep. sentences)
sevōrus, -a, -um, adj. severe
sē, conj. if (125); sī quis, sī qui, if
any man, any men (294); with
pres. and imperf. subj. (295)
sic, adv. thus, so
Sicilia, -ae, f. Sicily
sidus, -ēris, n. star
signum, -i, n. a sign, signal
silentium, -iī, n. silence
silva, -ae, f. a wood [66, 60
similis, -e, (g. gen. or dat.) like,
simul, adv. at the same time; simul
...simul, at once...and
simulāc, adv. as soon as
simūlacrum, -i, n. an image, statue
simulātio, -ōnis, f. a pretence
simūlo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, pretend
sine, prep. (g. abl.) without
singūli, -ae, -a, one a-piece, one by
one (77, 814)
sinister, -tra, -trum, left
sino, sīvi, sīatum, 3, suffer
sinūs, -us, m. a fold (of the garment,
especially about the breast);
pocket
sītus, -is, f. (acc. -im) thirst; sītī
mōri, to die of (lit. with) thirst
sīve, conj. whether; sīve...sīve,
whether...or; (not used like utrum
an...in dep. sentences)
sólum, adv. only, alone
sólus, -a, -um, adj. gen. sing. -iús, dat. -i, alone
solvo, solvi, sólútum, 3, I loosen, pay; s. fámem, I break my fast; impar solvendo sum, I am not equal to paying, i.e. insolvent
somnus, -i, m. sleep
sónitus, -ús, m. a sound, noise
sóns, sōntus, species, Sparta, sortiō, sors, sdpor, sSnus, sons, sonitus, somnus, solvo,
SUP
spiritus, splro, spes, specus, speculor, specto,
statio, -onis, -a, -oris,
stellus, -a, -e, -onis, f. sister
stero, -tui, -s, snow
stipendium, -ii, n. (military) pay
sto, stēti, stātum, 1, I stand, abide by (with abl. or in and abl.) stāre prōnissis, to abide by one's promises; a Tullio stāre, to side with Tullius; magno prētio stat, it costs a great price
strēnūus, -a, -um, vigorous (686)
strēpitūs, -ús, m. noise, din
struо, -xi, -ctum, 3, pile up, construct
stūdēo, -ǔ, 2, I am eager, zealous
stūdiōsus, -a, -um, adj. zealous, eager after (g. gen.)
stūdium, -ii, n. zeal, a pursuit, study
stultītiā, -ae, f. folly
stultus, -a, -um, foolish
suādō, -āsī, -āsum, 2, (g. dat.) advise, persuade
suāvis, -e, adj. sweet, delightful
sūb, prep. (g. abl. or acc.) up to, under; (of time) about (180)
suōbo, -i, -tum (243), go up to
sūbito, adv. suddenly
sūbitus, -a, -um, sudden
subsequor, -e, -eri, -tum, 3, follow up
subsum, no perf., v. irreg. I am under, amongst [dat.] help
subvēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4, (g. succēdo, -cessum, 3, follow, turn out; res mihi bēnē successit, the matter turned out well for me
Suēvi, -orum, the Suei
sufficio, -feci, -fectum, 3, suffice (g. dat.)
sum, I am, p. 79, Par. 268, 142d
sūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, 3, take, assume
summus, -a, -um, (69) highest, utmost; summa céléritāte, with all speed; summus mons, the highest part of the mountain
sūper, prep. (g. acc. or abl.) over, upon, concerning (180)
sūperbia, -ae, f. pride
sūperbus, -a, -um, proud
sūpēro, -āvī, -ātum, 1, overcome
sūpersum, -fui, -esse, v. irreg. I remain over, survive (g. dat.)
sūpērus, -a, -um, adj. upper (69)
suppēdito, -āvī, -ātum, 1, supply
supplex, -icis, adj. supplicant (47, 48)
supplicium, -ii, n. punishment
suprā, prep. (g. acc.) above
suprēmus, -a, -um, superl. of sū-pērus, highest; (of time) last
surgō, surrexi, surrectum, 3, rise
suscipio, -ōpī, -ceptum, 3, undertake
suspectō, -ōnīs, f. suspicion sustento, 1, sustain
sūus, -a, -um, (98 and p. 328); suis
impērat, he orders his (men) (34)
Sīria, -ae, f. Syria

Tābernaeōrum, -i, n. tent tabeso, -ui, 3, I decay
tācēo, -ūi, -ītum, 2, I am silent
taedēt, -dūit or pertaesum est, v.
impers. it disgusts, wearies (219)
taeter, -tra, -trum, foul
talentum, -i, n, a talent, i.e. a sum
of money, about £240
tālis, -e, of that sort, such
tam, adv. so, to such a degree, such;
tam prāvī mōres, such depraved
conduct; very, hóc tam longum
itter, this very long journey (228)
tāmen, conj. yet, however
tamquam, conj. just as; tē t. thē-
saurum hābēo, I consider you as
a treasure; t. sī consul esset,
just as if he were consul
tandem, at last; cur (or quid) tan-
dem? why indeed? pray why?
tantum, adv. (so much and no more,
hence) only; nōnīnē tantum
mihi nōtus est, he is known to
me by name and no more; ānus
tantum, only one
tantus, -a, -um, so great (a); (as
a noun) tantum pēculiā, so
much (of) money; (often used,
after a Pron., for "great") haec
tanta cālūmitās, this great calum-
ity; tanti, see Par. 283, 284; tan-
tum...quantum, as much...as
tĀrdus, -a, -um, slow
Tarquinius, -i, m. Tarquin
Tartāreōs, -a, -um, Tartaric, be-
longing to Tartarus, the region

of the punishment of the wicked
dead
Taurus, -i, m. Mount Taurus
taurus, -i, m. a bull
tēgo, -xi, -catum, 3, I cover
tellūs, -ūris, f. earth, the goddess
Earth
tēlum, -i, n. dart, missile [ness
tēmēritās, -ātis, f. recklessness, rash-
tempestās, -ātis, f. tempest
templum, -i, n. temple
tempus, -ōris, n. time; tempōri
cēdēre, to yield to circumstances
tēnēo, -ūi, tentum, 2, I hold, re-
tain
tēner, -ēra, -ērum, tender, soft
tēnuīs, -e, thin
tēnūs, prep. (g. abl.) as far as;
follows its case); verbo tēnus,
so far as words go
tergum, -i, n. back; terga dant
mūlī, they flee before me
ternī, -ae, -a, three a-piece (314)
tēro, trīvi, trītum, 3 rub, waste;
tempus tērīmus, we are wasting
time
terra, -ae, f. the earth, land; terrā
mārīque, by sea and land (ad-
verbial local abl.)
terrēo, -ūi, -ītum, 2, terrify,
frighten
terror, -ōris, m. terror, alarm
tertīus, -a, -um, see Par. 81
testamentum, -i, n. will, testament
testis, -is, m. witness
testor, -ātus, 1, testify
Thēmistoclēs, -is, m. Themistocles
Thrāx, Thrācēs, m. a Thracian;
Thrācum est, it is the mark of;
i.e. like, Thracians
Tiberius, -ii, m. Tiberius, the name
of the second Roman emperor,
Tiberius Caesar
tignārius, -a, -um, having to do with
beams; fāber t. builder, carpenter
tigris, -is, or -idis, c. a tiger,
tigress
timēo, -ūi, 2, fear
timidus, -a, -um, adj. timid
timor, -ōris, m. fear
tōlēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, endure
tollo, sustulī, sublatum, 3, raise, take away; tollunt risum, clamorem, &c. they raise a laugh, shout, &c.
Tōnans, -nis, m. the Thunderer, a name of Jupiter
tōnat, -ūit, -āre, 1, v. impers. it thunders
tonsor, -ōris, m. barber
torreo, torrui, tostum, 2, parch, roast
tot, indecl. adj. so many; hae tot calamītātes, these numerous calamities
tōtiens, adv. so many times
tōtus, -a, -um, adj. whole, all (85)
trabris, trābis, f. beam
tractō, -āvi, -ātum, 1, I handle, deal with
trādo, -didi, -dītum, 3, deliver; tradītum est, it has been handed down
tradūco, -xi, -ctum, 3, I lead across
trāhō, -axi, -actum, 3, I draw, drag
trājicio, (also spelt trāicio) same as transjicio; (1) throw across, carry across, trājicio exercitum, I lead an army across; (2) carry myself across, i.e. cross, trājicio flūmen, I cross a stream
transquillus, -a, -um, adj. calm
trans, prep. g. acc. across
Transalpinus, -a, -um, beyond the Alps
transcō, -ii, -ītum, 4, (241) cross
transfigo, -lixī, -lixīum, 3, transfix
transjicio, see trājicio
transversus, -a, -um, turned across; t. digitus or unguis, a finger's, or nail's breadth
trēcanī, -ae, -a, three hundred a-
trēcenti, -ae, -a, three hundred
trēmo, trēmūi, tremītum, 3, tremble
trēs, tria, see Par. 68
tribānus, -i, m. the Tribune
tribūo, -ūi, -ūtum, 3, give, assign
tribūs, -ns, f. tribe
tribūtum, -i, n. tribute
triennium, -i, n. three years
trīni, -ae, -a, three (used with nouns like lītūrēae) (318)
tristis, -e, sad
trīumpho, -āvi, -ātum, 1, enjoy a triumph, i.e. a triumphal procession granted by the Romans to distinguished generals
Trōja, -ae, f. Troy
Trōjānus, -a, -um, Trojan
tū, see p. 45
tūba, -ae, f. trumpet
tūcōr, tūtītus, 2, v. dep. gaze on, guard, protect
Tullia, -iae, f. Tullia
Tullius, -i, m. Tullius
tum, adv. and conj. then during that time; cum...tum, not only... but also (317)
tūmidus, -a, -um, swelling, swollen
tunc, adv. then, at that time
turba, -ae, f. crowd
turbo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, disturb, throw into confusion; turbātum est, a riot was made
turbulentus, -a, -um, turbulent
turdus, -e, m. thrush
turpis, -e, base, disgraceful
turpītūdō, -inis, f. disgrace
turris, -is, f. tower
tussīs, -is, f. (acc. -im, abl. -i,) cough
tuto, adv. safely; -ns, -a, -um, safe
tūs, -a, -um, pron. adj. thy, thine
tyrannus, -i, m. despot, tyrant
Úbi, adv. where
ulciscor, ultūs, 3 (v. dep.) avenge
ullus, -a, -um, adj. (gen. sing. -īūs, dat. sing. -ī) any (85, 87, 30f)
ulmus, -i, f. elm
Latin-English

ultimus, -a, -um, see Par. 69
ultrā, prep. g. acc. on the farther side of, beyond
Ūlyssēs, -is, m. Ulysses
uncia, -ae, f. inch
unda, -ae, water
unguis, -is, m. nail
unquam, adv. at any time, ever
unā, at the same time or place; together
ünstē, adv. singularly
ūnus, -a, -um, adj. (74), one; in tē ūno, in you alone (96); spēs quam ūnam hābūi, the only hope
ī had; omnes ād ūnum, all to
urbs, urbīs, f. city [a man umer, ussē, usūnum, 3, burn
ūt, conj. that, in order that; often rendered by Eng. "to" (Par. 143); ut non (when to be used for nō) Par. 296; (with indic. "when," "as")
ūtēr, -rā, -rum (gen. -rīus, dat. -rī), which of two? u. hōrum, which of these two (85)? ūtērōque, utrāque, utrāmque, either, both; dux ūterōque (sing.) both leaders
ūtēlis, -e, useful
ūtēltās, -ātīs, f. utility, service
ūtinam! conj. O that, would that! (g. subj., see Par. 330)
ūtor, ūsūs, 3, v. dep. I use (207)
ūtrāmque, adv. on both sides
ūtrum, conj. whether (171, 174)
uxor, -ōris, f. a wife

Vācūus, -a, -um, empty of (g. abl.)
valdē (i.e. validē) adv. strongly, exceedingly
vālēo, -nī, -tum, 2, I am in good health; valete, farewell!
vālētūdō, -inis, f. health
vālīdus, -a, -um, strong
vallis, -is, f. a valley
vallum, -i, n. the camp palisade composed of valli (see vallus)
vallus, -i, the stake borne by each Roman soldier for the formation of the vallum [hood
vānītās, -ātīs, f. emptiness, false-
vārius, -a, -um, different, various
vastus, -a, -um, vast
vasto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, lay waste
-vē, conj. or (an enclitic form of vēl)
vectīgāl, -ālis, n. a tax
vēhēmens, -utis, vehement, warm
vēhēmenter, adv. vehemently, warmly; -issimē, very warmly
vēhēmentia, -ae, f. vehemence, passion
vēho, -xi, -ctum, 3, carry (pass.
vēl, or (if you like), Par. 157a; hic
discussus. vēl pōtius fūga, this
departure or rather (if you will
have strict correctness) flight;
even, hoc vēl pūcro fācilē est, this is easy even for a boy (141a);
(with superl.) very, Stoicorum
vēl maximus est, he is the very
greatest of the Stoics
vēlōx, -ōcis, adj. swift
vēnātor, -ōris, m. hunter
vendo, -didi, -ditum, 3, sell
vēnēnātus, -a, -um, poisoned
vēnēnūm, -i, n. poison
vēnērōr, -ātus, 1, v. dep. reverence,
worship
vēnīa, -ae, f. pardon, dare veniam
ei, to pardon him
vēnīo, vēni, ventum, 4, I come
vēnor, -atus, 1, v. dep. I hunt
venter, -tris, m. the stomach
ventīto, -āvi, 1, v. freq. I come
frequently
ventus, -i, m. the wind
Vēnīs, -ēris, f. Venus
vēr, vēris, n. the spring
verbēr, -ēris, n. lash, stripe
verbūm, -i, n. word; verbo tēmus,
so far as words go
vērē, adv. truthfully, accurately
vērōr, -ītus, 2, fear, reverence
(301)
VOCABULARY.

Vercinmísís, -e, adj. likely, probable
vérítás, -átis, f. truth
vérò, conj. however, truly (139a)
versus, -ús, m. line, verse
versús, prep. with acc. towards (only of place or direction)
vertéx, -ícis, m. top
vertò, verti, versum, 3, turn; in fugam vertère, to put to flight
vérus, -a, -um, true [abl.]
vescor, 3, v. dep. feed on (g.
vesper, -péri, m. evening
vespérascit, -ávit, -ascère, v. impers. evening approaches
Vesta, -ae, f. Vesta, the goddess of fire and the hearth
Vestális, -e, Vestal, belonging to Vesta
vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours
vestimentum, -i, n. clothing
vestiò, -ivi or -í; -ítum, 4, clothe
vestis, -is, f. clothing, garment
vestítus, -ús, m. clothing
vétus, vétérís, old (61)
vexo, -ávi, -átum, 1, I vex, harass
ví, see vis
víá, -ae, f. way, road
victor, -óris, m. conqueror
victóriá, -ae, f. victory
victus, -a, -um, pass. part. of vinco
vicus, -i, m. village
vidéo, vidi, visum, 2, see (in passive) seem, appear; quid tibi vidétur?
What seems (good) to you, i.e. what do you think?
vigil, gen. -ílis, watchful (47)
vigilia, -ae, f. night watch; the night from 6 P.M. to 6 A.M. was divided into four "watches"
vigilo, -ávi, -átum, 1, I watch, I am awake
viliis, -e, adj. cheap, common
vincio, -nxi, -nectum, 4, bind
vinco, vici, victum, 3, conquer
vînculum, -i, n. a chain, bond
vinétum, -i, n. vineyard, vines
vinum, -i, n. wine
violá, -ae, f. violet
violentía, -ae, f. violence
víres, -tûm, f. pl. strength; see vis Virgiliús, -ii, see Vergilius
virga, -ae, f. rod, stick
virgo, -inis, f. maiden
vîr, vîri, m. hero, man
virga, -ae, f. twig, rod, stick
vîrîdis, -e, green
virtús, -útís, f. valour, virtue
vis, irreg. see Par. 311; force, violence, power, efficacy; pl. vires, strength; see also vîlo, p. 238
viso, -visi, 3, (v. freq.) come to see, visit
visus, -ús, m. sight
vîta, -ae, f. life
vîtíósus, -a, -um, full of vice, vicious
vîtís, -is, f. vine
vitútum, -i, n. vice, fault; dâre vîtâ, to impute as a fault (Par. 268)
vîto, -ávi, -átum, 1, avoid
vîtúperó, -ávi, -átum, revile
vivo, vixi, victum, 3, live
vix, adv. scarcely
vôlo, -ávi, -átum, 1, I fly
vôlo, vûltû, vêllê, v. irreg. I wish, am willing; idem velle, to wish for the same thing (pp. 128-130)
vôluntas, -átís, f. a wish, will
vûluptas, -táts, f. pleasure
vôro, -ávi, -átum, 1, devour
vos, see p. 45.
vox, vócís, f. a voice
Vûlcânus, -i, m. Vulcan
vûlnêro, -ávi, -átum, 1, wound
vûlnus, -érís, n. a wound
vulpès, -is, f. fox
vultur, -úris, m. a vulture
vultûs, -ús, m. countenance, looks
Xênopôn, -ontis, m. Xenophon
Xerxês, -is, m. Xerxes
APPENDIX XI.

VOCABULARY—II.
ENGLISH INTO LATIN.¹

A (i.e. a certain), quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (pron. neut. quīdām); a man said to me, quīdam mihi dixit; he had a wonderful power of speaking, erat hōmīni mīra quaedam dicendi fācultas ability (mental), ingēnium, i, n.
able, to be, possum, pōtūl, posse; see Par. 229
abode, sēdēs, -is, f.
abound, ābundo, 1
about (around), circum (g. acc.; also adv.); (concerning) dē (g. abl.); (nearly) fērē
above, sūper (g. acc. and abl.); from above, dēsūper, adv.
abroad (rest) fōris; (motion) fōrās
absent, to be, absūm, āfui, ābesse; absent, adj. absens, -ntis
abstain from, abstīneo, -ui, -tentum, 2 (g. abl.)
abundantly, ābundanter
accept, accipiō, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3
acceptable, grātus, -a, -um
accident, cāsus, -ūs, m.; by accident, cāsū; fortē (adv.)
accompany, cómitūr, 1, dep.

accomplish, perficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3; without accomplishing anything, rē infectā
accord, of his, my own accord, sponte suā, meā, &c.
accordingly, itāque, igitur (adv.). N.B. igitur should not stand first in a clause
account, on account of, propter, or ob, prep. g. acc.; on that account, ob id, ideo
accurate (of things, not persons), accurātus, -a, -um
accusation, crīmen, -inis, n.
accuse, accusō, I
accused (man), the, reus, -i, m.
accuser, accusātor, -oris, m. [dep. accustomed, to be, sōleo, sōlītus, 2; Achilles, Achillēs, -is, m.
acknowledge, agnosco, -nōvi, -nitum, 3
acquainted with, to be, see to know acquire, to, ādipiscor, ādeptus, 3, dep.
acquit, absolvō, -vi, -útum, 3; (with g. of charge, Par. 290)
acree, jūger, -eris, n.
across, trans (g. acc.)

¹ In this Vocabulary it has not been thought necessary to write the terminations of the regular Conjugations 1, 2, and 4, i.e. -āvi, -ātum; -ui, -útum; -īvi, ītum.
VOCABULARY.

act, an, factum, -i, n.; act, to, āgo, ēgī, actum, 3
Actium, Actium, -i, n.
active, strēnuus, -a, -um
actor, an, mīmus, -i, m.
adapted, aptus, -a, um
add, addo, -dīdi, -ditum, 3
address, allōquor, -cūtus, 3, dep.
admire, admirōr, 1, dep.
admiration, admirātio, -onis, f.
admit, admitto, -āmis, -āmisum, 3;
(confess) confiteor, -fessus, 2, dep.
admonish, admoño, -mōneō, -ui, -itum, 2
adorn, ornō, 1
advance, to, prōgrēdior, -gressus,
3, dep.; prōcēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3
advantage, commōdum, -i, n.
adverse, adversus, -a, -um; iniquus, -a, -um
adversity, rēs adversae
advice, consilium, -i, n.; by my, his, advice, mē, eo, auctōre (197)
advice, admōneō, -ui, -itum, 2 (143)
Aetna, Aetna, -ae, f.
affair, rēs, rei, f.
affect, cārtās, -ātis, f.; filial
affectio, piētās, -ātis, f.
affectiōne, cārus, -a, -um; pius, -a, -um
affirm, assēvēro, 1; affirmo, 1
afflict, angō, 3; vexō, 1
afford, praebeo, -ui, -itum, 2
afraid, to be, timeō, 2; vereor, vēritus, 2, dep. (constr. Par. 301)
Africa, Afrīca, -ae, f.
after, post (g. acc.); after (conj.), postquam, (1) foll. by perf.,
except where (2) the interval is defined; (1) after he had come,
postquam vēnit; (2) ten days after he had come, decimo die
postquam vēnerat
afterwards, postea; a few days after-
wards, paucis post diebus (313)
cgain, rursus, (itērum, a second
time); again and again, itērum
atque itērum
against, contrā, adversus, in (all
g. acc.); he was sent against the
enemy, missus est adversus
hostes; against the laws, contrā
jūs; against one's will, invitūs, -a, um; she came a. & c. invita vēnit
Agamemnon, Ἀγαμεμνών, -onis, m.
age, aetas, ātis, f.; old age, sēne-
tūs, -ātis, f.; age, an, saeculum,
-i, n.
Agesilaus, Ἁγέσιλαος, -i, m.
ago, ābhinc (with acc. or abl.);
two years ago, ābhinc biennio,
or biennium
agree, consentio, -sensì, -sensum, 4
(foll. by dat., or cum)
agreeable, jūcundus, -a, -um
agreement, consensus, -ūs, m.
Ah! interj. O! foll. by acc.;
Ah, the lucky fellow! O felicem
hominem!
aid, auxilium, -ii, n.; aid, to,
subvēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4
air, aēr, aēris, m.
Ajax, Ajax, -jācis, m.
alas! heu! or ehēu!
Alban, Albanus, -a, -um
Alexander, Ἀλεξάνδρος, -dris, m.
alliance, sociētās, -ātis, f.
alien, aliēnus, -a, -um
alike, pariter
alive, vivus, -a, -um
all, omnis, -e; (all) men, omnes;
from all sides, undique; all the
best citizens, optimus quisque
civium; all the food we had,
was consumed, quidquid ēbī
nōbis fuērat, consumptum est
allow, sino, sīvi, situm, 3
allure, allicio, -lexi, -lectum, 3
ally, socius, -i, m.
almost, paenē, fērē
alone, sōlus, -a, -um; ānus, -a, -um
(85); Cato alone thought other-
wise, Catōni ānī āliter vīsum est
along (prep.), per (g. acc.)
Alps, Alpes, -iun, l. pl.
already, jam
also, (1) etiam, mostly before, (2) quodque, always after, the word modified; not only...but also, non solum...sed etiam, or, cum tum
altar, àra, -ae, f.
altogether, omnino always, semper
ambassador, légatus, -i, m.
ambush, insidia, -arum, f.
amiss, something amiss has happened to him, aliquis ei humanitatis accidit
among, inter (g. acc.) among the Romans, apud Romanos; they are fighting amongst one another, inter se pugnant
ancestors, máiores, -um, m. pl.
ancient, antiquus, -a, -am; priscus, -a, -am, větus, -eris; among the ancients, apud antiquos
and, et; atque; -que (Par. 37); and no one, necer, nothing, &c., nec quisquam, unquam, quidquam, &c.
anger, ira, -ae, f.; in or with a., iracundia, summa ira, or cum ira (Par. 276)
angry, to be, irascor, iráutus, 3, dep.; angry, iratus, -a, -um
animal, animalis, -alis, n.; wild animal, fera, -ae, f.
announce, nuntio, 1
annually, quótanis
another, alius, -a, -ud; the other, alter, -éra, -ërum, (Par. 86)
answer, to, responddeo, -di, -nsum, 2 (g. dat. of pers.); answer, un, respondium, -i, n.; to make answer, respondère; I was answered, responsum est mihi
Antonius, Antonius, -i, m.
any, any one (in neg. compar. and interrog. sentences), quisquam or ullus (309); (with num, si, nè) quis (294); any (you please), quilibet, quaelibet, quodlibet, (pron. neut. quilibet); the enemy can attack us at any time (they please), quilibet tempóre
anywhere, usquam
appear, videor, visus, 2; appareo, apparse, placó, 1
apple, pōnum, -i, n.; māllum, -i, n.
appoint, constituo, -ui, -atum, 3
approach, to, àdeo, -ii, -itum, (foll. by acc.); accédó, -cessum, 3, (foll. by ad); an, àditus, -às, m.
approve, prōbo, 1; a man of approved excellence, vir spectatæ (or, more often, -à) virtútis (or -è)
apt, aptus, -a, -um
Archimedes, Archimēdēs, -is, m.
ardour, ardor, -oris, m.
Argos, Argi, -orum, m.
Arion, Arion, -onis, m.
Ariovistus, Ariovistus, -i, m.
arise, orior, ortus, 4, dep. (from bed, seat, &c.) surgo, surrexi, surrectum, 3
Aristippus, Aristippus, -i, m.
arm, an, brachium, -i, n.; arm, to, armo, 1
armed, armatus, -a, -um
arms (military), arma, -orum, n.
army, exercitus, -ús, m. [adv.]
around, circum (prep. g. acc. and Arpinum, Arpínun, -i, n.
arrange, dígero, -essi, -gestum, 3
arrival, adventus, -ús, m.
arrive, pervénio, -vēni, -ventum, 4
(foll. by ad); we arrived at Rome, Romam pervénimus(249)
VOCABULARY.

arrow, sägitta, -ae, f.
art, ars, -tis, f.
as, ut; as if; tanquam, quāsi; as long as, dōnēc; as far as, tēnus (g. abl.); as, (often trans. by Apposition), you do many things, as a boy, which you will not do, as an old man, multa, puer, fācīs, quae, sēnex, non fācies; as quickly as possible, quam cēlerrimē; (sometimes rel. pron.) he is the same as he always was, idem est qui (or ac) semper fuit; for the same price as, i.e., for which, ēodem prētio quo; ("as" is sometimes rend. by the dat. of purpose) he sent a legion as a reinforcement, mīsīt lēgōnēm subsidīō (266); as much money as, tantum pecūnīae quantum
ascend, ascendo, -ndī, -nsum, 3
ascertain, cognosco, cognōvi, cognitum, 3; compērio, compēri, compertum, 4
ashamed, to be, pūdet, -uit, 2 (impers.); I am ashamed of doing, having done, pūdet me fācēre, fēcisse (219)
Asia, Āsia, -ae, f.
ask, to, (1) meaning question, rōgo, 1; interrōgo, 1; quārea, -sīvi, situm, 3 (with ex, dé, or a); (2) meaning beg, rōgo, 1; ὤρο, 1 (143); (peace) pācem pēterē; he was asked his opinion, sententiam rōgātus est
ass, āsīnus, -i, m.
asassin, sīcārius, -i, m.
asault, to, oppugnō, 1; assault, an, impētus, -us, m.
assemble, convēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4 (intrans.); convōco, 1 (trans.)
assembly, concilium, -ii, n; conventus, -us, m.
assist, subvēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4 (g. dat.)
asistance, auxilium, -i, n.
assume (take), sumō, sumpsi, sumptum, 3
astonishment, admiratio, -onis, f.
at, ā pud (g. acc.); ād (g. acc.);
at all, omnino; at least, saltem;
at last, at length, tandem, āli-quando; at once, simul, stātim
Athena, Ἀθῆναι, -ārum, f. pl.
Athenian, Ἀθηνειστής, -e
attack, to, aggrēdior, gressus, 3, dep.; oppugnō, 1 (to attack a town); attack, an, impētus, -us, m.
attempt, to, cōnōr, 1, dep. (this v. is an exc. to the rule (143) about v. of "striving"; it is foll. by inf.); attempt, an, cōnātus, -ās, m.
at [dat. attention, to pay, ὀπεράμ dāre, g.
Attica, Attica, -ae, f.
attract, trāhō, -xi, -ctum, 3
audacity, audācia, -ae, f.
augur, augur, -uris, m.
augury, augūrium, -i, n; ōmēn, -inis, n.
Augustus, Augustus, -i, m.
auspice, auspiciūm, -i, n.
author, auctōr, -ōris, m.
authority, auctoritās, -ātis, f.
avert, avōntus, -us, m.
aver, avōntus, -us, m.
avert, avōntus, -us, m.
avoid, vacō, -vōri, 1; fūgio, fūri, 3
await, I, expecto, 1; death awaits us, mors nōs mānet
awake, expurgiscor, -perrectus, 3, dep.
aver of, gnārus, -a, -um (g. gen.)
aver, dirus, -a, -um
axe, secūris, -is, f.; acc. -em or -im, abl. -i
Bacchus, Bacchus, -i, m.
back, tergum, -i, n.; the enemy
turn their backs, i.e. flee, terga dant; drive back, see drive
bad, málus, -a, -um; badly, málē; bad men, imprimē
baggage, impōdimenta, -ōrum, n.
Balbus, Balbus, -i, m.
banish, pello, pepūlī, pulsum, 3;
expello, -pūlī, -pulsūm, 3
bankrupt, impar solvendo, i.e. unequal to paying
banquet, ēpūlum, -i, n.; pl. epulae, ārum, f. (the sing. mostly means a public banquet)
barbarian, barbarūs, -a, -um
barbarous, fērus, -a, -um
barber, tonsor, -ōris, m.
bargain, to make a, pāciscor, pac tus, 3, dep.
barn, horreum, -i, n.
barren, stérilis, -e
base, turpis, -e
baseness, turpītūdō, -īnis, f.
battle, proelium, -i, n.; pugna, -ae, f.; see Cannae
beak, rostrum, -i, n.
bear, to, fēro, -tūli, -lātum, ferre
beard, barba, -ae, f.
beast, bestia, -ae, f.; of burden, jūmentum, -i, n.
beat, caedo, cēcīdi, caesum, 3
beaten, to be, vāpūlo, 1
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum
beauty, forma, -ae, f.; pulchritūdō, -īnis, f.
because, quia, quod
become, fio, factus, fiēri (258); it becomes me, dēcet mē (220)
bed, lectus, -i, m.
beech-tree, fāgus, -i, f.
befall (amiss), accīdo, -īdi, 3;
(good) contingo, -tīgi, -tactum, 3 (both g. dat.)
befit, dēcet, -uit, 2, impers.
before, (prep.) antē (g. acc.); in the presence of,ōram (g. abl.); (conj.) prūsquām, antēquam; beforehand, (adv.) antēa, antē; a few years before, paucis antē annis;
the day before, see “day”; before the last, extrēmis prior
beg, òro, 1; beggar, mendicus, -i, m.
begin, incipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3;
(a battle), ineo, inīi, inītum, inīre; before a pass. inf. use coepī, coeptus sum, coepisse, v. def.; the city began to be besieged, urbē coepit (or coepta est) obsidēri
beginning, inītium, -i, n.
behind, post (g. acc.)
behold, aspicio, -exi, -ectum, 3;
video, vidi, visum, 2
behoves, it, ōportet, -uit, 2
believe, crēdo, -didī, -ditum, 3 (g. dat. of person); I believe that he will come, crēdo eum ventūrum esse; I believe him, crēdo ei Belyae, Belgae, -ārum, m.
belly, venter, -tris, m.
below, infrā (g. acc.)
benefactor, bēnēfactor, -ōris, m.
benefit, to, bēnēfacio, -fēci, -factum, 3; prōsum, -fui, esse (dat.);
benefit, a, bēnēfactum, -i, n.
benevolence, bēnēvolentia, -ae, f.
benevolent, bēnēvolus, -a, -um (68a)
beseech, òro, 1 (143)
beside, iuxtā (g. acc.); praeter (g. acc.); besides (prep.) praeter (g. acc.) (183); (adv.) praetērēa besiege, obsēdeo, -sēdi, -sessum, 2
best, optimus, -a, -um; I do my best to write, ēd āgo ūt scribam
betake, confēro, -tūli, -ferre, collātum; rēcipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3; he betook himself to Corinth, Côrinthum se contūlit
betray, prōdo, -dīdi, -ditum, 3
betroth, spondeo, spōpondi, sponsum, 3
better, melior, -us
between, inter (g. acc.)
bewail, plōro, 1
beware, cāveo, cāvi, cautum, 2
incendi, incensum, 3 (trans.);
ardeo, arsi, arsum, 2 (intrans.);
a burning; incendium, -i, n.
burst into, irrumo, -rüpi, -ruptum, 3, foll. by in and acc.
bury, sēpēlio, -ivi, sēpultum, 4
bush, dūmus, -i, m.
bushel, mōdius, -ii, m. [n.
business, rès, rei, f.; négôtium, -i,
but, (i) coord. conj. sēd (comes first
in a clause, means on the other
hand; but still; but yet); autem
(never comes first in a clause, means
in the second place), vēro
(139a); (ii) subord. conj. quin;
I doubt not but he will come, nōn
dūbīto quin ventūrus sit
but (prep.), praetēr; no one but
Tullius was present, praetēr Tulli-
um nēmō ădērat; but some-
times, in negatives and questions
that expect a neg. answer, nīsī
(coupling nouns in the same case,
like quanm, 62); what is filial
affection but gratitude towards
parents? quīd est piētās nīsī
grātā ergā pārentes volūntās?
but (a neg. rel. pron., that not),
(i) nom., there was no one but
hated you, nēmō ērat quīn té
ōdīset; (2) abl., not a day
passed but I wept, dies fērc
nullus fuit quīn (i.e. quo nōn)
flērem
butterfly, pāpilio, -onis, m.
buy, ēmo, ēmi, emptum, 3
buyer, emptor, -ōris, m.
by, ā, āb (Par.178); by this time, jam

Campania, Campānia, -ae, f. N.B.
a district, not a city.
can (see able) you can come, vēnīre
pōtēs; it cannot be that you
would venture on this, fiēri nōn
pōtest ut hōc audēcas
Cannae, Cannae, -ārum, f.; of
Cannae, Cannensis, -e, adj.; the
battle of C., proelium Cannense,
or p. Canni pugnātum
capital, cáput, -ītis, n.
Capitol, Cāpitōlium, -i, n.
captive, adj. captīvus, -a, -um
capture, a, captīvus, -i, m.
capture, to, cápio, cēpi, captum, 3
Capua, Cāpua, -ae, f.
carcass, cādāver, -ēris, n.
care, cūra, -ae, f.; take care of cūro,
1, q acc.; take care to, cūrā ut

carefully, dilīgenter
careless, nēglēgens, -ntis
carelessness, incūria, -ae, f.; nēglē
gentia, -ae, f.
carry, portō, 1 (on one's shoulders);
vēho, vexi, vectum, 3 (of horses);
ferre, tūli, lātum (a letter)
carry off, auferō, abstūli, aблātum,
auffere; (a victory) ēportō, 1
carry on, to, a war, bellum gērēre,
gessi, gestum, 3
Carthage, Carthāgo, -inis, f.
Carthaginian, Pœnus, -a, -um
cast, jācio, jecī, jactum, 3
cast away, abjicio, abjēci, abjec-
tum, 3; cast down, dēmitto,
-misi, -missum, 3
cat, felīs, -is, f.
catch, cápio, cēpi, captum, 3
Catiline, Catīlina, -ae, m.
Cato, Cāto, -ōnis, m.
cattle, armenta, -ōrum, n. pl.
cause, causa, -ae, f.
cause, to, efficio, fēci, fectum, 3;
you caused me sorrow, tristitiam
mihī attūlisti
cautiously, cautē

Caesar, Caesar, -āris, m.
calamity, călāmitās, -ātis, f.
call, vocō, 1; call together, con-
vocō, 1; (address) appello, 1;
do you call me an enemy? num
me inīmicum appellās?
calm, plācīdus, -a, -um
Camillus, Cāmillus, -i, m.

ENGLISH-LATIN
cavalry, ēquites, -um, m. pl.; ēquītātus, -ās, m.
cease, désino, -sivi or -sii, 3
certain, certus, -a, -um (g. gen.); a certain person, quidam; a c. fixed
day, certus quidam dies; (meaning "kind of") quidam; there is a c. pleasure, est quaedam vô-
luptas (310a)
charge, (accusation), crimen, -inis, n.; (onset) impētus, -ās, m.; let us charge the enemy, impētum
fāciāmus in hostem [-i, n.
clerck, scriba, -ae, m.
claim, posco, pōposci, 3; vindico, clamour for, postulo, 1
Cicero, Cicerō, -ēs, f.
Cicinnatus, Cincinnātus, -i, m.
clear, clārus, -a, -um; to explain clearly, lācūlenter explicāre
claim, it is, līquet, 2, imper. (222)
clear, it is, līquet, 2, imper. (222)
clothed, vestito, -ivi or -ii, -itum, 4
cloth, vestītus, -ūs, m.
close, claudo, -si, -sum, 3
close quarters, at, comminus
Clytemnestra, Clītemnestra, -ae, f.
cloud, nūbēs, -is, f.
cobbler, sūtor, -ōris, m.
Codrus, Codrus, -i, m.
cock, gallus, -i, m.
colleague, collēga, -ae, m.
collect, collēgo, -lēgi, -lectum, 3
colony, cōlōnia, ae, f.
colour, color, -ōris, m.
colour, color, -ōris, m.
column, (of men) agmen, -īnis, n.
come, vēnio, vēni, ventum, 4
command, (military) imperium, -i, n.; commands, jussa, -orum, n.
pl.; at the command of Tullius, Tullio jūbente (197)
command, to, imperō, 1; praesum, -fui, -esse (both g. dat. of per-
som); jūbeo, jussi jussum, 2

Vocabulary.

291
command of, to be in, praesumum, -fui, -esse (g. dat.)
commander, imperator, -iris, m.;
dux, ducis, m. [3]
commit, committo, -misi, -missum, common, communis, -e.
common-people, plebs, plêbis, f.;
vulgus, -i, n.
commonwealth, respublica, republique, f.
companion, cômès, -itis, m.
compare, compáro, 1; conféro, contúli, collátum, conferre
compassion, misericordia, -ae, f.
compel, cogo, celó, -fui, coegi, coactus, 3 (inf-, or ut, or ad with gerund.)
complain, queror, questus, 3, dep.
complaint, querci̇la, -ae, f. [3]
complete, to, conficio, -feci, -fectum, conceal, cêlo, 1 (g. two acc., 312)
concede, concedo, -cessi, -cessum, 3
conceive a hope, vênire in spem
concerning, de (g. abl.)
concerns, it, see “important
conciliare, concilio, 1
concord, concordia, ae, f.
concourse, concursus, -ús, m.
condena, damno, 1; condemnó, 1;
to condemn to death, cápitis
condemn
condition, condicio, -onis, f.
conduct, to, a war, bellum gerĕre
conduc̔t, mûres, -um, m. pl.
confer, conféro, contúli, collátum, conferre; to c. a benefit on you, benefficium in té c.
conference, colloquium, -i, n.
confess, fâteor, fassus, 2, dep.;
confiteor, -fessus, 2, dep.
confession, confessio, -onis, f.
confidence, fidès, -ei, f.
confirm, confirmo, 1
conflagration, incendium, -i, n.
congratulate, gratûlor, 1, dep. (g. dat.); I c. you that, g. tibi quod
conquer, vinco, vici, victum, 3;
sûpêro, 1
conquered, victus, -a, -um; the
conqueror, victor, -oris, m.
conquest, victoria, -ae, f. [gen.]
conscious, conscius, -a, -um (g.
consciousness, conscientia, -ae, f.
consecrate, consecro, 1
consent, to, consentio, -sensi, -sensum, 4 (dat., or cum)
consent, consensus, -ús, m.
consider, pûto, 1
consist, consto, -stîti, -stàtum, 1;
foll. by ex or et, the legions con-
sisted of ten cohorts each, légiones
cô dens cóhortibus constitèrunt
consolation, sôlátium, -i, n.
console, sôlor, 1, dep.
conspiracy, conjuratio, -onis, f.
conspire, conjûro, 1
conspirator, conjurátus, -a, -um, used as a noun
constancy, constantia, -ae, f.
consult, consul, -ulis, m.
consultate, consûlátus, -ús, m.
consult, consûlo, -sulii, -sultum, 3;
to c. Tullius, consulère Tullium,
to c. T.'s interests, consulère
Tullio
consume, consumo, -sumpsi, -sum-
tum, 3
contemplate, contemplor, -átus
sum, 1
contend, contendo, -di, -tum, 3
content, contentus, -a, -um (g. abl.)
content, certamen, -inis, n.
contradict, contrâdico, -dixi, -die-
tum, 3 (g. dat.)
contrary, contrarius, -a, -um (189)
contrary, on the, contra (adv.)
contrary-to, contra (g. acc.)
conversation, sermo, -onis, m.;
colloquium, -i, n. [3, dep.
converse, to, colloquor, colloquatus,
convey, vého, vexi, vectum, 3
cook, cóquus, -i, m.
cook, to, cóquo, coxi, coctum, 3
cook, aes, aeris, n.
VOCABULARY.

Corinth, Corinthus, -i, f.
Corinthian, Corinthius, -a, -um
Coriolanus, Coriolanus, -i, m.
Coriolis, Coriolis, -orum, m. pl. the small town of Coriolis was burned, C., oppidum parvum, incensum est
corn, (harvested) frumentum, -i, n.; to sow corn, frumenta sērēre Cornelia, Cornélia, -ae, f.
corps, cādāver, -ēris, n.
correct, corrigo, -rexi, -rectum, 3 corrupt, corrumpo, -rāpi, -ruptum, 3
cost, prētium, -i, n.; expense, sumptus, -us, m.
cost, to, sto, stēti, stātum, 1, consto, -stīti, -stātum, 1, (both g. abl. of definite, gen. of indef. price) this cost me more, hoc mīhi pluris constitit : this will cost you much blood, hoc vōbis multo sanguine stābit
costly, sumptuosus, -a, -um
cottage, cāsā, -ae, f.
cover, tēgo, texti, tectum, 3
covet, cūpio, -ivi, -itum, 3
covetous, cūpīdus, -a, -um (g. gen.)
couch, lectus, -i, m., cūbile, -is, n. could (see above), you could have come, vēniōre pōtūisti
council, concilium, -i, n.
counsel, consilium, -i, n.
count, nūmero, 1
countenance, vultus, -ūs, m.
country, terra, -ae, f.; the country (as distinct from the city), rūs, rūris, n. see Par. 265 and 249; one's own, his, my, your, country, patria, -ae, f.; let us die for our country, prō pātria mōriāmur; this is for the good of the country, hoc est ē re-pūblica; a rough country, i.e. district, rēgio aspēra
countrymen, cives, -ium, m. pl.
courage, virtūs, -ātis, f.
course, cursus, -ūs, m.
courtesy, humānitas, -ātis, f.
cover, tēgo, -xi, -ctum, 3
coward, cowardly, ignāvus, -a, -um
cowardice, ignāvia, -ae, f.
crafty, callidus, -a, -um
cranē, grus, gruis, c.; mostly f.
Crassus, Crassus, -i, m.
create, creō, 1
creation, ānimāl, -ālis, n.
credible, crēdībilis, -e.
credit, fīdēs, -ei, f.
Crete, Cretā, -ae, f.
crime, scēlus, -ēris, n.; monstrōs, c. flagītium, -i, n.
crocodile, crōcōdīlus, -i, m.
Croesus, Croesus, -i, m.
cross, crux, crucīcis, f.
cross, to, trājicio, -jēci, -jectum, 3; transeo, -ivi or -ii, itum, 4
crowd, turba, -ae, f.
crown, cōrōna, -ae, f.
cruel, crudēlis, -e.; saevus, -a, -um
cruelty, crudēlitās, -ātis, f. [3
crush, opprimo, -pressi, -pressum,
cry, (shout) clāmo, 1
cry, a, clāmor, -ōris, m.
cultivate, cōlo, cōlui, cultum, 3

cunning, callidus, -a, -um
cup, cālix, -īcis, m.
cure, rēmēdiō, -i, n.
cure, to, sāno, 1 (acc.); mēdeor, 2 v. dep. (dat.)
custom, mōs, mōris, m.
cut, caedo, cēcīdi, caesium, 3; cut off, to, the enemy from supplies, interclādēre, (-clāsi, -clāsum, 3) hostes cameātū (or -ibus)
cut to pieces, concīdo, -di, -sum, 3
Cyclops, the, Cyclopēs, -um, m. pl.
Cyprus, Cyprus, -i, f.
Cyprus, Cērus, -i, m.
Dagger, pūgio, -ōnis, m.
daily, adv. quotidīē (better spelt cotūdiē)
dance, salto, 1
danger, pēricūlum, -i, n.
dangerous, pērīcūlōsus, -a, -um
Danube, Ister, -tri, m.
Daphne, Daphnē, -ēs, f.
darē, audeo, ausus sum, 2, dep.
Darius, Dārius, -i, m.
dark, obscurus, -a, -um; pullius, -a, -um
darken, obscūro, 1
darkness, cāligo, -inis, f.; tēnebrae, -ārum, f.
dart, tēlum, -i, n.; jācūlum, -i, n.
dau̱ther, filia, -ae, f.
dawn, prīma lux; māne, indecl.; before dawn, antē lūcem
dawning, to, illūcesco, illuxi, 3
day, dies, -iē m.; by day, -dīē; daybreak, prīma lux; the-day-before (adv. used as a prep.) prīdiē Kālendas; (used as a conj. with quam) the day before I came, prīdiē quam vēni; two days, bīduum, -i, n.; three days, trīduum, -i, n.
dead, mortuus, -a, -um
dead body, cādāver, -ēris, n.
defaet, surdus, -a, -um
defare, cărūs, -a, -um
dearth, mors, mortis, f.; he was put to death, morte affectus est; he was condemned to death, cāptūs damnātus est
death, aes alicium
defeat, dūlus, -i, m.; fallācia, -ae, f.
defeat, décipio, -ēpi, -ceptum, 3; fallo, fēselli, falsum, 3
defend, to; (judge) jūdico, 1; they decided to return, constituērunt rédire
defend, dico, dixi, dictum, 3; to defend war against, bellum indicēre, g. dat.
decree, to, dēcerno, -crēvi, -crētum, 3
decree, a, dēcrētum, -i, n.; ēdictum, -i, n.
deed, factum, -i, n.; fācinūs, ōris, n.
deem worthy, dignor, 1, dep.
deep, altus, -a, -um
deer, dāma, -ae, f.
defeat, a, clādēs, -is, f.
defeat, to, vinco, vici, victum, 3
defence, praesidium, -i, n.
defend, défendo, -di, -sum, 3
defendant, reus, -i, m.
defile, polluo, -ui, ītum, 3
devity, nūmen, -inis, n.
delay, mōra, -ae, f.
delay, to, mūror, 1, dep.; cunctor, 1, dep.
deliberate, dēlibēro, 1
delight, gaudium, -i, n.; to delight, délecto, 1, v. tr. (g. acc.)
deliver (hand over), trādo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3; (free) libēro, 1 (g. acc. of pers. and abl. of thing)
Delos, Dēlos, -i, f.
demand, posco, pōposci, 3
Demosthenes, Dēmosthēnēs, -is, m.
denarius, dēnārius, -ii, m.
deny, nēgo, 1
depart, discedo, -cessi, -cessum, 3
departure, discussus, -us, m.
deplore, plūro, 1
depreced, prāvus, -a, um
depri̱e, spōlio, 1; prīvo, 1 (279)
descent, descendo, -di, -sum, 3; he was descended from kings, a rēgibus ortus ērat
desert, désēro, -rui, -rtum, 3; rēlinquo, -iqui, -lictum, 3
deserter, transfūga, -ae, m.
deserve, méreor, mēritus, 2, dep.
design, consilium, -i, n.
desire, cūpido, -inis, f.; to desire, cūpio, -ivi, -ītum, 3; opto, 1; vōlo (all generally foll. by Infinitive)
desirous, cūpidus, -a, -um; stūdiōsus, -a, -um (both g. gen.) sometimes with gerundive
desist from, désisto, -stīti, -stītum, 3
despair, to, despēro, 1; despair, despērātio, -onis, f. [tum, 3
despise, contemno, -tempsī, temp-
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Greek</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>despoil</td>
<td>spolio, 1; I despoil you of</td>
<td>δισπολεῖν, ὑμῖν αἱρεῖν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liberty</td>
<td>s. tē libertāte</td>
<td>(abl.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>destroy</td>
<td>dīleo, -ēvi, -ētum; perdo,</td>
<td>spolio, perdo, fores, out-onis, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desirous</td>
<td>pernicīosus, -a, -um</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>determine</td>
<td>stātuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3</td>
<td>Determine, stātuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devastate</td>
<td>vasto, 1</td>
<td>Devastate, vasto, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devoid of</td>
<td>of, expers, -rtis, adj. (g.</td>
<td>Devote, dēvōeo, -vōvi, -vōtum, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devour</td>
<td>dēvōro, 1</td>
<td>Devour, dēvōrō, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diana</td>
<td>Diana, -ae, f.</td>
<td>Diana, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dictator</td>
<td>dictātor, -āris, m.</td>
<td>Dictator, dictātor, -āris, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dictatorship</td>
<td>dictātūra, -ae, f.</td>
<td>Dictatorship, dictātūra, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>die</td>
<td>mōrior, mortuus, 3, dep.; he</td>
<td>Mōrior, mortuus, 3; mortuo, 3; he</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difference</td>
<td>discernim, -inis, n.; it</td>
<td>Dīscernim, -inis, n.; Dīscernim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difference</td>
<td>makes a great difference, mul-</td>
<td>Makes a great difference, mul-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficult</td>
<td>tām interēst; how great a di-</td>
<td>tām interēst; how great a differ-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficulty</td>
<td>ence there is! quantum interēst!</td>
<td>ence there is! quantum interēst!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dig</td>
<td>fōdio, fōdi, fossum, 3; dig</td>
<td>Fōdio, fossum, 3; Fōdō, fossom, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diligent</td>
<td>strēnuus, -a, -um; dīli-</td>
<td>Dūlius, -a, -um; Dūlius, -a, -um;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diminish</td>
<td>mīnuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3</td>
<td>Diminuere, mīnuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dine</td>
<td>cēno, 1, dep. particip.</td>
<td>Cēno, 1, dep. particip.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>direction</td>
<td>in-the-direction-of-the-</td>
<td>Direction; in-the-direction-of-the-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhine</td>
<td>Rhēnum versus</td>
<td>Rhēnum versus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disagreeable</td>
<td>injucundus, -a, -um</td>
<td>Injucundus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disappear</td>
<td>evānesco, -ui, 3 [-is, f.</td>
<td>Evānesco, -ui, 3 [-is, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disaster</td>
<td>damnūm, -i, n.; clādes,</td>
<td>Damnūm, -i, n.; Clādes,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discern</td>
<td>cerno, 3</td>
<td>Discern, cerno, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discharge</td>
<td>(duty), fungor, functus,</td>
<td>Discharge (duty), fungor, functus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3 dep. (abl.); (darts), conjicio,</td>
<td>3 dep. (abl.); (darts), conjicio,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disciple</td>
<td>discipulus, -i, m.</td>
<td>Discipulus, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discipline</td>
<td>disciplina, -ae, f.</td>
<td>Disciplina, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disclose</td>
<td>dētēgo, -texti, -tectum, 3</td>
<td>Dētēgo, -texti, -tectum, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discord</td>
<td>discordia, -ae, f.</td>
<td>Discordia, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discourse</td>
<td>sermo, -onis, m.</td>
<td>Discourse, sermo, -onis, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discover</td>
<td>invēnio, -vēni, -ventum,</td>
<td>Invēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disease</td>
<td>morbus, -i, m.</td>
<td>Morbus, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disembark</td>
<td>(trans. v.) expōno,</td>
<td>Disembarke, (trans. v.) expōno,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disgrace</td>
<td>dēdēcus, -ōris, n.; to dis-</td>
<td>Dēdēcus, -ōris, n.; to dis-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disgraceful</td>
<td>turpis, -e</td>
<td>Turpis, -e; Turpis, -e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dishaveled</td>
<td>passus, -a, -um</td>
<td>Dishaveled, passus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dismiss</td>
<td>dīmitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3</td>
<td>Dīmitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>displease</td>
<td>displicē, -ui, -ūtum, 2 (q.</td>
<td>Displicē, -ui, -ūtum, 2 (q.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dat.)</td>
<td>dat.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>displeasing</td>
<td>ingrātus, -a, -um</td>
<td>Ingrātus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disposition</td>
<td>indōlēs, -is, f.; ingēn-</td>
<td>Indōlēs, -is, f.; Ingēnium, -i, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distribute</td>
<td>distribuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3</td>
<td>Distribuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>district</td>
<td>rēgio, -ōnis, f.</td>
<td>Rēgio, -ōnis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distrust</td>
<td>diffido, -fīsus, 3, or parum</td>
<td>Dīffido, -fīsus, 3, or parum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disturb</td>
<td>turbō, 1</td>
<td>Turbō, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disturbance</td>
<td>motūs, -ūs, m.</td>
<td>Motūs, -ūs, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ditch</td>
<td>fossa, -ae, f.</td>
<td>Fossa, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>divide</td>
<td>dividō, -visi, -visum, 3</td>
<td>Divido, -visi, -visum, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>divine</td>
<td>divīnus, -a, -um</td>
<td>Divinus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>fācio, fēci, factum, 3: I (can)</td>
<td>Do, fācio, fēci, factum, 3: I (can)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disturbab</td>
<td>ance, motūs, -ūs, m.</td>
<td>Disturbance, motūs, -ūs, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dog</td>
<td>canis, -is, c.</td>
<td>Canis, -is, c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dolphin</td>
<td>delphīn, -inis, m.</td>
<td>Delphīn, -inis, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domestic</td>
<td>domesticus, -a, -um</td>
<td>Domesticus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>door</td>
<td>jānuæ, ae, f.; fōres, -um,</td>
<td>Jānuæ, ae, f.; Fōres, -um, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pl.; out of doors (i) (rest)</td>
<td>Out of doors (i) (rest)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doubt</td>
<td>to, dūbito, 1; there is no</td>
<td>Doubt, to, dūbito, 1; there is no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>doubt that, non dūbitum est quīn,</td>
<td>doubt that, non dūbitum est quīn,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Par. 145; I have no doubt that,</td>
<td>Par. 145; I have no doubt that,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>non dūbito quīn; without doubt,</td>
<td>non dūbito quīn; without doubt,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sine dūbio</td>
<td>sine dūbio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Latin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doubtful, incertus, -a, -um; dubiouis, -a, -um.</td>
<td>doubt, to, formido, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dove, columba, -ae, f.</td>
<td>dream, a, somnium, -i, n.; dream, to, somnio, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>downcast, demissus, -a, -um</td>
<td>dress, vestitus, -us, m.; vestis, -is, f.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>down from, de (g. abl.)</td>
<td>drink, bibo, bibi, bibitum, 3; poto, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drachma, drachma, -ae, f.</td>
<td>drive, ago, égi, actum, 3; pello, pēpuli, pulsum, 3; to drive into exile, pellēre in exilium; drive back, répello, reppuli, repulsum, 3; drive out, expello, expuli, expulsum, 3; drive down, dépello, dépuli, dépulsum, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drag, tráho, traxi, tractum, 3</td>
<td>drop, a, gutta, -ae, f.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw (a sword), stringo, -nxi, ictum, 3; draw along, duco, -xi, -ctum, 3; draw back, reduco, -xi, -ctum, 3; draw up (an army), instruo, -struxi, -structum, 3; draw lots, sortior, -tius, 4, dep.; draw water, I, aquam haurio, hausi, haustum, 4; draw together, contráho, -traxi, -tractum, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dread, to, formido, 1</td>
<td>dress, vestitus, -us, m.; vestis, -is, f.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dreadful, dirus, -a, -um</td>
<td>drink, bibo, bibi, bibitum, 3; poto, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream, a, somnium, -i, n.; dream, to, somnio, 1</td>
<td>drive, ago, égi, actum, 3; pello, pēpuli, pulsum, 3; to drive into exile, pellēre in exilium; drive back, répello, reppuli, repulsum, 3; drive out, expello, expuli, expulsum, 3; drive down, dépello, dépuli, dépulsum, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drop, a, gutta, -ae, f.</td>
<td>draw (a sword), stringo, -nxi, ictum, 3; draw along, duco, -xi, -ctum, 3; draw back, reduco, -xi, -ctum, 3; draw up (an army), instruo, -struxi, -structum, 3; draw lots, sortior, -tius, 4, dep.; draw water, I, aquam haurio, hausi, haustum, 4; draw together, contráho, -traxi, -tractum, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw, to, formido, 1</td>
<td>dress, vestitus, -us, m.; vestis, -is, f.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream, a, somnium, -i, n.; dream, to, somnio, 1</td>
<td>drink, bibo, bibi, bibitum, 3; poto, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive, ago, égi, actum, 3; pello, pēpuli, pulsum, 3; to drive into exile, pellēre in exilium; drive back, répello, reppuli, repulsum, 3; drive out, expello, expuli, expulsum, 3; drive down, dépello, dépuli, dépulsum, 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drop, a, gutta, -ae, f.</td>
<td>draw (a sword), stringo, -nxi, ictum, 3; draw along, duco, -xi, -ctum, 3; draw back, reduco, -xi, -ctum, 3; draw up (an army), instruo, -struxi, -structum, 3; draw lots, sortior, -tius, 4, dep.; draw water, I, aquam haurio, hausi, haustum, 4; draw together, contráho, -traxi, -tractum, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dry, succus, -a, -um; aridus, -a, -um</td>
<td>duck, ánas, -átis, c.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duty, rité</td>
<td>duty, officium, -ii, n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dutiful conduct, piétas, -átis, f.</td>
<td>duty, officium, -ii, n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dwell, to, hábito, 1</td>
<td>dwelling, domus, -ús, f.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dye, to, tingo, tintxi, tinctum, 3</td>
<td>dye, to, tingo, tintxi, tinctum, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Each**, quisqué, quaæqué, quodquæ, or, when used as n., quicquæ; *foll. superl., suus, &c.* (140, 165); *(of two)* üterqüe (both are used in sing.)

eager, cupidus, -a, -um
eagle, áquila, -ae, f.
ear, auris, -is, f.
early, matürē
earth, terra, -ae, f.; tellūs, -āris, f.

ease, ótium, -i, n.
esasily, faciélē; more e., faciiliōs
east, the, öriens, -entis, m.
esay, fācilis, -e (60)
eat, vescor, 3, dep. (g. abl.); ēdi, ēdi, ēsum, 3
educate, ēduco, 1
effect, mōdus, -i, m.; he spoke to this effect, in hunc mōdum óri-tionem hàbuit; effect, to, efficio -feci, -fectum, 3
egg, ovum, -i, n.
Egypt, Aegyptus, -i, f.
Egyptian, Aegyptius, -a, -um
eight, octo, indcl.
eighth, octávus, -a, -um
eighty, octoginta, indcl.
either, (conj.) aut, vēl (157a)
elater, sēnior, -āris, adj. used as n.; also major nātā (71)
elect, ēligō, -lēgi, -lectum, 3
elephant, ēlephantus, -i, m; ēlephās, -antis, m.
eoque, facundus, -a, f.
eloquent, facundus, -a, um
eelse, (when adj.) ālius, -a, ād; or else aut; elsewhere, ālibī
embrace, to, amplector, -plexus, 3, dep.; embrace, amplexus, -ús, m.
emperor, princeps, -ipis, m.
empire, imperiōrum, -i, n.
empty, vacuus, -a, -um
enact, sancio, -xi, -ctum, 4; *("shall and " should," after this v., must be rend. by pres. and imperf. subj.) it has been enacted that no one shall ride in a carriage, sanctum est ne quis currū vēbātur
encourage, hortor, 1, dep.; stímulo, 1
end, to, finio, 4
end, finis, -is, m.
endeavour, cónor, 1, dep. (foll. by inf.)
dowed with, praeditus, -a, -um (g. abl.)
endurance, pátientia, -ae, f.
endure, perféro, -tuli, -látum, -ferre
enemy, hostis, -is, m.; (in war, mostly pl.) the enemy's camp, hostium (not hostis) castra; a private enemy, inimicus, -a, -um
energetic, strénus, -a, -um
engagement, certámen, -inis, n.; pulga, -ae, f.
England, Anglia, -ae, f.
enjoy, fruor, fructus, 3, dep. (g. abl.)
enormous, ingens, -ntis
enough, sáitis
enraged, iráitus, -a, -um
enter, intro, 1; ineo, -ívi or -iī, ítum, 4
enterprise, cónátus, -ús, m.
eticements, illécere, -arum, f. pl.
etirely, omnino
entrails, viscéra, -um, n.
tenet, óro, 1 (143)
tenrast, crédio, -didi, -dítum, 3
tentious, invídis, -a, -um
envy, invidia, -ae, f.; envy, to, in-video, -vidi, visum, 3 (g. dat.)
Epaminondas, Epáminondas, -ae, m.
Ephesus, Ephésus, -i, f.
Epicurus, Epicúrus, -i, m.
equal, pár, páris
equally, páríter
equipped, institus, -a, -um, part.
of instruo
erect (build), exstruo, -struxi, -structum, 3; erigo, -rexi, -rectum, 3
err, erro, 1
error, error, -óris, m.
e scape, fúga, -ae, f.; escape, to, évado, -vási, -vásum, 3; effugio, -fugi, 3; escape the notice of, fallo, féfelli, fásum, 3 (g. acc.)
escort, dédúco, -duxi, -ductum, 3
especially, maxímè; praesertim
estimate, aestimo, 1
ever, eternal, aeternus, -a, -um
Europe, Európa, -ae, f.

exen, étiam; vél (141 a); not even, né—quidem (141); even a boy, vél puer; even now, étiam nunc; even if, étiam si
evering, vesper, -óris and -öri, m.; in the evening, vespèrē, or adv. vespéri (not vespéro)
everent, éventus, -ús, m.
ever, unquam; (always) semper; if you ever come, si quando vèneris; did you e. come? num quando (or ecquando) vénisti?
every, every good man, omnes bóni, or optimus quisqué (140); every day, quótidiē (or cótidiē)
everywhere, passim [málum, -i, n.
evil, málus, -a, -um; an evil, examine, investīgo, 1
example, exemplum, -i, n.
exceedingly, valdē
excellence, virtús, -átis, f.
excellent, égrégius, -a, -um (628);
praestans, -ntis; optimus, -a, -um
except, prep. prætér (g. acc.); conj. nisi; why do you fight except to conquer? cur pugnas nisi út vincás?
excessive, nimius, -a, -um
exchange, múto, 1 [-ónis, f.
excuse, excúsō, 1; an e., excúsātio,
exercise, to, exercéo, -ui, -itum, 2
exhort, côhortor, -átus, 1, dep.
exile, exilium, -i, n.; exile, an, exsil, -úlis, m.
expectation, expectātio, -ónis, f.; spès, spei, f.
expediency, útilitas, -átis, f.
expedient, utilis, -e
expense, sumptus, -ús, m.
experience, expérientia, -ae, f.; usuus, -ús, m.; experience, to, expérior, -pertus, 4, dep.
explain, explicó, 1
explore, explóro, 1
extend, pateó, -ui, 2 (intrans.);
pando, pandi, passum, 3 (trans.)
extent, spátium, -i, n. [3
extinguish, exstinguo, -nxi, -nectum,
extraordinary, mirus, -a, -um
extreme, extrémus, -a, -um
extremely, valdē
exult, exultó, 1
eye, ōculus, -i, m.

Fabius, Fābius, -i, m.
false, fábula, -ae, f.
face, fáciaes, -ei, f.; ōs, ōris, n.; vultus, -ús, m.
factions, partes, -iūm, f.
fact, rés, rei, f.; facts must be clearly arranged, rés láculenter sunt digérendae
fail (fall short), dēsum, -fui, esse, (g. dat); (forsake), déficio, -feci, -fectum, 3; time fails me, tempus mē déficit
faith, fidēs, -ei, f. [-um
faithful, fidēlis, -e; fidus, -a, -um
fall, to, cádo, cēcidi, cāsum, 3;
in (in battle) occido, -cidi, -cāsum, 3
full asleep, to, obdormio, -ii or -iī, -itum, 4
false (things), falsus, -a, -um;
(persons), mendax, -ācis
falseshood, mendacium, -ii, n.
fame, fama, -ae, f.
family, fāmilia, -ae, f.; dōmus, -ās, f.
famine, famēs, -is, f.
far, prōcūl; longē; as far as, tēnūs (g. abl. or gen., 178)
farm, praedium, -i, n.
farting, as, assis, m.; I do not care a farthing for you, nōn assis tē fācio
"fasces," the, fascēs, -iūm, m. pl.
the rods which were the signs of the consul's power
fat, punguis, -e
fate, fātum, -i, n.
father, pāter, -tris, m.
fault, culpa, -ae, f.
favour, gratia, -ae, f.; favour, te, fāveo, fāvi, fāutum, 2 (g. dat.)
fear, timor, -oris, m.; mētus, -ās, m.
fearful, pāvidus, -a, -um
fear, to, timeo, -ui, 2; mētuo, -ui, 3; vēreor, vérītus, dep. 2
fearless, impāvidus, -a, -um
feast, ēpulae, -arum, f. [f.
feather, penna, -ae, f.; plāma, -ae, features, vultus, -ūs, m.
feeble, infirmus, -a, -um
feed, (trans.) pasco, pāvi, pastum, 3; (intrans.) pascor, pass.
feed on, vescor, 3 dep. (g. abl.)
feel, sentio, sensi, sensum, 4
fēign, fingo, finxi, factum, 3
fellow, hōmo, -inis, m.: that fellow, istē
fertile, fertilis, -e
fetch, see bring
fetter, compēs, -ōdis, f. [-ō
fever, febris, -is f. (inf. or -em, -i or -e), paucus, -a, -um, (mostly pl.);
very few, perpauci
field, āger, -grī, m.
fiere, fērox, -ōcis
fifth, fifty, see Par. 81
fig, fig-tree, ficus, -i, and -ūs, f.
fight, pugna, -ae, f.
fight, to, pugno, 1
fill, complō, -plēvi, -pletum, 2
finally, dēnique (not to stand first in a clause)
find, invēnio, -vēnī, -ventum, 4; he was found guilty of, damnātus est (g. gen.)
fin, multa, -ae, f.
VOCABULARY.

fine, to, multo, 1
finger, digitus, -i, m.
fish, piscis, -is, m.
fisherman, piscator, -oris, m.
fit, aptus, -a, -um; for running, aptus ad currendum (186)
flame, flamma, -ae, f.
flight, fugatio, -i, dep.
flight, put to, fugio, 1
flower, flore, -re, -i, 2
flow, fluo, -xi, 3, fut. part. fluxurus
fog, nube, -ae, f.
fly, volo, (of a bird) volo, 1
food, cibus, -i, m.
found of, studiōsus, -a, -um, (g. gen.)
fool, foolish, stultus, -a, -um
foolishly, stulte
foot, pēs, pēdis, m.
foot-soldier, pēdēs, -itis, m.
for (conj.) nam (at the beginning of a clause); ēnīm (after the first word in a clause); (prep.) pro, prae, (g. abl.); ob, (g. acc.)
Par. 178; (born, fit, useful, &c.)
for acting, ad agendum; for a few days, paucos diēs (262)
forbid, vēto, -ui, -itum, 1; prohibeo, -ui, -itum, 2
force, vis, acc. vim, abl. vi, f.
forced marches, magna itinēra
forces, cópiae, -arum, f.
forehead, frons, -antis, f.
foreign, externus, -a, -um; peregrinus, -a, -um
foresee, prōvideo, -vidi, -visum, 2
forest, Silva, -ae, f.
forget, obliviscor, oblivitus, 3, dep. (g. gen.)
forgetful, immēmor, -oris (g. gen.)
form, forma, -ae, f.
former, prior, prīus; the former... the latter, ille... hic
formerly, quondam, ōlim
fort, castrum, -i, -n.; castellum, -i, n.
fortify, munio, -ivi or -iī, -itum 4,
fortitude, fortitūdo, -inis, f.; with fortitude, fortiter
fortunate, felix, -icis
fortune, fortuna, -ae, f.
fortunes, they distrusted their f., rebus suis diffisi sunt
forty, quadrāgintā, indcl.
forum, fürum, -i, n.
found, condo, -idi, -ditum, 3
founder, conditor, -oris, m.
fountain, fons, fontis, m.
four, fourteen, &c. see Par. 81
time, times, quáter
fourth, quartus, -a, -um
free, liber, -ēra, -trum: f. from fault, culpā vácunas (279)
free, to, liběro, 1, (acc. & abl.)
freed from debt, aere aliēno libĕratu
freedom, liberās, -ātis, f.
frequent, crēber, -bra, -brum
frequently, saepē
fresh, rēcents, -ntās; nōvus, -a, -um
friend, āmīcus, -i, m.
friendly, āmīcus, -a, -um
friendship, āmīcitia, -ae, f.
frighten, terreo, -ui, 2
frog, rāna, -ae, f.
from, ā, ē, or ex, dé (g. abl.); from
front, in, adversus, -a, -um
frost, glēă, indicl. n.
frugality, parsimōnia, -ae, f.
fruit, fructus, -ās, m.; the fruits
(of the earth), frūges, -um, f. pl.
fruitful, fertilis, -e; fēraxes, -ācis
fulfil, perficio, -feci, -fectum, 3;
expleo, -plēvi, -plētum, 2
full, plēnus, -a, -um (g. gen. or abl.)
funeral, fūnus, -ēris, n.; funeral
rites, infēriae, -arum, f.
furrow, sulcus, -ī, m.
fury, fūror, -ōris, m.
future, fūtūrus, -a, -um

Gābii, Gābii, -ōrum, m. pl.
gain, quaestus, -ās, m.; lucrum,
-i, n.
gain, to, (a victory) rēportāre, 1;
acquiro, quisivi, quisītum, 3;
pāro, 1
gain possession of, pōtior, -itus, 4,
dep. (g. abl.) See Par. 207.
Gallic, Gallicus, -a, -um
gallows, crux, crūcis, f.
game, lūdus, -i, m.
garden, hortus, -i, m.
garland, sertum, -i, n.
garment, vestis, -is, f.
garrison, praesēdiām, -i, n.
gate, porta, -ae, f.
gather, lĕgo, lēgi, lectum, 3; col-
līgo, lēgi, lectum, 3
Gaul, Gallia, -ae, f.
Gaul, a, Gallus, -i, m.
gem, gemma, -ae, f.
general, dux, dūcis, m.; imperātor,
-ōris, m.
generally, plērumque
gentleness, cōmitas, -ātis, f.
gently, lenīter
German, Germanus, -a, -um
Germany, Germania, -ae, f.
get, pāro, 1; ādīpscor, ādēptus, 3
giant, gigās, -antis, m.
gift, dōnum, -i, n.
gird, cingo, -nxi, -nectum, 3
girl, puella, -ae, f.
give, do, dēdī, datum, 1
give back, reddo, -didi, -dītum, 3
give birth to, pārio, pepēri, partum,
3 (g. acc.)
give orders to, impēro, 1 (g. dat.)
give up, trādo, -didi, -dītum, 3
glad, laetus, -a, -um
Glaucus, Glauclus, -i, m.
glitter, nīco, -ulī, 1
gloomy, tristis, e
glorious, praeclārus, -a, -um
glory, gloria, -ae, f.
go, eo, -ivi or -ii, -itum, 4; I am
going-to-die, mōritārūs sum
go away, abeo, -ii, -itum, 4
go by, praeterea, īvi or -ii, -itum, 4
go forth, or out, exeo, -ii, -itum, 4
go on, prōcédo, -cessi, -cessum, 3
go under, sūbeo, -ii, -itum, 4
goat, cāper, -prī, m.
god, deus, dei, m.; nom. pl. often
dii, or di
goddess, dea, -ae, f. Par. 311
gold, aurum, -i, n.
golden, aureus, -a, -um
good, bōnus, -a, -um
goodwill, bēnēvolentia, -ae, f.
goose, anser, -ēris, m.
govern, régō, rexi, rectum, 3
government, imperium, -i, n.
grace, grātia, -ae, f.
grandfather, āvus, -i, m.
grandson, nēpos, -ōtis, m.
grant (see give); I grant him
pardon, do ei vēniam
grape, ūva, -ae, f.
grass, herba, -ae, f.
grateful, grātus, -a, -um
gray, cānus, -a, -um
great, magnus, -a, -um; very great, permagnus; with "this," tautus; this great slaughter, haec tanta caedēs
greatly, magnōpōre, valde
greatness, magnitūdō, -inis, f.
Grecian, Greek, Graecus, -a, -um
Greece, Graecia, -ae, f.
greedy, āvidus, -a, -um, āvārus, -a, -um (both g. gen.)
green, vīrīdis, -e
green, to grow, viresco, 3 [m.
grief, dōlor, -ōris, m.; luctus, -ōs, grieve, dōleo, -ui, 2 (intrans.): ango, 3 (trans.)
groan, gēmītus, -ōs, m.
groan, to, gēno, -ui, 3
ground, hūmus, -i, f.; on the ground, hūmi
grove, lūcus, -i, m.
grov, cresco, crevi, cretem, 3
guard, (a single person) custōs, -ōdis, m.; (a garrison) præsidium, -i, n.
guard, to, custōdīo, -īvi or -ii.
-ītum, 4; guard strongly, firmāre præsidium
guest, hospēs, -ītis, m.
guide, dux, dūcis, m.
guide, to, dūco, duxi, ductum, 3
guīle, dōlūs, -i, m.
guilt, culpa, -ae, f.; scelus, -ēris, n.
guilty, sons, sōnts; to be found guilty of; damnāri (g. gen.)

Habit, mōs, mōris, m.
hail, grando, -inis, f.
hair; crīnis, -is, m.; not even a hair's breath; ne transversum quidem unguem, lit. a nail's breath
half, dimidium, -i, n.
halt, consisto, -stītī, -stītum, 3
hand, mānus, -ūs, f.; right hand, dextra; left hand, sinistra; I
hearth, fōcus, -i, m.
heat, cálor, -ōris, m.
heaven, caelum, -i, m.
heavy, grāvis, -e
Hector, Hēctōr, Hectōris, m.
hedge round, to, saepio, saepsi, saeptum, 4
heir, hérōs, -ēdis, m.
Helena, Hēlēna, -ae, f.
helmet, gālea, -ae, f.
help, auxilium, -i, n.
help, to, subvbēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4 (g. dat.)
Helvetii, the, Helvētii,-ōrum, -i, m.
hemlock, cicūtā, -ae, f.
hence, hinc
herb, herba, -ae, f.
Hercules, Hērcūlēs, -is, m.
herd, pecūs, -ōris, n.
here, hic: often used for "hither" and then to be trans. by huc
hero, hērōs, -ōris, m. (acc. pl. -ōnēs)
hesitate, dūbito, 1
hide, to, condoo, -dīdi, -ditum, 3; abdo, -dīdi, -ditum, 3
hiding place, lātebra, -ae, f.
high, altus, -a, -um; to buy at a very high price, permagnō ēmōre
highest, summus, -a, -um
hill, collis, -is, m.
himself, sē, suī, &c. See Par. 94
hinder, prōhibeo, 2, I hindered you from coming, prōhibui quomīnūs vēnīrēs
hinge, cardo, -dīnis, m.
hire, condūco, -dūxi, -ductum, 3
his, Par. 98, 218, 306, and p. 328
historian, auctor, -ōris, m.
hither, hūc; hitherto, ādūc
hold, tēneo, -ui, 2; hābeo, -ui, -itum, 2
holiday, feriae, -ārum, f.
hollow, cāvus, -a, -um; to hollow, cāvāre
holy, sācer, -era, -crum
home, dōmus, -ūs, f. (Ex. LXXXIV.); at home, dōmi (265)

Homer, Hōmērus, -i, m.
honest, prōbus, -a, -um
honesty, prōbitas, -ātis, f.
honey, mēl, mellis, n.
honour, hōnōr, -ōris, m.; to be in great honour with the Romans, in magno hōnōre esse ēpūd Rōmānos
honourable, hōnestus, -a, -um
hooft, ungūla, -ae, f.
hook, hāmus, -i, m.
hope, spēs, spei, f.
hope, to, spēro, 1; do you hope to take the city? spērasne tē urbem captārum esse?
Horace, Hōrātius, -ii, m.
Horatii, the, Hōrātiī, -ōrum, m.
horn, cornū, -ās, n.
horrible, dirus, -a, -um; nēfandus, -a, -um; h. to relate! nēfas dictā! (246)
horse, ēquus, -i, m.
horseman, ēquēs, -ītis, m.
hospitality, hospitium, -i, n.
host, hospēs, -ītis, m.
hostage, obses, -īdis, m.
hostile, infestus, -a, -um
Hostilius, Hostilius, -i, m.
hound, canis, -is, c.
hour, hōra, -ae, f.
house, dōmus, -ūs, f. (311); aedes, -iūm, f. pl.; household, fāmilīa, -ae, f.
how? in what way? quōmōdo? to how great an extent, quam, quantum; how great or much, quantus, -a, -um; how many? quot? how often? quotiens? how long? quandiu? how good, bad, &c., quam bonus, mālus, &c.; how few there are who use riches well! quōtus quisque est qui divītīs bēnē utātur! for how much did you buy it? quanti ēmēsti? how important it is! quantum interēst or rēfert (329) however, tāmen
VOCABULARY.

hugue, ingens, -tis
human, hûmânus, -a, -um
hundred, centum, indecl. (81)
hunger, fâmes, -is, f.
hungry, to be, éstürio, 4
hunt, vêner, -atus, 1, dep.
hunter, huntsman, vênâtor, -ôris, m.
hunting, vênâtio, -ônis, f.
hurl, conjicio, -jêci, -jectum, 3
hurt, to, nóceo, 2 (g. dat.); laedo, -si, -sum, (g. acc.)
hurtful, noxius, -a, um
husband, mâritus, -i, m.
husbandman, agricôla, -ae, m.
I, égo; see page 45
Ida, Ida, -ae, f.
idle, ignavus, -a, -um
idleness, ignávia, -ae, f.
if; si; if...not, nisi (125, 295)
ignorant, ignarus, -a, -um (g. gen.);
ignorant of, to be, ignôro, 1;
nescio, -ii, 4 (both g. acc.); are
you ignorant that the man is
here? nescisnê hûmînem âdesse?
are you ignorant how, &c., nescis-
nê quômôdo, foll. by subjunct.
ill (sick), aeger, -gra, -grum;
(subst.) málûm, -î, n.; ill (adv.),
i.e. badly, mâlé
illness, morbus, -i, m. [nis, -e
illustrious, clârus, -a, -um; insig-
image, imago, -inis, f.
imagine, pûto, 1
imitate, ìmitor, 1, dep.
immediately, stâtim
immense, ingens, -ntis
immortal, -immortalis, e
immortality, immortálitas, -âtis, f.
impatient, impátiens, -tis
impede, impêdio, -ivi or ii, -itum, 4
impel, impello, -pûli, -pulsus, 3
impious, impius, -a, -um
implore, õro, 1
important. It is important for
Balbus, Balbiîntârest; ("should.
after this v., is often rendered by

pres. inf.) it is imp. that Catiline
should perish, intérest Catílinam
périre; it is i. for me, mèâ inté-
est; see Par. 329
importune, fatígeo, 1
impose, impono, -pôsi, -pòsitum, 3;
I impose tribute on a nation,
tribútum genti imponô
improve, to, émendo, 1 [er
impudent, impûdens, -tis; -ly, -ent-
impunity, with, impûné
impute, he i. this to me as a fault,
hôc mihi vîtio dat, or vertit
in, in (g. abl.); in the direction of,
versûs (foll. acc.); in the pages
of, âpud (g. acc.); in the power
of, pènes (g. acc.); in the
presence of, córum (g. abl.), see
Par. 178-180; in order to, ût;
in three days, Par. 263; in Gabii,
Par. 265; in haste, Par. 181.
increase, augeo, auxi, auctum, 2
(trans.); cresco, crévi, crêtum, 3
(intrans.)
incredible, incrèdibilis, -e
incursion, incurrâis, -onis, f.
indeed, quidem; you i....but I, tu
quidem...égo autem, (or vérô)
India, India, -ae, f.
indignation, see anger
indolence, ignávia, -ae, f. [(dat.)
d indulge, indulgeo, -Ìsi, -Ìtum, 2
industrious, diligens, -ntis
infantry, pêdites, m. pl.; pêditâsus,
-ûs, m.
infirm, infirmus, -a, -um, -um
influence, mûveo, mûvi, mûtum, 2
inform, I informed him, certiorem
eum feci (gen. or dé.)
in front, adversus, -a, -um, adj.
inglorious, înhônestus, -a, -um
inhabit, incôlo, -colui, -cultum, 3;
âbito, 1
inhabitant, incôla, -ae, m.
injure, nóceo, -ui, 2 (g. dat.)
injury, injûria, -ae, f.
injustice, see (54) unjust (things.)
innocence, innōcentia, -ae, f.
innocent, innōcens, -tis; insons, -ntis; innocent of all fault, omni culpā vācuus (279)

innumerable, innumērābilis, -e
inquire, quaero, quaesīvi, quae-
situm, 3; rōgo, 1

inquiry, quaestio, ōnis, f.
insolence, insōlentia, -ae, f. [3
inspect, inspīcio, -spēxi, -spectum;
insolent, insōlens, -tis
instance, exemplum, -i, n.
instead of, prō (g. abl.)
instruct, erūdio, 4
instrument, instrumentum, -i, n.
insufficient, impar, gen. impāris
insult, contūmēlia, -ae, f.
inurrection, sédītio, -ōnis, f.
integrity, prōbitas, ātis, f.
intellect, ingēniūn, -i, n.
intention, consilium, -i, n.
inter, sēpēlio, -īvi or -īi, -pultum, 4
intercept, interclōdo, -si, -sum, 3
intercourse, consēctūdo, -inis, f.

interest, it is my i., mea interesse; it is the i. of Tullius, Tullii interesse
(see Ex. XCII.); (interests) to consult my, Tullius's, i., mihi, Tullio, consilere

into, in (g. acc.) Par. 55. [3
introduce, introduco, -duxī, -ductum,
invade, invādo, -si, -sum, 3
in turn, invīcem
in vain, frustrā
inventor, inventus, -ōris, m.
investigate, explōro, 1
invite, invīto, 1
invoke, invōco, 1

Ireland, Hibernia, -ae, f.
iron, (subst.) ferrum, -i, n.; (adj.)
ferreus, -a, -um
island, insula, -ae, f.
it, see page 46, Par. 219–226
Italy, Italia, -ae, f.
ivy (subst.), ēburnus, -a, -um
ivory, ēburnus, -a, -um
ivy, hēdēra, -ae, f.
LET

VOCABULARY.

305

knighth, équês, -itis, m.

know, scio, -ivi or -i, -itum, 4;
novi, see nosco; I do-not-know, nescio, sciv-i -scitum, 4

knowledge, scientia, -ae, f.; without his knowledge, clam eo

known, nótus, -a, -um; it is well known, constat

Labienus, Lábiénus, -i, m.

labour, lábor, -óris, m.
lady, múlier, -érís, f.
lake, lácus, Ús, m.
lamb, agnus, -i, m.
lame, claudus, -a, -um

lament, lúgeo, -xi, -ctum, 2 (trans.):

dóleo, -ui, 2 (intrans.) [grief

lamentation, maeror, -érís, m., see

lance, hasta, ae, f.

land, terra, -ae, f.; lands (as possessions), áger, -gri, m.;
fines, -ium, m. pl.; land (adj.)

terrestrial, -e

large, magnus, -a, -um (for comp. and superl. see Par. 68); a l.

sum of money, grandis pecúnia

lashes, verbēra, -um, n. pl.

last (as opp. to first in a race), extremus, see Par. 69; at last, tandem

lasting, pérennis, -e

late, sérus, -a, -um; late, adv.

sérus; rather late, too late, sérius

lately, núper

Latin, Latinus, -a, -um

latter, hic; the former...the latter, ille...hic

Latóna, Látóna, -ae, f.

laugh, riser, risi, risum, 2; laugh at, mock (a person), irrídeo, -i, -sum, 2 (g. dat.); (a thing)

rídeo (g. acc.), gentle than irrídeo

laughing-stock, ludibrium, -i, n.

laurel, laurus, -i, f.

law, (a statute), lex, légis, f.; (the laws) jús, júris, n.; the laws of

men and God, jús et fás; against

the laws, contra jús [pers.

lawful, it is, licet, -uit, 2, im-

lay aside, póno, pósui, pósíturn, 3; lay down, dépóno, -pósui, -pósíturn, 3; lay waste, vasto, 1

laziness, inertia, -ae, f.
lazy, segnis, -e; ñners, -itis

lead, dúco, -xi, -ctum, 3; lead out, edúco, -xi, -ctum, 3

leader, dux, dúcís, m.

leaf, frons, -dis, f.

lean, adj., mácēr, -éra, crum

leap, to, sálio, -ii or -uí, -salturn, 4; leap across, transílio, -ui, -sálturn, 4; leap down, déšlio,

-silui, -sátum, 4; leap out, éxilio, -silui, -sátum, 4, foll.

by dé or ë

learn, disco, didíci, 3

learned, doctus, -a, -um; learned in the law, júris peritus (287)

learning, doctrina, -ae, f. [*at”

least, mínimus, -a, -um; at l., see

leave, to, linquuo, -líqui, -líctum, 3;

rálinquuo, -líqui, -líctum, 3; I

leave (by will), légo, 1; leave, pótestás, -átis, f.

left, ráliquus, -a, -um; left (hand),

sinister, -tra, -trum

leg, crús, crúris, n.

legion, légio, -onis, f.

leisure, ótium, -i, n.; leisure, to,

have, váco, 1

Lemnos, Lemnos, -i, f.

lend, crédo, -didi, -ditum, 3

length, longítudo, -inis, f.; at

length, tandem

Lentulus, Léntulus, -i, m.

Leonidas, Leónidas, -ae, m.

less, minor, -is; it was sold for

less (Ex. LXX.), mínóris ven-
dítum est; it is less honourable, minus hónestum est

lest, nē

let; (oft. rend. by subjunct.) let

them love, hate, &c., áment,
ödērint; let this be an example to you, sit tibi hoc exemplo; (or by fāc ut, currā ut) let your conduct be improved, fāc ut mōres tui ēnendentur; let them murmur, licet frrmans (227) letter, līttērae, -arum, f. pl.; letter of the alphabet, līttēra, -ae, f.; ēpistōla (or ēpistūla) -ae, f.
level, aequus, -a, -um; level, to, aequo, i
levy, a, dēlectus, -ūs, m.; levy, to, conscribo, -psi, -ptum, 3
liar, mendāx, -ācis liberate, lībēro, 1 (g. abl. of thing) liberty, libertās, -ātis, f.
lector, lictor, -ōris, m.
lie (to tell lies), mentior, -itus, 4, dep.; lie down, jāceo, -ui, 2; lie hid, lāteo, -ui, 2; lie in ambush, in wait for, insīdior, 1, (g. dat.)
life, vita, -ae, f.
light, lūx, lūcis, f.; lūmen, -inis, n.; light, lēvis, -e [-inis, n.
lighting, fulgūr, -āris, n.; fulmen, like, sīmilis, -e; I like to walk, me jāvat, or mihi plācet, ambūlāre
likeness, sīmilītūdo, -inis, f.
limb, membrum, -i, n.
limit, finis, -is, m.; limēs, -ītis, m.
line (of battle), ācies, -ēi, f.
lion, leo, -onis, m.
lip, labrum, -i, n.
listen to, audio, -ivi or -ii, -ītum, 4
litle, parvus, -a, -um; I have too l. strenth, pārum virīnum ābaco; it matters l. paulum rēfert live, to, vivō, vivi, victum, 3; (dwell) habītāre or vitām āgēre; I live on bread, vescor, (3, dep.)-pāne (207)
load, ōnus, -ēris, n.
lofty, altus, -a, -um
log, lignum, -i, n.
long, longus, -a, -um; long, adv. diūtius; how long? quāndiu? I have long been desiring, jampridem (or jandādum) cūpio; no longer, non jam
look, look at, aspiciō, -spexi, -spectum, 3; look for, quaero, quae-sīvi, quaesītum, 3; look, a (of the human countenance), vultus, -ūs, m.; look round, circumspiciō, -spexi, -spectum, 3
lord, dōminus, -i, m.
lose, āmīto, -mīsī, -missum, 3; perdo, -dīdi, -ditum, 3
loss, damnārum, -i, n.
lot, sors, -tis, f.; to draw lots about, sortīrī dē
lorable, āmābilis, -e
love, āmor, -ōris, m.; love, to, āmo, 1; diligo, -lexi, -lectum, 3
loring, āmans, -tis
low, lovely, lūmilis, -e
lower, inferior, -us; the lowest of the citizens, cīvium infīmi
luck, .fortūna, -ae, f.
lucky, fēlīx, -īcis; faustus, -a, -um
luxury, luxūria, -ae, f.
Lydia, Lydīa, -ae, f.
lyng, mendāx, -ācis
lyre, lýra, -ae, f.
Macedonians, the, Mācēdōnes, -ōnum, m.
machine, māchīna, -ae, f.
mad, insānus, -a, -um; āmens, -tis; mad, to be, fūro, 3; insānīo, -ivi or -ii, 4 [-ae, f.
madness, insānia, -ae, f.; āmentia, magic, māgiōs, -a, -um
magistrate, māgistrātus, -ās, m.
maid, virgo, -īnis, f.
make, fācio, fēci, factum, 3; make peace, pācem ferīre; make haste, see hasten
man, (hero, &c.), viri, i, m.; (hu-man being) hōmo, -inis, m.; all to a man, omnes ād ūnum
manage, administrō, 1
manifest, mánifestus, -a, -um
manner, mòs, mòris, m.; mòdus, -i, m.
many, multus, -a, -um, very m.
permulti, or plurimi; so m. tot
marble, marmor, -öris, n.; (adj.)
marmoreus, -a, -um
march, to, (set out) pròfìsicor,
-fectus, 3, dep.; contendo, -di,
tum, 3; march, a, iter, ítìnérís, n.
Marcius, Marcùs, -i, m.
Marcus, Marcus, -i, m.
mark, signum, -i, n.; nóta, -ae, f.;
it is the m. of, est (foll. by gen.);
see Par. 289.
Maro, Mário, -önís, m., Publius
Vergilius Måro, commonly called Virgil
marriage, mántrimónìum, -ii, n.
marry (of men), dúcò, duxì, duc-
tum, 3; (of women), núbò, nupsì,
nuptum, 3 (g. dat.); he married
Tullia, Tullìam duxìt; she mar-
rried Tullìus, Tullìo nupsìt
Mars, Mars, Martìs, m.
mesh, pálmus, -údis, f.
master, dòminus, -i, m.; of a school,
mágìster, -tri, m.
matter, réis, reì, f.
matters, it, réfert, impers. (Ex.
XCI.); what does it matter?
quid réfert? it matters little
what you think, paulum réfert
quid (240a) sentìas
may, he may come, to be rendered
by lícet, possum, fìeri potest ut, 
dcc., according to the sense; some-
one may (be inclined to) say,
díxèrit álquís
meadow, prótum, -i, n.
means, ópes, -um, f. pl.; còpìa,
-ac, f.
meanchile, ínterá, ínterìm
measure, módus, -i, m.; beyond
measure, præter módum; to
measure, mètior, mensus, 4, dep.
meat, cárò, carnìs, f.
medicine, mèdicìna, -ae, f.
meditate, mèdòtor, -átus, v. dep.
meet, to, occurrò, -curri, -cursum,
3 (dat.); to meet death, òbìre
mortem; (adr.) obvìam (dat.);
he met me, obvìam mihi fàctus
est
memorable, insignís, -e
memory, mèmòria, -ae, f.
Menenius, Mènènius, -i, m.
mention, mentìo, -ónis, f.
merchant, mercátor, -órís, m
mercy, cìententìa, -ae, f.
merited, mèritus, -a, -um
message, nuntius, -i, m.
messenger, nuntius, -i, m.
metal, métallum, -i, n.
Metellus, Metélìus, -i, m.
middle, midst, médius, -a, -um;
the middle of the night, média
nox; he rushed into the midst
of the foe, in médios hostes ruit
might (i.e. had the right to) licìuit:
you m. have come, l. tìbi vènìre;
(had the ability to) pótuìsti
vènìre
mighty, pótens, -tis; ingens, -tis
migrate, migro, 1
mildness, lénitas, -átis, f.
mile, a, mille pàssus; three miles,
tria mìlia passìum
Miletus, Milètus, -i, f.
military, militàris, -e
milk, lác, -tis, n.
Milo, Milo, -önís, m.
mind, mens, -tis, f., ánìmus, -i, m.
mindful, mèmor, -órís (g. gen.)
mine, mens, -a, -um
mine, a, métallum, -i, n.: he was
condemned to the mines, in
mètalla damnátus est
mingle, miscéo, -ui, -xtum, 2
mirth, laetìtìa, -ae, f.
misbecome, it misbecomes, dèdècet,
-uit, 2, impers. (220)
miserable, mìser, -éra, -èrum

x 2
mourn, lúgeo, -xi, -ctum, 2
mournful, maestus, -a, -m.
mourning, luctus, -ús, m.
mouse, mus, múris, c.
mouth, ós, òris, n.
mour, mówvo, móvi, mótum, 2
much, multus, -a, -um; (adv.)
multum, sometmes used as a
noun, Par. 71; much, very much,
as (or so) much, money, multum,
plúrimum, tantum, pécüniae;
for how much did you buy it?
quanti id émisit? with comp.
e.g. (by) much better, multo
mélior (274)
Mucius, Mucius, -i, m.
multitude, multitúdo, -inis, f.
Mummius, Mummius, -i, m.
munificence, múñificentia, -ae, f.
murder, caedés, -is, f.; to murder,
interficio, -feci, -fectum, 3;
trudcúo, l
murmur, murmur, -úris, n.; to
murmur, frémo, -ui, -itum, 3;
let them murmur, licet frémant
music, múscica, -ae, f.
must (163), and see nécéssé, óportet
my, meus, -a, -um; voc. mi
myrrh, myrrha, -ae, f.
myrtle, myrtus, -i, f.
Naked, núdus, -a, -um
name, nónem, -inis, n.; to name,
nómino, 1; vóco, 1
narrate, narro, 1
narrow, angustus, -a, -um
nation, gens, -tis, f.; pòpulus, -i, m.
native, a, incólæ, -ae, m.; native-
land, patria, -ae, f.
nature, nátura, -ae, f.
naval, návális, -e
near, própinquus, -a, -um; (prep.)
própe (g. acc.); ád (g. acc.);
nearer, nearest, see Par. 69
nearly, féréo, paené
necessary, nécéssarius, -a, -um; it
is n. see nécesse and ópus
VOCABULARY.

necessity, necēssītās, -ātis, f.
nec, collum, -i, n.
need, to, ēgeo, -ui, 2 (abl.); there is no need of words, non opus est verbis
needle, ācus, -ūs, f.
neglect, neglēgo, -lexi, -lectum, 3
negligence, incūria, -ae, f.
neighbour, neighbouring, vicīnus, -a, -um; finītīmus, -a, -um
neither, (pron.) neuter, -tra, -trum,
Par. 85; (conj.) nēc, nēque
neighbour, nēpōs, -ōtis, m.
Neptune, Neptūnus, -i, m.
Nero, Nēro, -ōnis, m.
nest, nīdus, -i, m.
nest, rēte, -is, n.
never, nunquam; nevertheless, tāmen (at the beginning of a clause, or after an emphatic word).
new, nōvus, -a, -um; news, nuntius, -i, m.
next, proxīmus, -a, -um; on the next day, postēro (more rarely proximo) die; we shall know all within the next five hours, his quinque hōris omnia comperta hābēbimus
night, nox, nōctis, f.; by n. noctu
nightingale, philomēla, -ae, f.
Nile, Nīlus, -i, m.
nine, nōvem, indcl.
no (adj.), (with things) nullus, -a, -um; (with persons) nēmo; no poet, nēmo poēta; no one, nēmo (Par. 92); and no... nēque ullus; and no one, nē quīquam; there is no need of words, non opus est verbis; by no means all came, nēquāquam omnes vēnērunt
no (adv.), no longer, nōn jam; no better i.e. better by nothing, nēhilo, or nēquāquam meliō; he said no more, nēc plūra dixit
nobility, nōbilitas, -ātis, f.
noble, nōbīlis, -e
noise, sōnus, -i, m.; clāmor,-ōris, m.
nor, nēquē, nēc
nose, nāsus, -i, m.
not, nōn; not even, (141); see also 129, 143; if... not, nīsi; not yet, nōndum
nothing, nihil or nil, n. indcl.
notice, animadverto, -ti,-sum, 3
notwithstanding, tāmen
nourish, nūtrīo, -īvi and -ii, -ītum, 4
novelty, nōvitās, -ātis, f.
now, nunc; meaning already or by this time, jam.
nochere, nusquam
Numa, Nūma, -ae, m.
number, nūmerus, -i, m.
nurse, nūtrix, -īcis, f.
nut, nux, nūcis, f.
nymph, nympha, -ae, f.

O! O! (foll. by Acc., 205); O that! útinam (330)
oak, quercus, -ūs, f.
oar, reōmus, -i, m.
oath, jusjurandum, jūrisjūrandi, n.; (military) sacramentum, -i, n.
obedient, òbēdiens, -tis (g. dat.)
obey, pāreo, -ui, 2, (g. dat.)
obtain, pāro, 1; compāro, 1; ādi-pescor, ādeptus, 3, (by entreaty), impetro, 1; (by lot), sortior, -itūs, 4.
ocasion, tempus, -ōris, n.
ocean, òcēnus, -i, m.
of (282-90); the town (of) Corioli, Coriōli oppidum; both of us wept, ambī flavīmus; the top of the mountain, summus mons
offer, offēro, obtūli, oblātum, of-ferre (238); offering, dōnum, -i, n.
office, mūnus, -ēris, n.
offspring, proles, -is, f.
often, saepē; how often, quōtīēns
old, antiquus, -a, -um; vētus, -ēris; an old soldier, vētus milēs (61)
old age, sēnectus, -ātis, f.; old man, sēnecex, sēnis,m.; old woman, ānus, -ās, f.; older men, sēniōres, or majores nātū; older, oldest, major, maximus nātu
omen, ὁμη, -ίνη, n.
onit, ὁμιτό, -μη, -μησι, -μησιμ, 3
on, in (g. abl.); (upon) süper; on account of; ὥ, propter (g. acc.)
one, (meaning “once for all”) sēmēl; (formerly) οὖμ, quondam; (once upon a time) fortē; at once, stātim
one (only one), ānus, -a, -um; one by one, singūli, -ae, -a; a certain one, quidam (310a); one...another, ālius...ālius; the one...the other, alter...alter (86)
only, (adj.) sōlus, -a, -um; only Tullius dissented, ὁν Τυλιο
ālter visum est; not only...but also, non sōlum...sed ētiam, or cum...tum; he lived only ten years, sōlos décem annos vixit; if only, sī mōdo
onset, impētus, -ūs, m.
opent, to, ἀπέριο, -η, -των, 4
opinion, sententia, -ae, f.
opponent, adversārius, -i, m.
opportunity, occasiō, -onis, f.
oppose, obsisto, -stītis, -stītum, 3 (g. dat.); if oppono is used, note that it means “I place against”; he opposed the enemy, opposuit sē hosī [sum, 3
oppress, opprimō, -pressī, -pressōr, (i) in statements and commands, ġē, aut (157a); (ii) in alternative questions (171), ān, preceded by utrum or -nē; (a) (Whether) do you prefer this or that? Utrum hoc (or hoenē) ān illud māvultis? (b) I asked whether...or, interrogāvi utrum...ān; whether...or not...anōn, or necē
orator, ōrātor, -ōris, m.
order (a command), mandatum, -i,
panic, pavor, -oris, m.
parched, ärëdus, -a, -um; tostus, -a, -um
pardon, vënia, -ae, f.; I grant him pardon, do ei veniam; to par-
don, ignosco, növi, nömum, 3, g. dat.
parent, pärens, -tis, c.
Paris (of Troy), Părës, -idis, m.
parricide, parricida, -ae, m.
part, pars, -tis, f.; it is the p. of an orator, orätoris est (289); to take part in a battle, interesse praelio; for my part, équidem (139)
partner, sōcius, -i, m.
pass, pass by, pass on, praetereo, -ivi or -ii, -ítum, 4
path, callìs, -is, m.
past, praëtéritus, -a, -um
patience, pätientia, -ae, f.
patient, pätïens, -ntis (g. gen.) patiently, pätïenter
patrician, patricius, -a, -um
pay, stipendium, -i, n.; to pay, solvo, -vi, -ítum, 3; pendo, pëpendi, pensum, 3; pay atten-
tion, öperam dare; pay penalty, poenas dare; pay tribute, tribú-
tum pendère; able to pay, par (gen. páris) solvendo, i.e. equal to paying
peace, pàx, pàcis, f.
penalty, poena, -ae, f.; to pay penalty, poenas dàre
penetrate, pënetrò, 1
penitence, poenitentia, -ae, f. [m.
penny, dënàrius, -i, m.; as, assis, people, pòpûlus, -i, m.
perjury, përfidìa, -ae, f.
perform, perficio, -fëci, -fectum, 3
perfume, òdor, -ôris, m.
perhaps, forthasse, forsitan (forsi-
tan gen. takes the subjunctive)
peril, përículum, -i, n.
perish, përeò, -ivi or -ii, 4
permission, pòtestas, -âtis, f.
permit, pätior, passus, 3, dep.
perseverance, persëvërantia, -ae, f.
persevere, persëvero, 1
Persian, Persa, -ae, m.
person, hòmo, -inis, m.
persuade, persuádeo, -si, -sum (g. dat. of person) (i) I p. him to come, p. ei ut vëniat; (ii) I p. him (or am persuaded) that this is true, p. ei (or persuasum est mëhi) hóc vérum esse
Philip, Philippus, -i, m.
Philoctetes, Philoctëtes, -ae, m.
philosopher, philòsophus, -i, m.
philosophy, philòsophia, ae, f.
physician, médicus, -i, m.
picture, tábula, -ae, f.
pierce, transfigo, -xi, -xum, 3
pig, porcus, -i, m.
pigeon, cólumba, -ae, f.
pile up, exstruo, -struxi, -struc-
tum, 3
pilot, gubernátor, -oris, m.
pine tree, pinus, -óns, f.
pious, piüs, -a, -um, no superl.
pirate, praedo, -ónis, m.
pitch (a camp), pòno, pòsui, pòsi-
tum, 3
pitiful, misericors, -cordis
pity, misericordia, -ae, f.; feel pity for, misëeòr, -értus or -sertus, 2, dep. (g. gen.); shew pity to, misërò, 1 (g. acc.)
place, lócus, -i, m.; plural, loca, n. pl.; place, to, pòno, pòsui, pòsittum, 3; place before, antë-
pòno, -pòsui, -pòsittum, 3; vir-
tùtem völuptati antëpòno, I p. virtue before pleasure
plain, campus, -i, m.
plan, consilium, -i, n.
plant, planta, -ae, f.; plant, to, see sow
Plataea, Plàtæae, ärum, f. pl.
Plato, Plàtò, -ônis, m.
play, ludus, -i, m.; play, to, lúdo,
-si, -sum, 3
plead, a cause, āgēre causam
pleasant or pleasing, grātus,-a,-um;
jūcundus, -a, -um; dulcis, -e
please, plāceo, -ui,-ītum 2 (g. dat.)
pleasure, vōluptas, -ātis, f.
pledge oneself, to, I p. myself to
pay, spondeo (spōpondi, spon-
sum, 2) me solūturum esse
plot, dōlus, -i, m.
plough, ārātrum, -i, n.; plough, to,
āro, 1
ploughman, ārātor, -ōris, m.
ploughshare, vōmer, -ēris, m.
pluck, carpo, -psi,-ptum, 3
plunder, praeda, -ae, f.; plunder,
to, dūrōpio,-riput,-reptum, 3
plunge, v. trans. mergo, -si, -sum,
3; he plunged into the water, in
āquam (or aquā) sē meriti
Pluto, Plōto, -ōnis, m.
poem, carmen, -īnis, n.
poet, pōēta, -ae, m.
point, on the point of, in co ūt,
see Par. 166
point out, monstro, 1
poison, vēnēnum, -i, n.
pollute, polluo, -ui,-ātum, 3
pomp, pompa, -ae, f.
Pompeius, Pompeius, -i, m.
Pontius, Pontius, -i, m.
poo, (i.e. not rich) pauper, -ēris (61)
poppy, pāpāver, -ēris, n.
populace, vulgus, -i, n. or m.
populous, frēquens, -tis
porch, porticus, -ūs, f.
Porsena, Porsēna, -ae, m.
port, portus, -ūs, m.
portent, prōdigium, -i, n.
portion, pars, -tis, f.
portrait, effigies, -ēi, f.
Porus, Pōrus, -i, m.
position, lōcus, -i, m.
possess, hābeo, -ui,-ītum, 2; (land)
possideo, possēdi, possēsum, 2
possession of, to take, occūpo, 1; to
gain possession of, pōtior, pōtītus,
4, dep. (g. abl.) see Par. 207
possible, it is p. that, ēfēri pōtest ut
(299); as great as possible, quam
maximus; as well as possible;
quam optimē
posterity, postēri, -ōrum, m. pl.
pour, fundo, fādi, fāsum, 3
poverty, paupertas, -ātis, f.
power, pōtēstas, -ātis, f.; in the
power of, pēnēs (g. acc.)
powerful, pōtens, -tis
practice, usus, -ūs, m.
predict, exercēo, -ui,-ītum, 2
praetor, praetor, -ōris, m.
praise, laus, -dis, f.; praise, to,
laudo, 1
pray, oro, 1; prēcor, 1, dep. (foll.
by ut)
prayers, prēces, -um, f.
precept, praecōptum, -i, n.
precious, prōtiōsus, -a,-um
predict, prōedē, -dixi,-dictum, 3
prefer, mālo, -ui,-malle, foll. by
quam, page 230; antēpono,
-pōsui, -pōsītum, 3 (g. acc. and
dat.)
preparation; I have made every p.,
omnia pārāvi
prepare, pāro, 1
presence of, in the, cōram (g. abl.)
present, to be, adsum,-fui,-esse (g.
dat.)
present, a, dōnum, -i, n.; mūnus,
-ōris, n.; present, to, dōno, 1
(g. acc. and dat. or abl. and
acc.); I p. you with a horse,
ēquo tē dōno
preserve, servo, 1
press, prēmo, pressi, pressum, 3
pretence, spēcies, -ei, f.; sūmulātio,
-ōnis, f.
pretend, sīmulo, 1
prevent, prōhiēco, -ui,-ītum, 2;
impēdiō, -īvi or -i,-ītum, 4;
obsto, -stāre, -stītī, -stātum, g.
dat.; what prevents you from
coming? quid obstat (or prōhi-
bet) quōminus vēnīas?
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vocabularv.</th>
<th>provided that, dum módoo, or dum-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>previously, antē, anteā</td>
<td>módoo (all g. subj.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prey, praeda, -ae, f.</td>
<td>province, provvincia, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priam, Priāmus, -i, m.</td>
<td>provisions, commēatus, -ās, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>price, prētium, -i, n.; at a great,</td>
<td>provoke, lācessus, -ī, -ītum, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>small price, &amp;c., see Par: 284</td>
<td>prudence, prudentia, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pride, sūperbia, -ae, f.</td>
<td>prudent, prūdēns, -īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>priest, priestess, sācērdōs, -ōtīs, c.</td>
<td>public, publicus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prison, carcer, -ēris, m.</td>
<td>Publius, Publius, -ī, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prisoner, captūsus, -i, m.</td>
<td>pull, trāho, -xi, -ctum, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>private, privātus, -a, -um</td>
<td>punish, castīgo, 1; pūnio, -īvi or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prize, praemium, -i, n.</td>
<td>-iī, -ītum, 4; punishment, sup-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proceed, prōgredior, -gressus, 3,</td>
<td>plīcium, -i. n.; poena, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dep.</td>
<td>pure, pūrus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proclaim, prōnuntio, 1; ēdico,</td>
<td>purple, purīpūreus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-dixi, -dictum, 3</td>
<td>purpose, to, habēre in animo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proconsul, prōconsul, -ūlis, m.</td>
<td>pursue, seōquor, -cūtus, 3, dep.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>procure, pāro, 1</td>
<td>push down, dētrādo, -si, -sum, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prodigal, prōdígus, -a, -um</td>
<td>put, pōno, pōsiūm, pōsiūtum, 3; put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>produce, pārio, pēpērī, partum, 3</td>
<td>over, praeficio, -fēci, -fectum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>profit, quaestus, -ās, m.</td>
<td>3 (g. dat.); put to death, inter-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>profuse, see prodigal</td>
<td>ficere, morte afficere; put to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>promise, prōmissum, -i, n.; to make</td>
<td>flight, fūgo, 1; in fūgam verte,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>many, large, false, &amp;c., promises,</td>
<td>see verto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multa, magna, falsa, &amp;c., prō-</td>
<td>Pyrrhus, Pyrrhus, -ī, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mittere; promise, to, poliĉeor,</td>
<td>Quaestor, quaestor, -ōris, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-cītus, 2, dep.; prōmītto, -mīsi,</td>
<td>quantity, cópia, -ae, f.; vis, vim,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-missum, 3; I p. to come, p.</td>
<td>vi, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>me ventūrum esse (280); I pro-</td>
<td>quarters, winter, hiberna, -ōrum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mise (in marriage), spondeo,</td>
<td>queen, rēgina, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spōponti, sponsum, 2</td>
<td>quench (thirst), restinguo, -stīnxi,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prone, prōnus, -a, -um</td>
<td>-stinctum, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>property, rēs, rei, f.; bōna, -ōrum,</td>
<td>question, to, interrōgo, 1; rōgo, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n. pl.</td>
<td>quick, cēler, -ēris, -ē; quickly, cē-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prophet, vātēs, -is, m.</td>
<td>lēriter; very quickly, cēlērīmē;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>propitious, prōpūtius, -a, -um</td>
<td>quickness, cēlēritas, -ātis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>propose, (a law) rōgo, 1</td>
<td>quiet, tranquillus, -a, -um; quiētus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[3</td>
<td>-a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proscribere, proscribo, -psi, -ptum,</td>
<td>quite, omnīno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prosperity, rēs sēcundae</td>
<td>Quirinus, Quirīnus, -ī, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prosperous, (of winds, &amp;c.) sēcu-</td>
<td>Race, gēnus, ēris, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dus, -a, -um; a prosperous city,</td>
<td>rage, irā, -ae, f.; furor, -ōris, m.;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urbs florentissima</td>
<td>rage, to, saevio, -ii, -ītum, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prosperously, fēlīciter; very pros-</td>
<td>rain, imber, -bris, m.; plūvia,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perously, fēlīcissimē</td>
<td>-ae, f.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
raise, tollo, sustuli, subjatum, 3
rampart, vallum, -i, n.
rank, ordo, -inis, m.
raptacious, rapax, -acis [-is, -e]
rapid, rapidus, -a, -um; celer, rapidity, celeritas, -atis, f.
rare, rarus, -a, -um
rashly, temere
rashness, temeritas, -atis, f.
rate, to value at a very high rate, per magni aestimatione
rather, potius; rather slow, quick, &c., tardior, celior; (Par. 65)
ravage, vasto, 1
raven, corvus, -i, m.
rave, crudes, -a, -um
ray, radius, -i, m.
reach, attingo, -tigi, -tactum, 3 (g. acc.); pervenio, -veni, -ventum, 4 (foli. by ad)
read, lego, legi, lectum, 3
readily, libenter
ready, parratus, -a, -um; ready to fight, ad pugnandum; I am ready to die, non recesso mori
real, verum, -a, -um
reality, veritas, -atis, f.
really, vere
reap, meto, messui, messum, 3
rear, alto, allii, altum, 3
reason (cause), causa, -ae, f.; by reason of, ob, propter (both g. acc.)
rebuke, incorpo, -ui, -itum, 1
recall, revoco, 1
receive, accipio, -cepi, -ceptum, 3 [not recipio]
recent, recens, -tis; novus, -a, -um
recently, nuper
reckon, numero, 1
recline, (at meals) discumbo, -cubui, -cubitum, 3
recognise, agnosco, -novi, -natum, recognit, recordor, recordatus, 1, dep.; memini, see Appendix II., p. 215
recollect, recordor, recordatus, 1, dep.
recovery, memoria, -ae, f.
recover, recupero, 1; recipio, -cepi, -ceptum, 3
recount, narro, 1
refrain (oneself) from, abstineo, -i, -tentum, 2; I abstained from food, cibo me abstimebam
refer, refero, rettuli, retulatum (238); I referred the subject of the hostages to the senate, de obsidibus ad Patres rettuli
refuge, perspugium, -i, n.
refuse, recuso, 1; g. acc.; or inf.; or foll. by quin with subjunctive
regard, have regard to, respicio, -spexi, -spectum, 3 (g. acc.)
region, regio, -onis, f.
regret, desiderium, -i, n.; regret, to, desidero, 1
Regulus, Regulus, -i, m.
reign, regnum, -i, n.; during his reign, eo regnante or rege (197); regio, to, regno, 1 (intr.); imp ero (g. dat.)
rein, habena, -ae, f.
reinforcement, subsidium, -i, n.
reject, rejeci, rejeci, reiectum, 3
rejoice, gaudeo, gavisus, 2, dep.
relate, narro, 1; horrible to relate! nefas dictu!
relation, propingus, -i, m.
relieve, the city was relieved from the siege, obsidione urbs levat a est (279)
religion, religio, -onis, f.
relying, fretus, -a, -um (g. abl.)
remain, maneo, -mansi, -nsum, 2;
remain over, supersum, -fui, -esse
remaining, reliquus, -a, -um
remarkable, insignis, -e; to a r. degree, unice
remedy, remedium, -i, n.
remember, (1) recordor, -atus, 1, dep.; reminiscor, -i (g. acc., but sometimes gen.); (2) memini (def.), see p. 215
remembrance, memoria, -ae, f.
remind, admôneo, -ui, -itum, 2
remove, âmovio, -môvi, -môtum, 2
remorse, dôlor, -ôris, m.; poenitentia, -ae, f.
render, reddo, -didi, -ditum, 3
renew, rênôvo, 1
renown, fâma, -ae, f.
renowned, clârus, -a, -um
repair, réficio, -feci, -fectum, 3
repeat, ûtero, 1
repel, repello, -pulum, repüli, 3
repend, poenitêt, -uit, 2, imper.
(re see Par. 219 and foll.)
repentance, poenitentia, -ae, f.
reply, responsum, -i, n.; reply, to, respondeo, {see m.;
report, fâma, -ae, f.; rûmor, -ôris, m.; report, to, nuntio, 1; it is reported that Tullius said, furtur Tullius dixisse repose, quiês, -êtis, f.
republic, rêspublica, reipublicae, f.
repulse, prôpulso, 1
reputation, fâma, -ae, f. [dat.]
resist, rêsisto, -stîti, -stîtum, 3 (g.
resolve, constituo, -ui, -âtum, 3
resources, õpes, -um, f.
responsum, responsum, -i, n.
rest, quiês, -êtis, f.; rest, the, [côtter]
-êra, -êrum, mostly pl. (residue) réliquus, -a, -um; rest, to, quiesco, -evi, -âtum, 3
restore, reddo, -didi, -ditum, 3;
restituo, -ui, -âtum, 3
restrain, coerco, 2
result, évventus, -âs, m.
retain, rétineo, -ui, -tentum, 2
retake, récîpio, -cêpi, -ceptum, 3
retire, récêdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3; the soldiers retire, militès sê récîpiunt
retreat, réceptus, -âs, m.; retreat, to, cêdo, cessi, cessum, 3
return, rédîtus, -âs, m.; return, to, rédeo, -ii, -îtum, 4; révertor, -versus, 3, dep.; to return thanks, grâtiâs âgère
reveal, pâtêficio, -feci, -fectum, 3
revenge, ultio, -ûnis, f.; revenge, to, ulciscor, ultus, 3, dep.
revenue, vectigal, -âlis, n.
reverence, révêtentia, -ae, f.
revere, reverence, vênêror, -atus, 1, dep.; vêreor, -itus, 2, dep.
revolt, sêditio, -ûnis, f.; revolt, to, déficio, -feci, -fectum, 3
reward, praemiun, -i, n.; mercês, -êdis, f.
Rhodes (island), Rhôdus,-i, f. (263)
rich, divês, -îts, req. comp. (not dîtior, dîtissimus, except in poetry)
riches, divitiae, -arum, f.; õpes, -um, f.
ride, équîto, 1; vêhor, vectus, 3
rider, équês, -îts, m.
ridiculous, ridiculûs, -a, -um
right, rectus, -a, -um; right, jûs, jûris, n.; fâs, indcl.
right-hand, dexter, -tra, -trum,
(noun), dextra or dextéra, -ae, f.
rightly, jûre (Par. 182)
ring, anûlus, -i, m.
rise (from bed), surgo, surrexi,
-rectum, 3; õrior, ortus, 4 dep.
risk, pêricûlum, -i, n.
rive, ritûs, -ûs, m.
rival, aemûlus, -a, -um (used as a n.); he had many rivals, multos sibi aemûlos hábuit
rivalry, aemûlátio, -ûnis, f.
river, flûmen, -înis, n.; amnis,
-is, m.; flûvius, -i, m.
road, via, -ae, f.; ûter, itinéris, n.
rob, spôlio, 1 (acc. of pers., abl. of thing)
roller, latro, -ûnis, m.
rock, scûpûlus, -i, m.; rûpês, -îs, f.
roll, volvo, -vi, volvîtum, 3 (trans.); the stone is rolling, lâpis volvitur
Rome, Ròma, -ae, f.
Roman, Ròmânus, -a, -um
Romulus, Ròmûlus, -i, m.
roof, tectum, -i, n.
rood, radix, -onis, f.
rope, fœnis, -is, m.
rose, rosa, -ae, f.
rough, asper, -era, -erum
round, rotundus, -a, -um; tērēs, -ēsis
round (prep.), circum (g. acc.)
ruse, excito, 1
rout, fūgo, 1; fundo, ōdi, fusum, 3
royal, régālis, -e; régius, -a, -um
ruddy, rūdis, -e; incultus, -a, um
rugged, asper, -era, -erum
ruin (destruction), extītium, -i, n.
rule, to, rēgo, -xi, -ctum (g. acc.);
impēro, 1 (g. dat.)
rule, imperium, -i, n.
rumour, fāma, -ae, f.; rūmor,
-ōris, m.
runt, curro, quīcūrri, cursum, 3
run up, accurro, -curri, -cursum, 3
run away, anfūgio, -fugi, 3
running, cursus, -ūs, m.
rush, impētus, -ūs, m.
rush, to, rūo, -ui, 3 [3
rush forth, crūmpo, -rupti, -ruptum,
rustic, rusticus, -a, -um
Sabine, Sābīnus, -a, -um
sacred, sācer, -era, -crum
sacrifice, sacrificium, -i, n.
sacrifice, to, sacrifico, 1
sad, tristis, -e
safe, tūtus, -a, -um; salvus, -a,
-um; incōlūmis, -e
safely, tūto
safety, sūlūs, -ūtis, f.
sagacious, sāgax, -ācis
sail, a, vēlum, -i, n.
sail, to, nāvigo, 1
sailor, nauta, -ae, m.
sake, for the, causā (adverbial
abl. foll. by gen. of gerundive)
salt, sal, sālis, m.
salutation, sālūtātio, -ōnis, f.
salute, sālūto, 1
same, ēdem, ēdēm, ēdem (103)
Samos, Sānos, -i, f.
Samnites, Samnites, -ium, m.
sand, ārēna, -ae, f.
sate, satiāte, sātio, 1; expleo,
-plēvi, -pletum, 2
satisfy, sātisfācio, -fēci, -factum,
3 (g. dat.)
savage, saevus, -a, -um; fērus, -a,
-um
savage, -is, -ātis, -ātis, f.
save (i.e. preserve), servo, 1
say, dico, -xi, -ctum, 3; say...not,
nēgo, 1; do you say it is not so?
nēgasne ita esse? I say I cannot
come, nēgo mē venire posse;
said he, I say (used parentheti-
cally) inquit, inquam; see page
315; it is said that Balbus lies;
dicitur Balbus mentiri (Par.
177).
saying, dictum, -i, -n
scanty, exiguus, -a, -um
scarcely, vix
scarcity, inopia, -ae, f.
scatter, spargo, -rsi, -rsum, 3;
foodo, ōdi, fusum, 3
scent, odor, -ōris, m.
scent, -um
science, scientia, -ae, f.
Scipio, Scipio, -onis, m.
schorch, adūro, -ussi, -ustum, 3;
torreo, -ui, tostatum, 2
corn, aspernor, 1, dep.; sperno,
sprevi, spretum, 3
scourge, to, virgis caedere, lit. to
strike with rods; (virga, -ae, f.)
scout, explōrator, -ōris, m.
sculptor, sculptor, -ōris, m.
sculpture, sculptūra, -ae, f.
Scythian, Scytha, -ae, m.
sea, māre, -is, n.; pēlagus, -i, -n.
(adj.) mārinus, -a, -um; nāvālis,
-sea, māre, -is, n.; pēlagus, -i, -n.
(adj.) mārinus, -a, -um; nāvālis,
-e
search, explōre, 1; quaero, -sivi,
-sūtum, 3
season, tempus, -ōris, n.; tempes-
tās, -ātis, f.
seasonable, opportūnus, -a, -um
seat, sēdēs, -is, f.
second (in ordinary numeration),
sēcundus, -a, -um; (a, or the
second, where only two are contem-
plated), alter, -ēra, -ērum; a second
time, itērum; a friend is
a second self, āmīcus est alter
ego
secret, sēcretus, -a, -um
secretary, scriba, -ae, m.
secretly, clam
secure, sēcūrus, -a, -um; see safe
security, see safety
sedition, sēditio, -onis, f.
see, vīdeo, vīdī, visum, 2; to see-to
this being done, cūrāre hōc fāci-
endum
seed, sēmen, -inis, n.
seek, quaerō, quaesivi, quaesītum,
3; (peace) pēto, -īvi or -ii,
-ītum, 3
seem, vīdeo, vīsus, 2 dep.
seize, occūpo, 1; corripio, -ripui,
-reptum, 3
seldom, rāro
self, ipsū, -a, -um, (105, 308); sē
(94, 218, 305-8)
sell, vendo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3
seller, vendītor, -ōris, m.
senate, sēnātus, -ās, m.; also
Patres, -rum; it was referred to
the s., ad Patres rēlātum est
senate-house, curiā, -ae, f.
senator, sēnātor, -ōris, m.
send, mittō, mīsi, missum, 3 (to, ād)
send away, dimitto, mīsi, missum,
3
send for, arcesso, -īvi, -ītum, 3 [3
send on, praemittō, -mīsi, -missum,
sentinel, vigilī, -ilis, m.
separate, sēpāro, 1
serious, grāvis, -e
serpent, serpentis, -is, c.
servant (slave), servus, -i, m.;
(attendant) minister, -ri, m.
serve, servīo, -īvi or -ii, -ītum, 4
(g. dat.); to s. (as a soldier),
stipendium mērere
service, (benefit), bēnēficium, -i, n.;
to perform military service, sti-
pendium mērēre
servile, servīiis, -e
servitude, servītūm, -ī, n.; (but in
Cicero) servītūs, -ūtis, f.
set, (of the sun) occīdo, -cīdi,
-cāsum, 3; set out, prōfiscīcor,
-fectus, 3, dep. ("for" after this
v. must be rendered ad; but see
Par. 249); set an example, ex-
emplum praebeō; set on fire,
incendo, -cendi, -censum, 3
setting, occāsus, -ās, m.
seven, septem, indecl.; see Par. 81
several, plūres, -a (72)
severe, grāvis, -e; severely, grāvīter
severity, sēverītās, -ātis, f.
shade, shadow, umbra, -ae, f.
shady, umbrōsus, -a, -um
shakes, quātio, quassum, 3; I shake
off sleep, somnūm excūtio, -cussi,
-cussum, 3
shame, pūdor, -ōris, m.
shameful, turpis, -e
shameless, impūdens, -tis
shamelessness, impūdentia, -ae, f.
shape, forma, -ae, f.
share, pars, -tis, f.
share, to, dīvidō, -si, -sum, 3
sharp, ācūtus, -a, -um; ācer, acris,
acre
sharpen, ācuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3
shave, rādo, -si, -sum, 3
she, see he
shear, to, dōnīo, -tōndi, tonsum, 2
sheep, ōvis, -is, f.
shew, pārō, -e, m.
shield, scūtum, -i, n.; clipeō, -i, m.
shine, lūceō, -xi, 2; (of a meadow)
nīteo, -ui, 2
ship, nāvīs, -is, f.; (of war) n. lon-
shipwreck, naufragium, -i, n.
shirt, tūnica, -ae, f.
shock, impētus, -ūs, m.
shore, litus, -ōris, n.; ōra, -ae, f.
short, brēvīs, -e; for a short time
  paulisper
shoulder; (h)ūrnērus, -i, m.
shout, clamōr, -ōris, m.
shout, to, clāmō, 1
shove, to, monstro, 1
shower, imber, -bris, m.
shrub, frātēx, -icis, m.
shun, fūgīo, fūgi, 3; vīto, 1
shut, shut in, claudo, -si, -sum, 3
Sicily, Sicilia, -ae, f.
sick, sickly, aeger, -gra, -grum;
infirmus, -a, -um
side, lātus, -ēris, n.; on this side,
citār, cis (g. acc.); on one side...
on the other side, hinc...illinc;
sides, on all, passim; sides, from
call, undique
sight, visus, -ūs, m.; conspectus,
-tis, m.; in the sight of the
to the people, palam pōpūlo
sign, signal, signum, -i, n.
silence, silentium, -i, n.
silent, silens, -tis; tācitus, -a, -um;
silently, tācē
silent, to be, tāceo, -ūi, -ītum, 2;
sīleō, -ui, 2
silver, argentum, -i, n.; (adj.)
argenteus, -a, -um
simple, simplex, -icis
sin, peccātum, -i, n.; scēlus, -ēris, n.
sin, to, pecco, 1
since, quōniam (with indic.); cum
(with subj.); since this is so, quae
cum īūa sint (151)
sing, canto, 1; cāno, cecīni, can-
tum, 3
single, ānus, -a, -um
sink, mergo, -rsi, -rsum, 3 (trans.);
mergor (intrans.)
sister, sōrōr, -ōris, f.
sit, sēdeo, sēdi, sessum, 3
sit down, consideo, -sēdi, -sessment, 3
six, sixty, &c. See P. 81
size, magnūtūdo, -inis, f.
skilful, skilled, pēritis, -a, -um
skill, pēritis, -ae, f.
skin, cūtis, -is, f.; pellis, -is, f.
sky, caelum, -i, n.
slander, mālēdico, -xi, -ctum, 3 (g.
dat.)
slaughter, caedēs, -is, f.
slave, servus, -i, m.; to be a slave,
servire
slavery, servitiās, -ūtis, f.
slay, interficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3;
occido, -cidi, -cīsum, 3
sleep, somnus, -i, m.
sleep, to, dormio, -ivi or -ii, -ītum,
slander, grācilis, -e (60); tēnui, -e
slight, levis, -e
slip, lābor, lapsus, 3 dep.
slip down, délābor, -lapsus, 3, dep.
sloth, ignāvia, -ae, f.
slow, tardus, -a, -um
slowly, tardē
slumber, somnus, -i, m.
small, parvus, -a, -um
smear, oblīno, -levi, -lītum, 3
smell, ōdor, -ōris, m.
smile, rīdeo, -si, -sum, 2
snake, cōlūber, -bri, m. (rare);
anguis, -is, m.
snare, insidiae, -ārum, f.
snatch, rápio, -ui, -ptum, 3; snatch
from, eripio, -ripui, -eptum, g.
dat. of pers. (192)
3
snatch away, abripio, -ui, -reptum, 3,
show, nix, nivis, f.
so, (with adj.) tam; so good, tam
bōnus; itā; and so, i.e. there-
on, itāque; (in this way) sic
(to such an extent) tam
so great, large, tantus, -a, -um
so many, tōt, indic.
so much (money, &c.), tantum
(pécūniae, &c.)
Socrates. Sōcratēs, -is, m.
soft, mollis, -o
soften, mollīo, -ivi or -ii, -ītum, 4
soil, sōlum, -i, n.; hūmus, -i, f.
soldier, milēs, -ītus, m.
sold, -ānus, -a, -um; ūnicus, -a, -um
some, nonnullus, -a, -um; some... others, ali...ali; there is something after death, est aliiquid post mortem; I fear something has happened, veror né quid accidérit; some poet says, pöta quidam dicit; there is some (i.e. something of) art in writing, est aliiquid artis in scribendo; there are (some) who say, sunt qui dicant sometimes, interdum, aliquando somewhat (with adj.) see Par. 65 son, filius, -i, m.; listen, my son, audi, mi filí (13) son-in-law, gêner, -éri, m. song, carmen, -ënis, n.; cantus, -ës, m. soon, mox soothsayer, hârusspéx, -ëcis, m. sorrow, ãolor, -óris, m. sort, gênus, -éris, n. soul, ãnima, -ae, f. sound, a, sôns, -i, m; sôнitus, -ës, m. sound, to, sôno, -ui, -ítum, 1; the trumpet sounds, tûba cánit sour, ácerbus, -a, -um source, fons, -ntis, m. sour, séro, sévi, sâtum, 3. space, spátiwm, -i, m. Spain, Hispánia, -ae, f. spare, parco, pêperi, parsuin, 3 (g. dat.) Sparta, Sparta, -ae, f. speak, dico, -xi, -ctum, 3; lôquor, -cütus, 3 dep. spear, hasra, -ae, f. spectacle, spectácûnum, -i, n. spectre, spectrum, -i, n. [-ónis, f. speech, órâtio. -ónis, f.; contio, speed, cêleritát, -âtis, f.; with speed, speedily, cêleriter spend, consumo, -sumpsi, -sumptum, 3 [m. spirit, spîritus, -üs, m.; ãnimus, -i, splendid, splêndidus, -a, -um splendour, splendor, -óris, m. spoil, spôlio, 1 (acc. of pers., abl. of thing) spoils, spôlia, -órum, n. sport, lúdus, -i, m. spot, lôcus, -i, m.; phr.scopes spring, vér, vérís, n. spring forward, prósílio, -sîlii, -sultum, 4 spur, calcar, -âris, n. (39) spurn, sperno, sprêvi, sprètum, 3 spy, explôrâtor, -óris, m. squander, dissipo, 1. stab, confôdío, -fôdi, -fossum, 3 stag, cervus, -i, m. stand, sto, stêti, statum, 1 stand up, consurgo, -surrexi, 3 standard, signum, -i, n. star, stella, -ae, f.; sídus, -óris, n. state, civitas, -âtis, f.; republica, reipublicae, f. station, to, lôco, 1 statute, státua, -ae, f. stay, máneo, -nsi, -nsum, 2; móròr, -âtus, 1 dep. steadily, constanter [ôcís stern, sèvérus, -a, -um; atrox, sternness, sèvèrítas, -âtis, f. stick, bâcûlus, -i, m. still (i.e. yet), adhûc stir, móveo, môvi, mótum, 2 stomach, venter, -tris, m. stone, lápis, -idis, m.; saxum, -i, n. stop, consisto, -sti, -stítum, 3 stop, (trans.) móror, 1, dep. storm, pròcella, -ae, f.; tempestás, -âtis, f. storm, to, expugno, 1 story, fábula, -ae, f. straight, rectus, -a, -um strange, mirus, -a, -um stranger, hospûs, -îtis, m.; advêna, -ae, m. stratagem, dólus, -i, m. stream, flûmen, -ënis, n.; rívus, -i, m.
street, vicus, -i, m.
strength, vires, -ium, f. pl.
strengthen, firmo, 1
stretch out, extendo, -di, -sum, 3
strect, sterno, strāvi, strātum, 3
strike, strike down, caedo, cēcidi, caesium, 3; having been struck by lightning, fulmine ictus (-a, -um)
strike, (i.e. endeavour) nitor, nisus or nixus, 3, dep. (with ut and subjunctive); (i.e. fight) certo, 1; we strive for mastery with the Roman people, de império cum pōpūlo Rōmāno armīs certāmus (constr. with inf., and with dat. for cum, is mostly poetical)
strong, valēdus, -a, -um
struggle, certāmen, -inis, n.
struggle, to, luctor, 1 dep.
study, studium, -i, n.
study, to, stūdeo, -ui, 2 (g. dat.)
stuff, to, farcio, farsi, fartum, 4
stupid, stultus, -a, -um
subdue, subjugate, sūbigo, -ēgi, -actum, 3
subtle, callidus, -a, -um
subtract, dēmo, dempsi, demptum, 3 ( foll. by de; or dat. of pers., acc. of thing)
succeed, I succeed, i.e. I prosper, rēs mīhi bēnē succēdit, or rem bēnē gēro. N.B. not, in this sense, succēdo, -ssi, -ssum, 3, which is only used for “take the place of,” and g. dat.; fresh men succeeded the wearyed, integri dē-fātīgātis successūrunt
succeed, victōria, -ae, f.; they returned without s., rē infecta rū-dīerunt
successfully, fēliciter; more successfullly, fēlicius
succumb, succumbo, succūbui, succǔbitum, 3 (g. dat.)
such, tālis, -e
sudden, sūbitus, -a, -um

suddenly, rēpentē, sūbīto, stātīm Šuevi, Suēvi, -orum, m.
suffer, pātior, passus, 3 dep.
sufficient, sātis, indcl.; īdōneus, -a, -um; sufficiently good, sātis bōnus
suited for, suitable, aptus, -a, -um, īdōneus, -a, -um (with dat. or ad; aptus, with persons, dat.)
sun of money, pēcūnia, -ae, f.
summer, aestas, -āris, f.
summit, culmen, -īnis, n.
surname, vocō, 1; convōco, 1
sun, sōl, sōlis, m.
sunrise, lāx, lūcis, f.; sōlis ortus
sunset, sōlis occāsus
sup, cenō, 1
superstition, sūperstītio, -onis, f.
supper, cēna, -ae, f.
suppliant, supplex, -īcis
supplies, commēatus, -ūs, m.; we are hindered from getting s., prohibēmur commēatu
support (nourish), nutrio, -ivi, -itum, 4; sustūneo, -ui, -tentum, 2; sustento, 1
suppose, puto, 1
supreme, suprēmus, -a, -um; summus, -a, -um
sure, certus, -a, -um
surname, cognōmen, -inis, n.
surrender, trādo, -dīdi, -ditum, 3; also (but most frequ. of s.persons) dēdo, dēdidi, dēditum, 3
surround, circumdo, -dēdi, -dātum, dāre (acc. and obl. or acc. and dat.; see Ex. IXII.) [dat.)
survive, sūpersum, -fui, -esse (g.
suspicion, suspicio, -onis, f.
sustain, sustūneō, 2; (nourish), nutrio, -ivi, -itum, 4
swallow, hirundo, -inis, f.
swan, cygnum, -i, m.
swear, juro, 1; I swear to come, j. me venīram esse; I s. to obey a law, j. in lēgēm.
sweat, sudor, -ōris, m.
THE VOCABULARY.

sweet, dulcis, -e; suavis, -e
swift, celer, -is, -e
swiftly, celeriter
swiftness, celeritas, -atis, f.
swim, to, no, navi, natum, 1
sword, gladius, -i, m.; with fire and sword, ferro atque igni
Syraecus, Syracusae, -arum, f. pl.
Syria, Syria, -ae, f.

Table, mensa, -ae, f.
tail, cauda, -ae, f.
take, capió, capi, captum, 3; take away, adimo, -ēmi, -emptum, 3; auféro, abstūli, ablātum, auferre; take by storm, expugno, 1; take care of, cūro, 1 (g. acc.); take care to, cūra ut; take place, see happen
talk, lōquor, lōcutus, 3 dep.
talkative, lōquax, -ācis [-um
tall, prōcerus, -a, -um; altus, -a, tame, mansuetus, -a, -um; to tame, dōmo, -ui, -itum, 1
Tarquin, Tarquinius, -i, m.
task, ōpus, -ēris, n.
taste, gusto, 1
tasteful, élegans, -ntis; tastefully, éleganter
Tatius, Tātius, -i, m.
Taurus, mount, Taurus, -i, m.
tax, tributum, -i, n.; vectigal, -ālis, n.
teach, dōceo, -ui, -ctum, 2 (g. tuc acc.) See Par. 312
teacher, magister, -tri, m.
tear, lácrima, -ae, f.
tear, to, scindo, scīdi, scissum, 3; tear away, avello, -vellī, -vulsūm, 3; tear out, avello, -vellī, -vulsūm, 3; to tear away from one's embrace, avellère de amplexu
tell, dico, -xi, -ctum, 3, dat. & acc.
texture, tēmeritas, -ātis, f.
temper, ānimus, -i, m.
tempest, tempestās, -ātis, f.; prōcella, -ae, f.
temple, templum, -i, n.; aedes, -is f.
ten, dēcem, indecl. (distr.) dēnum -a, -um; see Par. 314
tender, tēner, -ēra, ērum (61)
tent, tentōrium, -i, n.
tenth, dēcimus, -a, -um
terminate, finio, 4
terrible, dīrus, -a, -um
terify, terreō, -ui, -ītum, 2
territories, fines, -īum, m.
terror, terror, -ōris, m.
Thames, Tāmēsis, -is, m.
than, (62, 63) quam
to, to, no, nāvi, nātum, 1
Syraecus, Syracusae, -arum, f. pl.
Syria, Syria, -ae, f.

Table, mensa, -ae, f.
tail, cauda, -ae, f.
take, cāpio, cēpi, captum, 3; take away, adimo, -ēmi, -emptum, 3; auféro, abstūli, ablātum, auferre; take by storm, expugno, 1; take care of, cūro, 1 (g. acc.); take care to, cūra ut; take place, see happen
talk, lōquor, lōcutus, 3 dep.
talkative, lōquax, -ācis [-um
tall, prōcerus, -a, -um; altus, -a, tame, mansuetus, -a, -um; to tame, dōmo, -ui, -itum, 1
Tarquin, Tarquinius, -i, m.
task, ōpus, -ēris, n.
taste, gusto, 1
tasteful, élegans, -ntis; tastefully, éleganter
Tatius, Tātius, -i, m.
Taurus, mount, Taurus, -i, m.
tax, tributum, -i, n.; vectigal, -ālis, n.
teach, dōceo, -ui, -ctum, 2 (g. tuc acc.) See Par. 312
teacher, magister, -tri, m.
tear, lácrima, -ae, f.
tear, to, scindo, scīdi, scissum, 3; tear away, avello, -vellī, -vulsūm, 3; tear out, avello, -vellī, -vulsūm, 3; to tear away from one's embrace, avellère de amplexu
tell, dico, -xi, -ctum, 3, dat. & acc.
texture, tēmeritas, -ātis, f.
temper, ānimus, -i, m.
tempest, tempestās, -ātis, f.; prōcella, -ae, f.
temple, templum, -i, n.; aedes, -is f.
ten, dēcem, indecl. (distr.) dēnum -a, -um; see Par. 314
tender, tēner, -ēra, ērum (61)
tent, tentōrium, -i, n.
tenth, dēcimus, -a, -um
terminate, finio, 4
terrible, dīrus, -a, -um
terify, terreō, -ui, -ītum, 2
territories, fines, -īum, m.
terror, terror, -ōris, m.
Thames, Tāmēsis, -is, m.
than, (62, 63) quam
thanks, grātiae, -arum, f.; I return t., grātias āgo
that (dem. pron.), illī, -a, -ud; is, ēa, ḣd; that of yours, istē, -a, -ud (if used with adj. and nouns the position of illē, is, istē is like that of hic; see "īhis")
that (rel. pron.) qui; that (nom. or abl.) . . . not, quin (145, 300); there was no one that did not hate you, nēmo ērat quin tē odisset
that (conj.) ut; that not, nē (131); (with comp.) quo (303); that they might the more easily go, quo fācilius irent. X.B. Unless "that" denotes purpose or consequence, it must not be rendered by ut
theatre, theārum, -i, n.
Theban, Thēbānus, -i, m.
Thebes, Thēbae, -arum, f.
theft, furtum, -i, n.
their, eōrum, cārum, eōrum; (own)
suus, -a, -um
Themistocles, Thēmistocles, -is, m.
them, tum; tune; deinde; see tum,
tune in L. Vocab.

therefore, igitur, ītāque; see Lat. Thermopylae, Thermopýlae, -arum, f.
Thetis, Thētis, -idis, f.
thick, (of garments) crassus, -a, -um; densus, -a, -um
thicket, dūmētūm, -i, n.
thief, fār, -is, m.
thim, mācer, -era, -cum; tenuis, -e
thing, rēs, rei, f.
think, pūto, 1; existīmo, 1; cogito, 1; reor, rātus, rēri; thinking that the enemy were at hand, rātus hostes ādesse; I thought to myself, mécum cogitābam
third, tertius, -a, -um
thirst, sitiō, -is, f. acc. -im, abl. -i; to die of thirst, sītī mōri
thirteen, trādecim, indecl.
thirty, trīgintā, indecl.
this, hic, haec, hoc (if used with Adj. and Noun, mostly comes between the two; this sad calamity, tristis haec cálāmitās; or else tam, "so" is inserted, haec tam tristis c.; this great army, hic tantus exercitus). N.B. the same rule applies to the pron. adj. generally, illē, istē, meus, tuus, &c.
thither, eo, illūc
thou, tū, see p. 45
though, quamvis (g. subj.); quamquam (g. ind.), see Par. 323
thousand, see Par. 80
threat, mīna, -ae, f.
threaten, mīnōr, 1, dep. (g. acc. of thing and dat. of person); I threaten you with death, mīnōr tībī mortem
three, trēs, tria (78); three hundred, trīcenti, -ae, -a; three hundred apiece, trīcēni, -ae, -a (314); three times, trīce, ter; three days, trīdūm, -i, n.; three years, trīennium, -i, n.
thrifty, parcus, -a, -um
throat, guttur, -ūris, n.
throne, sōlīnum, -i, n.
through, pēr (g. acc.)
throw, conjiciō, -ēci, -jectum, 3
thrush, turdus, -i, m.
thumb, pollex, -īcis, m.
thunder, to, tōno, -ui, -itum, 1
thunderbolt, fulmen, -inis, n.
thus, sic, itā
thy, tuus, -a, -um
Tiber, Tibēris, -is, m.
tide, aestus, -ūs, m.
tiger, tigris, -is or -idis, c.
till, dōnec, dum, quoad; to till, eōlo,-ui, cultum, 3
time, tempus, -ōris, n.; a second time, itērum; by this time, jam; four times, see "four"
timely, opportūnus, -a, -um
timid, timidus, -a, -um
Titus, Titūs, -i, m.
to, in, ād (g. acc.). N.B. (1) "to" before a verb is never to be rend. by the Lat. inf. unless the inf. is the subj. or obj. of another verb; (2) nor by the supine except after a verb of motion; (3) it is rendered by the subjunctive when meaning "in order to," and also after verbs of asking, &c. (143); (4) see also ād and gerundive (186)
to-day, hōdīc
together, simul, āna; having conversed, inter sēsē collōctūti
toil, lābor, -ōris, m.
token, indicium; -i, n.; pledge, pignus, -ōris, n.
tolerate, pātiōr, passus, 3 dep.
tomb, sepulcrum, -i, n.; tūmulus, -i, m.
to-morrow, crās
tongue, lingua, -ae, f.
too, too much, (adv.) nīmis, nīmium; too little, pārum (adv. used also as a noun); he has too little strength, pārum virtūm hābet; this task is too difficult for you to accomplish, hoc ōpus difficilius est quam quod (or ut
hóc) perficias; see also Par. 64, 149
tooth, dens, -tis, m.
top, vertex, -ícis, m.; the top of
the mountain, mons summus
torch, taeda, -ae, f.; fax, -fácis, f.
torn, lacer, -éra, -ërum	torture, crúciátus, -ús, m.
touch, tango, tetigi, tactum, 3
towards, versus (of places); ergá
(of conduct towards persons); ad
(all g. acc.), see Par. 183
tower, turris, -is, f.
town, oppidum, -i, n.
trace, vestigium -i, n.
train, exerceo, -ui, -itum, 2; (educate) érúdio, -ivi, -itum, 4
traitor, proditor, -óris, m.
tranquil, tranquillus, -a, -um
tranquillity, tranquillitas, -átis, f.
transact, ago, égi, actum, 3
transfer, transport, transféro, -túli,
-látum, -fërre
travel, itér facère
traveller, viátor, -órís, m.
treachery, perfidía, -ae, f.; dólus,
-i, m.
treason, (military) próditio, -ónis,
f.; (civil) májestas, -átis, f.
treasure, thésaurus, -i, m.
treasury, aerárium, -i, n.
treaty, foedus, -érís, n.
tree, arbor, -óris, f.
tremble, trémó, -ui, 3; (from top
to toe) contrémó, -ui, 3
tribe, tribus, -ús, f.
tribunal, tribúnal, -ális, n.
tribune, tribúnus, -i, m.
tribuneship, tribúnatus, -ús, m.
tribute, tribútum, -i, n.
trick, dólus, -i, m.
trifle, nágae, -árum, f. pl.
triumph, triumphus, -i, m.; to
triumph, triumpho, 1
Trojan, Trojánus, -i, m.
troop (of horse), turma, -ae, f.
troops, cóniæae, -árum, f.
trophy, trípaeum, -i, n.
trouble, òpéra, -ae, f.; to trouble,
turbo, 1	troublesome, mólestus, -a, -um
Troy, Troja, -ae, f.
true, vérus, -a, -um; truly, i.e.
truthfully, véré
trumpet, tūba, -ae, f.
trunk, truncus, -i, m.;
trust, to, crédó, -didi, -dítum, 3
(dat.); confido, -físus sum, 3
(dat of pers., abl. of thing);
trusting in the nature of their
position, naturâ lóci confisi;
trust, fides, -ei, f.
trusty, fidélis, -e; fidus, -a, -um
truth, (abstractive) vérítas, -átis, f.;
(what is true, fact) vérum, -i,
n.; if you will have the truth, si
vérum audire vis; you have
spoken the truth, véra dixisti
try, cóñor, 1, dep. (with inf.); make
proof of, tento, 1; we have tried
this danger, téntávimus hoc péri-
culum
Tullius, Tullius, -i, m. (3)
Tullia, Tullia, -ae, f.
Tulliola, Tulliola, -ae, f., i.e. the
little Tullia (a child's name)
Tullus, Tullus, -i, m.
tumult, tumultus, -ús, m.
turn, verto, -ti, -sum, 3; he turned
to (in speaking); se convertit
ad; the enemy turned their backs,
i.e. fêd, terga dédêrunt; turn
out, évênio, -vénì, -ventum, 4;
in turn, invícem
twelve, see Par. 81; distrib. 314
twentieth, -ti, -sum, 3; he turned
to (in speaking); se convertit
ad; the enemy turned their backs,
i.e. fêd, terga dédêrunt; turn
out, évênio, -vénì, -ventum, 4;
in turn, invícem
twice, see Par. 81; distrib. 314
twice, see Par. 81, 314
twice, -bís
twist, torqueo, -si, -tum, 2
two, duo, -ae, -o (78, 314); two
days, biduum, -i, n.
tyran, tyrrannus, -i, n.
Ugliness, deformitas, -ātis, f.  
ugly, turpis, -e  
Ulysses, Úlysses, -is, m.  
able, I am, nēqueo, -quīvi, 4;  
imperf. nequibam; see L. Vocab.  
unaccustomed, insōlitus, -a, -um  
unarmed, iernnis, -e  
uncertain, incertus, -a, -um (g. gen.)  
uncultivated, incultus, -a, -um  
under, sūb, Par. 180 (g. abl. or acc.); under Caesar (as general).  
Caesāre dūce (197)  
undergo, sūbeo, -ivi or -ii, 4  
understand, intellēgo, -lexi, -lec- tum, 3  
undertake, suscīpio, -cēpi, -cep- tum, 3; to undertake politics, capēssere rem-publicam  
undeserving, indignus, -a, -um (g. abl.)  
unequal, impār, -pāris  
unfair, iniquus, -a, -um  
unfortunate, infēlix, -īcis  
unfriendly, inimicus, -a, -um  
ungrateful, ingrātus, -a, -um  
unhappy, infēlix, -īcis  
unity, concordia, -ae, f.  
universal, ānǐversus, -a, -um  
unjust, injustus, -a, -um  
unknown, ignōtus, -a, -um  
unlearned, indoctus, -a, -um  
unless, nīsī (same construction as si, see Par. 125, 295)  
unlike, dissimilis, -e  
unlucky, infēlix, -īcis; infaustus, -a, -um [gen.]  
unmindful, immēmor, -ōris, (g.  
unpleasant, ingrātus, -a, -um  
unseasonable, inopportūnus, -a, -um  
unsuccessfully, infelīcitē  
until, dum; dōnēc; quod: not until, nōn antēquam; he did not answer until I twice questioned him, nōn antē respondit quam  
bis eum interrogāvi  

unwarlike, imbellis, -e  
unwilling, I am u. to come, nōlo (nōlui, nolle, 234) vēntre; she came unwillingly, invita (-a, -um) vēnit. N.B. This adj. agrees with its noun, but is only used adverbially; invitūs est is not Latin [abl.]  
unworthy, indignus, -a, -um (g.  
uphold, sustīneo, -i, -tentum, 2  
upon, sūper (180)  
uprightness, prōbitās, -ātis, f.  
up to, tēnus (178)  
urge, urgeo, ursi, 2  
us, see Par. 90, 93  
use, to, ātor, usus, 3, dep. (g. abl.)  
used, he, they, used to, &c. (turn by imperfect. indic. or by sōleo, sōli- tus, 2, dep.)  
useful, ātīlis, -e  
useless, īntīlis, e  
usual, sōlitūs, -a, -um  
usually, fērē, plērumquē  
utter, ēdo, -didi, -ditum, 3  
utterly, omnō; utterly destroy,  
dēleo, -ēvi, -ētum, 2 (for other verbs used with "utterly," see the verbs themselves)  

Vain, vānus, -a, -um; īnānis, -e  
vainly, in vain, frustrā; nēquī-  

vainly, in vain, frustrā; nēquī-  

valley, vallis, -is, f.  
valour, virtūs, -ātis, f.  
value, prētium, -i, n.; to estimate at a high value, magnī aëstimāre;  
to value, aestīmāre, 1 (283, 284)  
valuable, prētīosus, -a, -um  
avanish, ēvānescē, ēvānui, 3  
vanquish, vincō, vīcī, victum, 3  
variety, variētās, -ātis, f.  
variable, varying, vārius, -a, -um  
vest, ingens, -ēs  
venerate (worship), vēnērōr, 1, dep.  
venom, virus, -i, n.  
venture, audeo, usus, 2, dep.  
Venus, Vēnus, -ēris, f.  

This disagrees with the given text. Some corrections are made to the provided list of words.
### VOCABULARY.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>verse, versus, -ās, m.</td>
<td>versum, -i, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>very, ipsē, -a, -um</td>
<td>very, -um, parvulus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>visit, visita, -ae</td>
<td>visit, visita, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>victor, vīctōris, -i, m.</td>
<td>victor, victoria, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vicious, prāvus, -a, -um</td>
<td>vigour, vigor, -ōris, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vigour, vigor, -ōris, m.</td>
<td>vigour, vigor, -ōris, m.; vigilia, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>village, vicus, -i, m.</td>
<td>village, vicus, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>villain, scīlestus, -a, -um</td>
<td>villain, scīlestus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wine, vītis, -is, f.</td>
<td>viñedo, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vineyard, vinea, -ae, f.</td>
<td>vineyard, vinea, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>violate, vīolo, -i, m.</td>
<td>violate, vīolo, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>violence, vīs, acc. vim, abl. vi, f.</td>
<td>violence, vīs, acc. vim, abl. vi, f.; by vi, per vim, or vi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>violent, violentus, -a, -um</td>
<td>violent, violenter, or vi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virgil, Vergilius, -i, m.</td>
<td>Virgil, Vergilius, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>virgo, virgo, -ymis, f.</td>
<td>virgin, virgo, -ymis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>virtue, virtūs, -i, m.</td>
<td>virtue, virtūs, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>virtuous, prōbus, -a, -um</td>
<td>virtuous, prōbus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vision, visus, -ūs, m.; dream, somnum, -i, n.</td>
<td>vision, visus, -ūs, m.; dream, somnum, -i, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>visit, visō, -si, 3; visit (with punishment), affictōris, -ae, -fectum, 3</td>
<td>visit, visō, -si, 3; visit (with punishment), affictōris, -ae, -fectum, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voice, vōx, vōcis, f.</td>
<td>voice, vōx, vōcis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>void, expres, -tis</td>
<td>void, expres, -tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vomit forth, évōno, -ui, -itum, 3; (against any one, in with acc.)</td>
<td>vomit forth, évōno, -ui, -itum, 3; (against any one, in with acc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vow, vōtum, -i, n.; vow, to, vōveo, vōvi, vōtum, 2</td>
<td>vow, vōtum, -i, n.; vow, to, vōveo, vōvi, vōtum, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vulcan, Vulcānus, -i, m.</td>
<td>Vulcan, Vulcānus, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vulture, vultur, -ūris, m.</td>
<td>vulture, vultur, -ūris, m.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wage, gēro, gessi, gestum, 3; I wage war, bellum gēro</td>
<td>wage, māneo, -nsi, -nsum, 2; wage for, expectō, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>walk, ambūlo, 1</td>
<td>walk, ambūlo, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wall, mūrās, -i, m.; town walls, moenia, -i, m. pl.</td>
<td>wall, mūrās, -i, m.; town walls, moenia, -i, m. pl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wander, erro, 1; vägor, pālor, 1, dep.</td>
<td>wander, erro, 1; vägor, pālor, 1, dep.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wandering, error, -āris, m.</td>
<td>wandering, error, -āris, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>want, nōpia, -ae, f.</td>
<td>want, nōpia, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wanting, to be, dēsum, -fui, -esse</td>
<td>wanting, to be, dēsum, -fui, -esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>war, bellum, -i, n.; in war and in peace, dōmi bellicus, or (more commonly) militānus (265); a ship of war, nāvis longa</td>
<td>war, bellum, -i, n.; in war and in peace, dōmi bellicus, or (more commonly) militānus (265); a ship of war, nāvis longa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>warlike, bellicōsus, -a, -um</td>
<td>warlike, bellicōsus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>warm, cālids, -a, -um; warm, to grow, cālesco, 3</td>
<td>warm, cālids, -a, -um; warm, to grow, cālesco, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>warmth, cálor, -āris, m.</td>
<td>warmth, cálor, -āris, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>warn, mōneo, -ui, -itum, 2 (143)</td>
<td>warn, mōneo, -ui, -itum, 2 (143)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wash, lāvo, lāvi, lōtum, 1</td>
<td>wash, lāvo, lāvi, lōtum, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waste, lay waste, vasto, 1; to waste time, tempus tērēre, -trīvi, -trītum, 3; waste (adj.), a w. district, rēgio inculta</td>
<td>waste, lay waste, vasto, 1; to waste time, tempus tērēre, -trīvi, -trītum, 3; waste (adj.), a w. district, rēgio inculta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch, vigīlia, -ae, f.; watch, to, vigilo, 1</td>
<td>watch, vigīlia, -ae, f.; watch, to, vigilo, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>water, aqua, -ae, f.; water, to, rīgo, 1; a river waters this valley, amnis hanc vallem rigat</td>
<td>water, aqua, -ae, f.; water, to, rīgo, 1; a river waters this valley, amnis hanc vallem rigat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wave, fluctus, -ās, m.</td>
<td>wave, fluctus, -ās, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>way, via, -ae, f.; āter, itinēris, n.: manner, mōdus, -i, m.; in what way? quōmodo?</td>
<td>way, via, -ae, f.; āter, itinēris, n.: manner, mōdus, -i, m.; in what way? quōmodo?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we, see page 45</td>
<td>we, see page 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weak, infirmus, -a, -um</td>
<td>weak, infirmus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weaken, mīnui, -ui, -itum, 3</td>
<td>weaken, mīnui, -ui, -itum, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weakness, debilitās, -ātis, f.</td>
<td>weakness, debilitās, -ātis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wealth, divitiae, -ārum, f.; òpes, -um, f.</td>
<td>wealth, divitiae, -ārum, f.; òpes, -um, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wealthy, divēs, -ītis</td>
<td>wealthy, divēs, -ītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weapon, tēlum, -i, n.</td>
<td>weapon, tēlum, -i, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weary, fessus, -a, -um; I am weary of; taedet me (g. gen.) Par. 222 and foll.</td>
<td>weary, fessus, -a, -um; I am weary of; taedet me (g. gen.) Par. 222 and foll.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weave, texo, -ui, -xtum, 3</td>
<td>weave, texo, -ui, -xtum, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>web, tēla, -ae, f.</td>
<td>web, tēla, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weep, fleo, flēvi, flēnum, 2</td>
<td>weep, fleo, flēvi, flēnum, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
weight, pondus, -ēris, n.
weighty, grāvis, -e
well, a, pōtus, -ī, m.; (adv.) bēnē;
well, to be, vāleo, -ui, 2; well
known, it is, constat, 1, im-
pers.
west, occidens, -tis, m.
wet, mādīdus, -a, -um
whale, bālāena, -ae, f.
what? quid? (that which) quod;
what was good for one was bad
for another, quod ālī prōfuit,
ālī obfuit; what deed? see
Par. 111
what (in order of number)? quōtus,
-a, -um? what o’clock? quōta
hōra?
whatever, quisquis, quīcunquē;
w. he said, was false, quodcum-
quē dixit, falsum ērat; (oft. used
partitively) whatever arms we
had, were given up to the enemy,
quidquid (or quodcumquē)armō-
rum hābuimus, hostibus trāđi-
tum est
when, (1) cum,1 ēbī; (2) (inter-
rogative), quando? (also used
dependently); tell me when you
will come, dic mihi quando
ventūrus sis
whence, unde [ēbī?
where, qua, ēbī; (interrogative)
whether, conj. (1) (in dep. quest.)
um, nōnne (135); whether...or,
(a) utrum...ān, (b) -nē...ān (171);
I do not know w., nescio ān (302)
whether, conj. (2) (in alternative-sup-
positions), whether...or (a) sīve...
sīve, (b) sēu...sēu; whether this
is true or false, I shall go to
Rome, ēquidem, sīve haece vēra
sunt, sīve falsa, Rōmam ēbo
whether (archaic pron.) whether of
the two? āter? utra? utrum?
which, qui, quae, quod; (of the
two) āter, utra, utrum, see Par.
85
while, dum (272), foll. by indic.
white, candidus, -a, -um
whither, quō; whither in the world?
quonam terrārum?
who, qui, quae, quod; T. was the
first who did this, T. prīmus hōc
fēcit; (interrogative) quis, quīd
whole, tōtus, -a, -um (85); the whole
of the valley, vallis tōta
why, cūr?
wicked, imprōbus, -a, -um
wickedness, scélus, -ēris, n.
wide, lātus, -a, -um
wife, uxor, -ōris, f.
wild, fērus, -a, -um; w. beast, fēra,
-ae, f.; wild boar, āper, -pri, m.
will, vōluntas, -ātis, f.
willing, to be, vōlo, vōlui, velle
willingly, libenter
wind, ventus, -i, m.
wine, vinum, -i, n.
wing, āla, -ae, f.; of an army,
cornū, -ōs, n.
winter, hiemps, -ēmis, f.; winter
quarters, lūberna, -ōrum, n.
wisdom, sāpiens, -ae, f.; (military)
as distinct from "valour," consi-
lium, -i, n.
wise, sāpiens, -tis
wish, vōluntas, -ātis, f.; stūdium,
-ī, n.; wish to, or wish for, vōlo,
velle, vōlui; pp. 128, 129
with, cum (g. abl.); (in-the-house-
of) āpūd (178)
withdraw (trans.), dētrūho, -traxi,
-tractum, 3; (intrans.) recedo,
-cessi, -cessum, 3

1 The form quum, which is still erroneously retained in some modern editions
of classical authors, has no authority. It is "of the rarest possible occurrence
even in late MSS." and was long ago described by an eminent grammarian as
"dead and buried."
VOCABULARY.

worth, to be, váleo, -ni, 2
worthless (of men), néquam, indecl.;
more w., most w., see Par. 68
worthy, dignus, -a, -um (g. abl.);
the worthy Tullius, T., vir
optímus; worthy, to deem, dig-
nor, 1, dep. (g. abl.)
would, he would not (i.e. wished
not to) come, nóluit venire; he
would (i.e. he was determined to)
come, vóluit vénire
would that, útinam (g. pres. subj.
of possible, imperf. subj. of im-
possible wishes; see Par.
295)
wound, vulnus, -érīs, n.; wound,
to, vulnéro, 1
wraith, íra, -ae, f.
wreck, naufrágium, -i, n.
wreath, sertum, -i, n.
west, to, extorquéo, -torsi, -tortum,
2 (dat. of pers. or abl. with a)
wretched, míser, -ēra, -ērum
write, scribo, scripsi, scriptum, 3
writ'er, scriptor, -ōris, m.
wrong, a, iniūria, -ae, f.

Xenophon, Xēnōphon, -phontis,
m.

Xerxes, Xerxēs, -is, m.

Year, annus, -i, m.
yearly, every year, quōtaunís
yesterday, hēri; yesterday night,
nox hesterna
yet, as yet, ādhuc; nevertheless,
tāmen (at the beginning of a
clause, or after an emphatic word);
not yet, nōndum
yield, cēdō, cessi, cesso, 3 (g. dat.)
yoke, iugum, -i, n.; to send under
the yoke, sub iugum mittēro
you, vós; see page 45
young (man), āvēns, -is, -m.; ādū-
lescens, -tis, m.; (boys), puēri
VOCABULARY.

parvūli; young (ones), pullī, -ōrum, m.; 'the young' may be transl. jūniōres, or puēri
younger, jūniōr, -ōris (69); young-
est, mīnīmus nātu
your, vester, -tra, -trum

yourself, see Par. 105 (not sē)
youth, iūvēntūs, -ūtis, f.; youth, a
juvēnis, -is, m.
Zeal, studium, -i, n.; with zeal
 cum (or summo) studīo, 181

Note on se, suus, &c.

Sē, suus are used (not eum, eius) only when the Pronoun (1) refers to the Principal Subject; (2) is in a Subordinate Clause. Unless both these conditions are satisfied, sē, suus must not be used.

I. In the following examples condition (1) is satisfied, but (2) is not:
(a) T. thanks me, for I helped him, T. grātiās mīhi āgit, nam ei subvēnī;
(b) T. loves me, and I forgive him, T. mē āmat, ēt ei ignosco;
(c) T. and his brother came, T. et frāter eius vēnerunt.

II. In the following, (2) is satisfied, but (1) is not:
(a) I know that he rejoices; Scio eum gaudēre;
(b) I said that his brother had come, Dixi frātem eius vēnisse.

III. In the following, both conditions are satisfied:
(a) He begs me to pardon him (i.e. himself), Ōrat āt sībi ignoscam;
(b) He asks whether you saw his brother, Quaerit num frātem suum vīdēris.
University of Toronto Library

DO NOT REMOVE THE CARD FROM THIS POCKET

Acme Library Card Pocket
Under Pat. "Ref. Index File"
Made by LIBRARY BUREAU